



Forest Service  
U.S. DEPARTMENT OF AGRICULTURE

Northern Region

Publication No. R1-22-03f

January 2022

# Land Management Plan

## Custer Gallatin National Forest



Custer Gallatin National Forest Title Page: Photo Credit Top left to right – Custer Gallatin National Forest Title Page: Photo Credit – Mariah Leuschen-Lonergan. Top left, going clockwise – Coneflower, Echinacea, native wildflowers, Sioux Ranger District; American Flag and U.S. Forest Service Flag displayed in winter on the Hebgen Lake Ranger District; Packing trip in the Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness, Yellowstone, Gardiner and Beartooth Ranger Districts, photo by Terry Jones; Elk grazing on the Gardiner Ranger District with sagebrush in background, foreground; Bison grazing in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem with Arrowleaf Balsamroot in background, Gardiner and Hebgen Lake Ranger Districts; Center - Close up of Indian Paintbrush, Bozeman Ranger District; View looking into the Rock Creek drainage and Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness atop Beartooth Pass, Beartooth Ranger District; Rafting on the Gallatin Wild and Scenic River, Gallatin Canyon, Bozeman Ranger District, Calf nursing from Mother (Cow), Multiple use grazing allotments are a critical economic and social fabric of the Ashland and Sioux Ranger Districts; Holiday Christmas Tree gathering is a long-standing tradition for many Montana families, passed down from generation to generation, Bozeman Ranger District, Custer Gallatin National Forest.

In accordance with Federal civil rights law and U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) civil rights regulations and policies, the USDA, its Agencies, offices, and employees, and institutions participating in or administering USDA programs are prohibited from discriminating based on race, color, national origin, religion, sex, gender identity (including gender expression), sexual orientation, disability, age, marital status, family/parental status, income derived from a public assistance program, political beliefs, or reprisal or retaliation for prior civil rights activity, in any program or activity conducted or funded by USDA (not all bases apply to all programs). Remedies and complaint filing deadlines vary by program or incident.

Persons with disabilities who require alternative means of communication for program information (for example, Braille, large print, audiotape, American Sign Language, etc.) should contact the responsible Agency or USDA's TARGET Center at (202) 720-2600 (voice and TTY) or contact USDA through the Federal Relay Service at (800) 877-8339. Additionally, program information may be made available in languages other than English.

To file a program discrimination complaint, complete the USDA Program Discrimination Complaint Form, AD-3027, found online at [http://www.ascr.usda.gov/complaint\\_filing\\_cust.html](http://www.ascr.usda.gov/complaint_filing_cust.html) and at any USDA office or write a letter addressed to USDA and provide in the letter all of the information requested in the form. To request a copy of the complaint form, call (866) 632-9992. Submit your completed form or letter to USDA by: (1) mail: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Office of the Assistant Secretary for Civil Rights, 1400 Independence Avenue, SW, Washington, D.C. 20250-9410; (2) fax: (202) 690-7442; or (3) email: [program.intake@usda.gov](mailto:program.intake@usda.gov).

USDA is an equal opportunity provider, employer, and lender.

Note: We make every effort to create documents that are accessible to individuals of all abilities; however, limitations with our word processing programs may prevent some parts of this document from being readable by computer-assisted reading devices. If you need assistance with this document, please contact the Custer Gallatin National Forest at (406) 587-6701.



# **Land Management Plan**

## **Custer Gallatin National Forest**

**Lead Agency:** United States Department of Agriculture, Forest Service

**Responsible Official:** Mary Erickson, Forest Supervisor  
10 East Babcock  
Bozeman, MT 59715  
406-587-6701

**For Information Contact:** Virginia Kelly, Plan Revision Team Leader  
10 East Babcock  
Bozeman, MT 59715  
406-587-6701



# Contents

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| <b>Chapter 1. Introduction</b>   | <b>7</b>  |
| About the Custer Gallatin National Forest                                      | 7         |
| Purpose of this Land Management Plan   | 8         |
| Plan Structure   | 8         |
| Plan Content   | 9         |
| Plan Components  | 10        |
| Additional Required Plan Content   | 12        |
| Distinctive Roles and Contributions within the Broader Landscape               | 12        |
| Priority Watersheds  | 15        |
| Plan Monitoring Program  | 16        |
| Proposed and Possible Actions  | 16        |
| Project and Activity Consistency with the Plan                                 | 16        |
| Determining Consistency  | 17        |
| Relationship to Other Strategic Guidance                                       | 17        |
| Rights and Interests   | 18        |
| Use of Best Available Scientific Information                                   | 18        |
| Maintaining the Plan and Adapting to New Information                           | 18        |
| <b>Chapter 2. Forestwide Direction</b>   | <b>19</b> |
| Introduction   | 19        |
| Vision for the Custer Gallatin National Forest                                 | 19        |
| Ecosystems   | 20        |
| Air Quality (AQ)   | 20        |
| Soils (SOIL)   | 20        |
| Watershed, Aquatic, and Riparian Ecosystems                                    | 22        |
| Watershed and Aquatics (WTR)   | 23        |
| Riparian Management Zones (RMZ)  | 26        |
| Conservation Watershed Network (CWN)   | 30        |
| Terrestrial Vegetation   | 31        |
| At-Risk Plant Species (PRISK)  | 31        |
| Forested Vegetation (VEGF)   | 32        |
| Grassland, Shrubland, Woodland, Riparian, Alpine and Sparse Vegetation (VEGNF) | 40        |
| Fire and Fuels (FIRE)  | 46        |
| Carbon Storage and Sequestration (CARB)  | 48        |
| Invasive Species (INV)   | 49        |
| Wildlife (WL)  | 51        |
| Benefits to People: Multiple Uses and Ecosystem Services                       | 67        |
| Introduction   | 67        |
| General Contributions to Social and Economic Sustainability (SUS)              | 68        |
| Areas of Tribal Importance (American Indian Rights and Interests) (TRIBAL)     | 69        |
| Cultural and Historic Resources (CR)   | 70        |
| Permitted Livestock Grazing (GRAZ)   | 71        |
| Timber (TIM)   | 74        |
| Special Forest Products (FP)   | 78        |
| Energy, Minerals, and Geologic Areas of Interest (EMIN)                        | 79        |
| Infrastructure – Roads, Trails, Facilities, Airfields, and Dams                | 82        |

## Contents

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| Roads and Trails (RT).....   | 82         |
| Facilities (FAC).....  | 85         |
| Airfields (AIRFIELDS).....   | 87         |
| Dams (DAM).....  | 87         |
| Recreation Settings, Opportunities, and Access.....                              | 88         |
| General Recreation (REC).....  | 88         |
| Recreation Settings and Recreation Opportunity Spectrum .....                    | 90         |
| Primitive Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSP) .....                  | 93         |
| Semi-Primitive Non-Motorized Settings (ROSSPNM) .....                            | 93         |
| Semi-Primitive Motorized Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSSPM) ..... | 94         |
| Roaded-Natural Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSRN) .....            | 94         |
| Rural Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSR) .....                      | 95         |
| Recreation Opportunities–Developed Recreation Sites (RECDEV).....                | 95         |
| Recreation Opportunities–Dispersed Recreation (RECDISP) .....                    | 97         |
| Recreation Opportunities–Recreation Special Uses (RECSUP) .....                  | 97         |
| Recreation Opportunities–Outfitter Guides (RECOG) .....                          | 98         |
| Recreation Opportunities–Recreation Residences (RECRES).....                     | 99         |
| Recreation Opportunities–Ski Resorts (RECSKI) .....                              | 99         |
| Recreation Opportunities–Recreation Events (RECEVENTS) .....                     | 100        |
| Recreation Opportunities–Organizational Camps (RECORGCAMP) .....                 | 101        |
| Recreation Opportunities–Non-Commercial Group Use (RECGROUP).....                | 101        |
| Visitor Education and Interpretation (RECED) .....                               | 102        |
| Emerging Recreational Technologies (RECTECH).....                                | 102        |
| Scenery (SCENERY).....   | 103        |
| Land Status and Ownership, Access, and Land Uses .....                           | 106        |
| Land Status and Ownership, Access (LAND) .....                                   | 106        |
| Land Uses (LAND USE).....  | 107        |
| Designated Areas and Plan Land Allocations.....                                  | 108        |
| Designated Wilderness (DWA).....   | 108        |
| Absaroka-Beartooth and Lee Metcalf Wilderness by Zone .....                      | 112        |
| Designated Wild and Scenic Rivers (DWSR).....                                    | 114        |
| Inventoried Roadless Areas (IRA).....  | 115        |
| Research Natural Areas (RNA) .....   | 116        |
| Special Areas (SA).....  | 118        |
| National Natural Landmarks (NNL) .....   | 119        |
| Nez Perce National Historic Trail (NPNHT) .....                                  | 120        |
| National Recreation Trails (NRT).....  | 121        |
| Eligible Wild and Scenic Rivers (EWSR).....                                      | 122        |
| Recommended Wilderness Areas (RWA).....  | 123        |
| Backcountry Areas (BCA) .....  | 125        |
| Recreation Emphasis Areas (REA) .....  | 126        |
| <b>Chapter 3. Geographic Area Direction.....</b>                                 | <b>128</b> |
| Introduction.....  | 128        |
| Sioux Geographic Area .....  | 129        |
| General Overview .....   | 129        |
| Distinctive Roles and Contributions.....   | 129        |
| Vision for the Sioux Geographic Area .....                                       | 131        |
| Designated Areas .....   | 132        |

## Contents

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Plan Land Allocations .....   | 132 |
| Other Resource Emphasis Areas .....   | 132 |
| Plan Components–Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL) .....   | 134 |
| Plan Components–Chalk Buttes Backcountry Area (CBBCA) .....   | 134 |
| Ashland Geographic Area .....   | 135 |
| General Overview .....  | 135 |
| Distinctive Roles and Contributions .....   | 135 |
| Vision for the Ashland Geographic Area .....  | 136 |
| Designated Areas .....  | 136 |
| Plan Land Allocations .....   | 137 |
| Other Resource Emphasis Areas .....   | 137 |
| Plan Components–Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL) .....   | 139 |
| Plan Components–Ashland Backcountry Areas (ABCA)–Cook Mountain, King Mountain and Tongue<br>River Breaks BCAs ..... | 139 |
| Pryor Mountains Geographic Area .....   | 139 |
| General Overview .....  | 139 |
| Distinctive Roles and Contributions .....   | 140 |
| Vision for the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area .....  | 141 |
| Designated Areas .....  | 141 |
| Plan Land Allocations .....   | 142 |
| Other Resource Emphasis Areas .....   | 143 |
| Plan Components– Grassland, Shrubland, Woodland, Riparian, Alpine and Sparse Vegetation<br>(VEGNF) .....            | 144 |
| Plan Components–Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL) .....   | 146 |
| Plan Components–General Recreation (REC) .....  | 146 |
| Plan Components–Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory (WHT) .....   | 147 |
| Plan Components–Big Pryor Backcountry Area .....  | 148 |
| Plan Components–Punch Bowl Backcountry Area (PBBCA) .....   | 148 |
| Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area .....  | 149 |
| General Overview .....  | 149 |
| Distinctive Roles and Contributions .....   | 149 |
| Vision for the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area .....   | 151 |
| Designated Areas .....  | 151 |
| Plan Land Allocations .....   | 152 |
| Other Resource Emphasis Areas .....   | 153 |
| Plan Components–Stillwater Complex (SWC) .....  | 154 |
| Plan Components–Line Creek Plateau Research Natural Area .....  | 155 |
| Plan Components–OTO Ranch (OTO) .....   | 155 |
| Plan Components–Beartooth National Forest Scenic Byway and All-American Road (NSB) .....                            | 156 |
| Plan Components–Bad Canyon Backcountry Area (BCBCA) .....   | 157 |
| Plan Components–Boulder River Recreation Emphasis Area (BRREA) .....  | 157 |
| Plan Components–Cooke City Winter Recreation Emphasis Area (CCREA) .....  | 157 |
| Plan Components–Main Fork Rock Creek Recreation Emphasis Area (MFRCREA) .....                                       | 158 |
| Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area .....  | 158 |
| General Overview .....  | 158 |
| Distinctive Roles and Contributions .....   | 159 |
| Vision for the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area .....   | 160 |
| Designated Areas .....  | 160 |



## Contents

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| Plan Land Allocations .....   | 161        |
| Other Resource Emphasis Areas .....   | 161        |
| Plan Components–Wildlife (WL) .....   | 163        |
| Plan Components–Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL) .....                         | 163        |
| Plan Components–Land Status and Ownership (LAND) .....                            | 163        |
| Plan Components–Bangtail Special Area (BSA) .....                                 | 163        |
| Plan Components–Blacktail Peak Backcountry Area (BPBCA) .....                     | 164        |
| Plan Components–Crazy Mountains Backcountry Area (CMBCA) .....                    | 165        |
| Plan Components–Bridger Recreation Emphasis Area (BREA) .....                     | 165        |
| Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area .....                | 165        |
| General Overview .....  | 165        |
| Distinctive Roles and Contributions .....   | 165        |
| Vision for the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area ..... | 167        |
| Designated Areas .....  | 167        |
| Plan Land Allocations .....   | 168        |
| Other Resource Emphasis Areas .....   | 170        |
| Plan Components–Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area (CCRW) .....  | 171        |
| Plan Components–Wilderness Study Area (WSA) .....                                 | 172        |
| Plan Components–Black Sand Spring Special Area (BSSSA) .....                      | 174        |
| Plan Components–Continental Divide National Scenic Trail (CDNST) .....            | 175        |
| Plan Components–Earthquake Lake Geologic Area (ELGA) .....                        | 177        |
| Plan Components–Municipal Watershed (WTR) .....                                   | 177        |
| Plan Components–Buffalo Horn Backcountry Area (BHBCA) .....                       | 178        |
| Plan Components–Lionhead Backcountry Area (LHBCA) .....                           | 178        |
| Plan Components–South Cottonwood Backcountry Area (SCBCA) .....                   | 178        |
| Plan Components–West Pine Backcountry Area (WPBCA) .....                          | 179        |
| Plan Components–Gallatin River Recreation Emphasis Area (GRREA) .....             | 179        |
| Plan Components–Hebgen Lakeshore Recreation Emphasis Area (HLREA) .....           | 180        |
| Plan Components–Hebgen Winter Recreation Emphasis Area (HWREA) .....              | 180        |
| Plan Components–Hyalite Recreation Emphasis Area (HREA) .....                     | 181        |
| Plan Components–Storm Castle Recreation Emphasis Area (SCREA) .....               | 181        |
| Plan Components–Yellowstone River Recreation Emphasis Area (YRREA) .....          | 182        |
| <b>Chapter 4. Monitoring Program .....</b>  | <b>183</b> |
| Introduction .....  | 183        |
| Required 2012 Planning Rule Monitoring Items .....                                | 184        |
| Focal Species .....   | 186        |
| Aquatic invertebrates .....   | 186        |
| Land bird species and assemblages .....   | 186        |
| Monitoring Elements by Resource Area .....  | 187        |
| Ecosystems .....  | 188        |
| Benefits to People: Multiple Uses and Ecosystem Services .....                    | 198        |
| <b>Glossary .....</b>   | <b>202</b> |
| A-C .....   | 202        |
| D-F .....   | 207        |
| G-J .....   | 214        |
| K-M .....   | 218        |
| N-Q .....   | 222        |

## *Contents*

|           |     |
|-----------|-----|
| R-T ..... | 227 |
| U-Z ..... | 240 |



# Chapter 1. Introduction

## About the Custer Gallatin National Forest

The Custer Gallatin National Forest encompasses over 3 million acres in southern Montana and the northwest corner of South Dakota. Stretching over 400 miles from its westernmost to its easternmost boundaries, the Custer Gallatin is among the most ecologically, socially, economically, and culturally diverse national forests in the Forest Service's Northern Region.

The Custer Gallatin National Forest consists of two individual proclaimed national forests: the Custer National Forest and the Gallatin National Forest. In 2014, the two national forests were combined to be administratively managed as one national forest. For ease of discussion throughout this document, the Custer Gallatin National Forest will also be referred to as the Custer Gallatin or national forest when referencing the single administrative unit, the staff that administers the unit, or the national forest lands within the unit.

The national forest includes portions of 11 counties (Carbon, Carter, Gallatin, Madison, Meagher, Park, Powder River, Rosebud, Stillwater, and Sweet Grass Counties in Montana and Harding County in South Dakota). The Custer Gallatin is administered in seven ranger districts, with offices located in Camp Crook, South Dakota, and in Ashland, Red Lodge, Livingston, Gardiner, Bozeman, and West Yellowstone, Montana. The supervisor's office is in Bozeman, Montana and an office is also located in Billings, Montana. For planning purposes, the land management plan arranges the national forest into the six geographic areas displayed in figure 1.

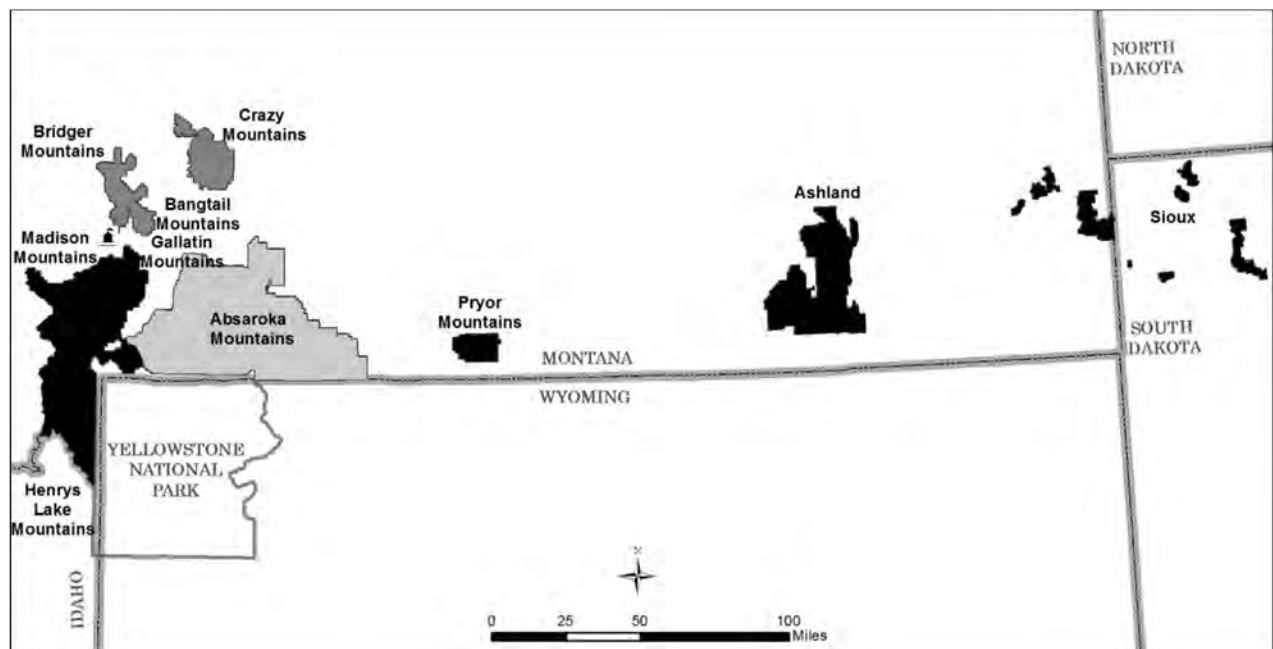


Figure 1. Location of Custer Gallatin National Forest and geographic areas

## Purpose of this Land Management Plan

The purpose of the Custer Gallatin National Forest Land Management Plan (hereinafter referred to as land management plan) is to have an integrated set of plan direction (hereinafter referred to as components) to provide for social, economic, and ecological sustainability and multiple uses of the Custer Gallatin National Forest lands and resources. This land management plan sets the overall context for informed decision making by evaluating and integrating social, economic, and ecological considerations relevant to management of the national forest. In May of 2012, the Forest Service began using new planning regulations (2012 Planning Rule) to guide collaborative and science-based revision of land management plans that promote the ecological integrity of national forests while considering social and economic sustainability. The 2012 Planning Rule specifies the following nine primary decisions that are to be made in land management plans:

- Forestwide components to provide for integrated social, economic, and ecological sustainability, and ecosystem integrity and diversity, while providing for ecosystem services and multiple uses. Components must be within Forest Service authority and consistent with the inherent capability of the national forest (36 CFR 219.7 and sections 219.8–219.10).
- Recommendations to Congress (if any) for lands suitable for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System and rivers eligible for inclusion in the National Wild and Scenic Rivers System (36 CFR 219.7(c)(2)(v) and (vi)).
- The plan area's distinctive role and contributions within the broader landscape.
- Identification or recommendation (if any) of other designated areas (36 CFR 219.7(c)(2)(vii)).
- Identification of suitability of areas for the appropriate integration of resource management and uses, including lands suited and not suited for timber production (36 CFR 219.7(c)(2)(vii) and 219.11).
- Identification of the maximum quantity of timber that may be removed from the national forest (36 CFR 219.7(c)(2)(ix) and 219.11 (d)(6)).
- Identification of geographic area or management area specific components (36 CFR 219.7(d)).
- Identification of watersheds that are a priority for maintenance or restoration (36 CFR 219.7(f)(i)).
- Plan monitoring program (36 CFR 219.7 (c)(2)(x) and 219.12).

It is important to note that this plan does not authorize site-specific prohibitions or activities; rather it establishes overarching direction, similar to zoning in a community. Project or activity decisions will need to be made following appropriate procedures. Site-specific analysis, in compliance with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) regulations, would need to be conducted for activities to comply with the broader direction of the land management plan. The revised plan will provide guidance for project and activity-level decision making on the national forest for approximately the next 15 years.

## Plan Structure

The plan is designed to communicate the concepts of strategic guidance and adaptive management for the Custer Gallatin. The plan is organized as follows:

**Chapter 1** describes the purpose of the land management plan, plan content, future project consistency with the plan, rights and interests, and how best available scientific information will be considered.

**Chapter 2** contains the forestwide plan direction; the plan components related to physical and biological ecosystems; the economic, cultural, and social environment; and human uses and designations of the national forest.

**Chapter 3** contains the geographic area (GA) plan direction and distinctive roles and contributions of each geographic area. Plan components specified at the geographic area level are those that are not adequately addressed by forestwide plan components. The Custer Gallatin National Forest is divided into six geographic areas.

**Chapter 4** contains a proposed monitoring program. Following chapter 4 is a glossary of terms.

Appendices appear separately as follows:

- Appendix A: Potential Management Approaches and Possible Actions
- Appendix B: Maps
- Appendix C: Priority Watersheds and Conservation Watershed Network
- Appendix D: Vegetation Classifications and Development of Vegetation Plan Components
- Appendix E: Wild and Scenic Rivers
- Appendix F: Grizzly Bear Baseline Values
- Appendix G: Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction, Record of Decision

## Plan Content

Content of the land management plan includes:

- Forestwide and geographic area desired conditions, goals, objectives, standards, and guidelines;
- The suitability of lands for specific multiple uses, including those lands suitable for timber production;
- An estimate of the long-term sustained yield and projected timber sale quantity;
- A description of the national forest's distinctive roles and contributions within the broader landscape;
- The identification of priority restoration watersheds;
- Proposed management actions and strategies that may occur on the national forest over the life of the plan;
- Areas recommended to Congress for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System;
- Rivers identified as eligible for inclusion as part of the National Wild and Scenic River System; and
- The plan monitoring program.

Numbers, such as acres, miles, and volumes are approximate due to the use of geographic information systems data and rounding.

## Plan Components

### Introduction

Plan components guide future projects and activities and the plan monitoring program. Plan components are not commitments or final decisions approving projects or activities.

Every plan must identify where plan direction applies. Plan direction may apply forestwide, to management areas, or to geographic areas. This plan presents two primary types of components:

- Forestwide components apply across the planning area, but may be applicable to specific areas described in the plan component or a referenced map; and
- Geographic area components are specific to an area or place, such as a river basin or valley, and reflect values and local conditions within that specific geographic area. The geographic areas may also have direction that applies to specific areas described in the plan component or a referenced map.

Forestwide components would apply to all national forest land specified in the plan component, unless otherwise stated under direction for geographic areas. The forestwide components would apply to the geographic areas unless other direction is noted within the geographic area section. If so noted, this direction may supplement or supersede what is stated in the forestwide section. If no mention is made to a particular resource component in the geographic area section, then the forestwide direction is to be followed. The geographic area components allow focus on specific circumstances in specific geographic locations.

The forestwide and geographic area components would apply to the designated areas and special emphasis areas. If so noted, the designated area and special emphasis area direction may supplement or supersede what is stated in the forestwide section or geographic area direction. Plan direction for a topic may be found in multiple plan sections, for instance riparian management zone guidance is found in many plan topics.

Desired conditions, goals, objectives, standards, guidelines, and monitoring questions indicators have been given alphanumeric identifiers for ease in referencing within the land management plan. The identifiers include:

- The level of direction (forestwide = FW, for geographic area direction the geographic area abbreviation is used)
- The type of direction (where DC = desired condition, GO = goal, OBJ = objective, STD = standard, GDL = guideline, SUI = suitability, MON=monitoring question)
- The resource (for example, WTR = watersheds and WL = wildlife)
- A unique number (a numerical order starting with "01")

For example, forestwide direction for desired conditions associated with watersheds would be identified starting with FW-DC-WTR-01. The desired conditions for the Absaroka Beartooth Geographic Area would be identified starting with AB-DC-WTR-01. The identifiers are included as part of the headings in chapters 2 and 3 with the unique number preceding each plan component.

Following are the definitions, and where necessary, a description of their context for the required plan components (36 CFR 219.7(e)).

## Desired Conditions

A desired condition (DC) is a description of specific social, economic, or ecological characteristics of the national forest, or a portion of the national forest, toward which management of the land and resources should be directed. Desired conditions must be described in terms that are specific enough to allow progress toward their achievement to be determined, but not include completion dates (36 CFR 219.7(e)(1)(i)).

Desired conditions help frame the purpose and need during project-level planning. Desired conditions are not commitments or final decisions approving projects and activities. The desired condition for some resources may currently exist, or for other resources may only be achievable over a long time period.

## Goals

A plan may include goals (GO) as plan components. Goals are broad statements of intent, other than desired conditions, usually related to process or interaction with the public. Goals are expressed in broad, general terms, but do not include completion dates (36 CFR 219.7(e)(2)). Goals may be appropriate to describe a state between current conditions and desired conditions, but without specific amounts of indicators. Goals may also be appropriate to describe overall desired conditions of the national forest that are also dependent on conditions beyond the national forest or Forest Service authority.

## Objectives

An objective (OBJ) is a concise, measurable, and time-specific statement of a desired rate of progress toward a desired condition or conditions. Objectives should be based on reasonably foreseeable budgets (36 CFR 219.7(e)(1)(ii)). Objectives describe the focus of management on the national forest within the plan period. Objectives will occur over the life of the plan, considered to be over the first 15 years of plan implementation, unless otherwise specified. As with desired conditions, objectives can be forestwide or specific to geographic areas.

It is important to recognize that objectives were developed considering historic and expected budget allocations, as well as professional experience with implementing various resource programs and activities. It is possible that objectives could either exceed or not meet a target based upon several factors including budget and staffing increases or decreases, increased or decreased planning efficiencies, unanticipated resource constraints, etc. A single project may meet multiple objectives.

## Standards

A standard (STD) is a mandatory constraint on project and activity decision making, established to help achieve or maintain the desired condition or conditions, to avoid or mitigate undesirable effects, or to meet applicable legal requirements (36 CFR 219.7(e)(1)(iii)). As with desired conditions, standards can be developed for forestwide application or specific to a geographic area.

## Guidelines

A guideline (GDL) is a constraint on project and activity decision-making that allows for departure from its terms, so long as the purpose of the guideline is met. Guidelines are established to help achieve or maintain a desired condition or conditions, to avoid or mitigate undesirable effects, or to meet applicable legal requirements (36 CFR 219.7(e)(1)(iv)). As with desired conditions, guidelines can be forestwide or specific to a geographic area.



## Suitability of Lands

Specific lands within the national forest are identified as suitable (SUIT) for various multiple uses or activities based on the desired conditions applicable to those lands. The plan also identifies lands within the national forest as not suitable for uses that are not compatible with desired conditions for those lands. The suitability of lands need not be identified for every use or activity (36 CFR 219.7 (e)(1)(v)).

Identifying suitability of lands for a use in the plan indicates that the use may be appropriate, but does not make a specific commitment to authorize that use. Final suitability determinations for specific authorizations occur at the project- or activity-level decision-making process. Generally, the lands on the national forest are suitable for all uses and management activities appropriate for national forests, such as outdoor recreation, grazing, energy and mining activities, or timber harvest, unless identified as not suitable. Suitability statements related to motorized or mechanized transportation use apply to Forest Service authorizations for the recreating public, not to administrative or permitted uses. Every plan must identify those lands that are not suitable for timber production (section 219.11) (36 CFR 219.7(e)(1)(v)). For forestwide suitability determinations, see chapter 2; for geographic area-specific suitability determinations, see chapter 3.

## Additional Required Plan Content

### **Distinctive Roles and Contributions within the Broader Landscape**

The description of the Custer Gallatin's distinctive roles and contributions within the broader landscape reflects those things that are truly unique and distinctive (36 CFR 219.2(b)). This description is important because it is a source of motivation or reasons behind desired conditions. It is important to understand the ecological, social/economic, and cultural/historic context of the Custer Gallatin National Forest in order to better gauge the relative importance of each role. The National Forest System lands within the boundary of the Custer Gallatin National Forest are also referred to as the "plan area."

The Custer Gallatin encompasses over 3 million acres in southern Montana and the northwest corner of South Dakota (figure 1); stretching over 400 miles from its westernmost to its easternmost boundaries. The Custer Gallatin is a highly diverse national forest, ecologically, socially, economically, and culturally.

For planning purposes, the plan arranges the national forest into six geographic areas, extending from the Montana-Idaho border near the tristate corner of Idaho, Montana, and Wyoming, across southern Montana and into western South Dakota. Each of the six geographic areas has its own set of distinctive roles and contributions (described in chapter 3). The following distinctive roles and contributions were derived from public input and plan assessment reports.

### **Ecological Characteristics**

The national forest is made up of a series of distinctive landscapes and "island" mountain ranges and is characterized by the topographical transition between western mountainous terrains and eastern pine savannas. The elevation ranges from about 3,300 feet on lower elevations of the pine savanna geographic areas to over 12,000 feet on mountain peaks in the Beartooth Mountains, where Granite Peak, Montana's highest peak, is located.

The Custer Gallatin has ten research natural areas that are part of a national network of ecological areas for research, education, and maintenance of plant and animal diversity. The Custer Gallatin is home to

two special areas, created to protect or enhance unique or special resources. Three National Natural Landmarks recognize the country's best examples of ecological and geological features.

### *Ecoregion*

The Custer Gallatin is located within two distinct ecoregions: the Middle Rockies Ecoregion and the Northwestern Great Plains Ecoregion, and touches on a third ecoregion, the Wyoming Basin Ecoregion. Ecoregions are large ecological zones covering millions of acres distinguished by common climatic and vegetation characteristics. Approximately 81 percent of the Custer Gallatin is in the Middle Rockies Ecoregion. This ecoregion is located mostly in southwestern Montana, eastern Idaho, and northern Wyoming, as well as island mountain ranges in Wyoming and South Dakota. The severe, mid-latitude, humid continental climate is marked by warm to cool summers and severe winters. The mean annual temperature varies greatly by elevation and high elevations are more subarctic. Vegetation consists of coniferous forest, alpine meadow, and shrubland-grassland steppe.

Approximately 19 percent of the Custer Gallatin is in the Northwestern Great Plains Ecoregion consisting of ponderosa pine-shrubland-grassland steppe. This ecoregion encompasses the Missouri Plateau section of the Great Plains in southeastern Montana, northeastern Wyoming, and the western portion of the Dakotas. The dry mid-latitude steppe climate is marked by hot summers and cold winters. The region is an unglaciated, rolling plain of shale and sandstone punctuated by occasional buttes.

The Middle Rockies, Northwestern Great Plains, and Wyoming Basin Ecoregions converge at the southwestern part of the Pryor Mountains. A small amount of the Custer Gallatin (less than 1 percent) is in the Wyoming Basin Ecoregion around the Pryor Mountains and consists of semi-desert shrubland-grassland.

The Custer Gallatin is inhabited by hundreds of species of native mammals, birds, fish, reptiles, amphibians, and invertebrates. The diverse ecology and geographic span of the national forest contributes to the diversity of wildlife species. Wildlife habitat on the Custer Gallatin is extremely diverse, ranging from southwest Montana's rugged mountain peaks to the pine forests, buttes, and bluffs of the pine savanna ecosystem in South Dakota and eastern Montana.

### *Montane and Pine Savanna Ecosystems*

The Custer Gallatin has termed its mountainous Middle Rockies Ecoregion area as montane and the Northwestern Great Plains Ecoregion area as pine savanna. Montane ecosystems of the Custer Gallatin include the Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin, Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy, Absaroka, Beartooth, and Pryor Mountain ranges. The pine savanna ecosystem includes the Ashland and Sioux ranger districts.

**Pine Savanna.** The pine savanna ecosystem is characterized by rolling plains and tablelands of moderate relief. The Ashland and Sioux Districts stand out from the surrounding plains because of their elevation and the presence of ponderosa pines amongst the rolling plains. The area lies in the rain shadow east of the Rocky Mountains. The climate is a semiarid continental regime. Winters are cold and dry, and summers are warm to hot. Evaporation usually exceeds precipitation, and the total supply of moisture is low. Vegetation consisting of ponderosa pine, hardwood trees, shrubs, forbs, and grasses are supported in all gradations of cover. On the driest sites, ponderosa pine is short and generally open, grown with grass understories. Moist north-facing sites have dense stands of taller ponderosa pine, with shrub and herbaceous understories, including species of the mountain forests to the west. Draws and ravines that

support many hardwood trees (green ash, box elder, and aspen) and shrubs also dissect the landscape. Grasses include wheatgrass and needlegrass. Shrubs include sagebrush, chokecherry, and snowberry.

The Ashland District drains to the Tongue and Powder Rivers (tributaries to the lower Yellowstone River). Otter Creek, a tributary of the Tongue River, bisects the Ashland District. Most of the Sioux District drains to the Little Missouri, Grande, or Moreau Rivers (tributaries to the Missouri River). Those drainages on the Ashland and Sioux districts include typically intermittent, warm-water streams, wetlands, constructed ponds, and springs, which provide habitat for populations of native fish, amphibians, and other aquatic species as well as terrestrial wildlife.

**Montane.** The montane ecosystem is characterized by mountainous regions ranging with altitudinal zonation of semi-desert vegetation, coniferous forests on the lower mountain slopes, and alpine tundra toward the upper. Temperature and snowfall vary greatly with altitude. Winds are from the west or southwest, with much of their moisture precipitated where they cross the Pacific ranges. Due to aridity, forests are sometimes restricted to northern and eastern slopes. Although south- and west-facing slopes receive comparable precipitation, they are hotter, and evaporation is higher. Consequently, they support fewer trees and are covered by shrubs and grasses. Lodgepole pine, Douglas-fir, subalpine fir, Engelmann spruce, limber pine, and whitebark pine are the predominant conifer vegetation. The lower slopes of the mountains are dominated by grasslands and shrublands.

Tributaries to the upper Missouri River originate in these mountains, including the Madison and Gallatin rivers. Tributaries to the Yellowstone River originate in these mountains including the Boulder and Stillwater Rivers. These rivers and other streams hold westslope cutthroat trout, Arctic grayling, Yellowstone cutthroat trout and other aquatic species.

The montane ecosystem, except the Pryor Mountains, also encompasses the Custer Gallatin's portion of the Greater Yellowstone Area (the largest nearly intact ecosystem in the lower 48 states). Native animals, including grizzly bears, gray wolves, and bison, roam the Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin, Absaroka, and Beartooth Mountains. Whitebark pine, a proposed species for federal listing under the Endangered Species Act, is found at higher elevations. Whitebark pine in the Greater Yellowstone Area exhibits lower blister rust infection than other ecosystems, such as the Northern Continental Divide. The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with other agencies in the Greater Yellowstone Coordinating Committee to coordinate land management on over 15 million acres of federal land in the Greater Yellowstone Area.

## Social and Economic Characteristics

The Custer Gallatin has a history of multiple, co-existing uses, including recreation, mining, grazing, timber, hunting and fishing. The national forest contributes to a variety of economic enterprises including ranches, outfitters and guides, destination ski and recreation areas, large mines, gateway resort and agricultural communities. Given proximity to Yellowstone National Park and renowned attractions such as the Beartooth Highway and Big Sky Ski Resort, the national forest is part of an international destination.

The Custer Gallatin National Forest contributes to local and regional economies by providing important natural resources including drinking water for municipalities, timber and forest products, livestock forage, fish and wildlife, and minerals that meet local and national needs. Wood from across the national forest supplies the regional forest products industry, as well as individual and community uses such as firewood and Christmas trees. The Ashland and Sioux ranger districts manage two of the largest national forest livestock grazing programs. Family-owned ranches within the national forest boundary and

livestock grazing on public lands are an important component of the backdrop and culture of the rural communities surrounding the national forest areas. The Stillwater Complex is the only primary producer of platinum and palladium in the United States, and one of only three such producers in the world. Scenery and ecological diversity contribute to economic sustainability of communities through ecotourism, wildlife viewing, hunting, and fishing. The national forest provides a wide range of summer, winter, and year-round recreation opportunities. Recreation is the national forest's most significant contributor to the local economies on the western portion of the national forest, in terms of jobs and generated income.

The national forest contains over one million acres of designated wilderness including portions of the Lee Metcalf and Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness Areas. Approximately 848,041 acres of the national forest are allocated as inventoried roadless areas. Congress also designated portions of the inventoried roadless areas as the 155,000-acre Hyalite Porcupine Buffalo Horn Wilderness Study Area, and the 37,000-acre Cabin Creek Wildlife and Recreation Area. These allocations provide for landscapes that allow for more primitive recreation experiences. The existence of these primitive landscapes may provide for inspiration and meaning to those who value wild places, even if they never go there.

The Custer Gallatin provides water for agriculture and other downstream uses as well as three municipal watersheds and water sources: Bozeman, Hyalite and Lyman Creeks (Bozeman), West Fork Rock Creek (Red Lodge), and Whiskey Spring (West Yellowstone).

## Cultural and Historical Characteristics

Scattered throughout the Custer Gallatin's pine savannas, forests, mountains, and valleys are more cultural resource sites than any other national forest in the Forest Service's Northern Region. More than 10,000 years of human history is represented. Historically, the Custer Gallatin was the ancestral homeland and travel way of native people now referred to as the Crow, Northern Cheyenne, Sioux, Eastern Shoshone, Northern Arapahoe, Shoshone-Bannock, Nez Perce, Mandan, Hidatsa, Arikara, Salish and Kootenai, Blackfeet, Assiniboine, and other Tribes. Native American use of the Custer Gallatin over the centuries is manifest in thousands of archaeological, sacred sites, and other areas of traditional cultural importance, many of which are listed or eligible to be on the National Register of Historic Places. Significant spiritual, traditional use, and ceremonial sites are located on the Custer Gallatin and are in use today by Tribal members.

The Custer Gallatin's cultural resources represent a wide variety of cultural and historical themes, including Native American use, Tribal-U.S. Government conflict, mining, agricultural development, ranching, timber, transportation, homesteads, local settlement, fire detection, recreation, Civilian Conservation Corps projects, and Forest Service administrative history. The eastern districts contain some of the most varied and complete cultural resources in the Northern Great Plains.

## Priority Watersheds

The Planning Rule requires land management plans to identify watershed(s) that are a priority for maintenance or restoration (36 CFR 219.7(f)(1). Identification of these watersheds is to focus efforts on the integrated restoration of watershed conditions in these areas. Information about priority watersheds on the Custer Gallatin can be found in plan appendix C.

## Plan Monitoring Program

The monitoring program is designed to test assumptions used in developing plan components and to evaluate relevant changes and management effectiveness of the plan components. Typically, monitoring questions seek additional information to increase knowledge and understanding of changing conditions, uncertainties, and risks identified in the best available scientific information as part of an adaptive management framework. Best available scientific information can identify indicators that address associated monitoring questions. The best available scientific information is also important in the further development of the monitoring program as it may help identify protocols and specific methods for the collection and evaluation of monitoring information (from FSH 1909.12 07.11). Chapter 4 provides information for the monitoring program.

## Proposed and Possible Actions

The 2012 Planning Rule requires land management plans to “...contain information reflecting proposed and possible actions that may occur on the Custer Gallatin during the life of the plan, including: the planned timber sale program; timber harvesting levels; and the proportion of probable methods of national forest vegetation management practices expected to be used (16 United States Code 1604(e)(2) and (f)(2)). Such information is not a commitment to take any action and is not a ‘proposal’ as defined by the Council on Environmental Quality regulations for implementing the National Environmental Policy Act (40 CFR 1508.23, 42 U.S.C. 4322(2)(C)) (36 CFR 219.7(f)(1)).” Management approaches and strategies presented in this section may include suggestions for on-the-ground implementation, analysis, assessment, inventory or monitoring, and partnership and coordination opportunities the Custer Gallatin is proposing as helpful to make progress in achieving its desired conditions. The potential approaches and strategies are not intended to be all-inclusive, nor commitments to perform particular actions.

The possible actions and potential management approaches and strategies the Custer Gallatin may undertake to make progress in achieving the desired conditions described in this plan can be found in plan appendix A.

## Project and Activity Consistency with the Plan

As required by National Forest Management Act and the Planning Rule, subject to valid existing or statutory rights, all projects and activities authorized by the Forest Service after approval of this plan must be consistent with the applicable plan components (16 U.S.C. 1604(i)) as described at 36 CFR 219.15.

All project or activity approval documents, made after the effective date of the plan, will describe how the project or activity is consistent with the applicable components of the plan. When a proposed project or activity would not be consistent with the applicable plan components, the responsible official shall take one of the following steps, subject to valid existing or statutory rights:

- Modify the proposed project or activity to make it consistent with the applicable plan components;
- Reject the proposal or terminate the project or activity;
- Amend the plan so that the project or activity will be consistent with the plan as amended;

- Amend the plan contemporaneously with the approval of the project or activity so that the project or activity will be consistent with the plan as amended. This amendment may be limited to apply only to the project or activity.

Authorizations for occupancy and use made before this plan approval may proceed unchanged until time of reauthorization. At time of reauthorization, all permits, contracts, and other authorizing instruments must be made consistent with the plan, subject to existing valid rights, as provided at section 219.15(d).

## Determining Consistency

Because of the many types of projects and activities that can occur over the life of the plan, it is not likely that a project or activity can maintain or contribute to the attainment of all desired conditions, nor are all desired conditions relevant to every activity (for example, recreation desired conditions may not be relevant to a fuels treatment project). Most projects and activities are developed specifically to maintain or move conditions toward one or more of the desired conditions of the plan.

Every project and activity must be consistent with the applicable plan components. A project or activity approval document must describe how the project or activity is consistent with applicable plan components by meeting the following criteria (36 CFR 219.15(d)):

Goals, desired conditions, and objectives. The project or activity contributes to the maintenance or attainment of one or more goals, desired conditions, or objectives, or does not foreclose the opportunity to maintain or achieve any goals, desired conditions, or objectives, over the long term.

Standards. The project or activity complies with applicable standards.

Guidelines. The project or activity:

Complies with applicable guidelines as set out in the plan; or

Is designed in a way that is as effective in achieving the purpose of the applicable guidelines (36 CFR 219.7(e)(1)(iv)).

Suitability. A project or activity would occur in an area:

That the plan identifies as suitable for that type of project or activity; or

For which the plan is silent with respect to its suitability for that type of project or activity.

## Relationship to Other Strategic Guidance

The national forest contributes to the accomplishment of national strategic guidance in accordance with its own unique combination of social, economic, and ecologic conditions. This plan helps define the Custer Gallatin's role in advancing the agency's national strategy and reflects the national goals. This plan is reflective of the mission of the Forest Service, which is "to sustain the health, diversity, and productivity of the nation's forests and grasslands to meet the needs of present and future generations." The plan also considers the direction and goals in other applicable Tribal, Federal, State, and County plans and an "all lands" integrated approach that considers the broader landscape that the plan operates within.

## Rights and Interests

The land management plan will provide a strategic framework that guides future management decisions and actions, subject to valid existing or statutory rights. As such, the plan will not create, authorize, or execute any ground-disturbing activity. The plan will not subject anyone to civil or criminal liability and will create no legal rights. The plan will not change existing permits and authorized uses.

## Use of Best Available Scientific Information

The 2012 Planning Rule requires the responsible official to use the best available scientific information to inform the development of the plan, including plan components and the monitoring program. The foundation from which the plan components were developed for the plan was provided by the Assessment Report of Ecological, Social, and Economic Conditions on the Custer Gallatin National Forest (February 2017) and associated resource reports, and the best available scientific information and analyses therein. From this foundation, resource specialists used several resources that included peer-reviewed and technical literature, databases and data management systems, and modeling tools and approaches to develop the plan. Geographic information system (GIS) data and product precision may vary, but provide a sufficient depiction for purposes of the plan. Resource specialists considered what is most accurate, reliable, and relevant in their use of the best available scientific information as described in the final EIS and plan record for this plan.

## Maintaining the Plan and Adapting to New Information

The plan is an integral part of an adaptive management cycle that guides future management decisions and actions. Plan-level adaptive management includes:

- Assessing information relevant to the Custer Gallatin;
- Developing land management direction to respond to social, economic, and ecological conditions;
- Monitoring management outcomes and changing circumstances; and
- Revising or amending management strategies accordingly.

This adaptive management cycle enables the Custer Gallatin to identify and respond to changing conditions, changing public desires, and new information, such as that obtained through research and scientific findings. The national forest's monitoring program is an integral part of this adaptive management cycle, consisting of monitoring questions and performance measures. The monitoring evaluation report will indicate whether a change to the plan may be warranted, based on new information.

## Chapter 2. Forestwide Direction

### Introduction

This chapter contains direction that applies forestwide, unless additional or more restrictive direction is found in the “geographic area” direction found in chapter 3. Forestwide direction includes desired conditions, goals, objectives, standards, guidelines, and suitability of lands for national forest uses and activities. It is not required that every topic include the full suite of plan components, and not every type of plan component is included for every topic. Plan direction for a topic may be found in multiple plan sections, for instance riparian management zone guidance is found in many plan topics.

Desired conditions describe the vision for the Custer Gallatin National Forest, while other plan components (such as objectives, standards, and guidelines) and management approaches give guidance on how to achieve this vision. Management actions should be designed to move towards applicable desired conditions or not foreclose the opportunity to maintain or achieve the desired conditions over the long term. Management actions may have short-term negative effects in order to achieve desired conditions over the long term.

The Custer Gallatin intends to move toward these forestwide desired conditions over the next 15 or more years, although they may not be achieved for many decades. Some desired conditions may be very difficult to achieve, but it is important to move toward them over time.

The possible actions and potential management approaches and strategies the Custer Gallatin may undertake to make progress in achieving the desired conditions described in this plan can be found in plan appendix A.

Other Forest Service direction, such as laws, regulations, policies, Executive orders, and Forest Service directives (manual and handbook), are not repeated in the plan. The following standards and guidelines apply to national forest land administered by the Custer Gallatin National Forest. These standards and guidelines are intended to supplement, not replace, the national and regional policies, standards, and guidelines found in Forest Service manuals and handbooks.

See the glossary for definitions and information on the terminology used in this chapter.

### Vision for the Custer Gallatin National Forest

The Custer Gallatin National Forest is a widely diverse landscape that sustains abundant native plants and animals, clean air and water, and productive soils, enhancing the quality of life for those who use and depend on the Custer Gallatin for life-enriching activities and livelihoods. Ecological services and multiple use products derived from this landscape are outcomes of management practices that are sustainable, enhance resiliency and adapt to societal and technological changes. Tribal members continue to have access to places of spiritual, ceremonial, and traditional cultural importance and the ability to collect traditional material. The Pryor Mountains, Ashland and Sioux Districts, offer distinct ecological conditions from the surrounding plains. Pine savannas of the Ashland and Sioux ranger districts drive local economies whereas higher profile buttes and hills are ecologically distinct from the surrounding plains providing forage, wildlife, timber, scenery and recreation opportunities largely unavailable outside national forest lands. The Pryor Mountains retain its remote, backcountry character. In the Greater Yellowstone Area, the Custer Gallatin is part of a large, connected expanse of core public



lands providing critical native habitats, outstanding scenery, opportunities for solitude, and primitive recreation. Front country areas are actively managed for multiple uses and transition to private land beyond the national forest boundary.

## Ecosystems

### Air Quality (AQ)

#### Introduction

The Forest Service must comply with Federal and State air quality laws and standards including the Clean Air Act and Wilderness Act. The 1970 Clean Air Act and amendments provides the foundation for protections of clean air on Federal lands. Under the Act, national ambient air quality standards (NAAQS) were established to protect human health and resources by identifying standards for six criteria pollutants: carbon monoxide, lead, nitrogen dioxide, ozone, particulate matter (PM<sub>2.5</sub> and PM<sub>10</sub>), and sulfur dioxide. All Federal, State, and private entities must comply with national ambient air quality standards. Smoke from wildfires is considered a natural part of the landscape and background conditions, and thus is exempt from national ambient air quality standards violations.

The 1977 Clean Air Act amendments direct Federal land managers to “preserve, protect, and enhance the air quality” in 156 mandatory class I national parks and wilderness areas. Class I areas (also known as class I airsheds) are wilderness areas that were designated before August 7, 1977, and are larger than 5,000 acres. All other land managed by Federal land managers is designated class II. Air quality-related values must be identified and protected in class I airsheds.

The Wilderness Act mandates that wilderness areas (class I and II) be preserved for wilderness character and managed to preserve and protect natural wilderness conditions. The Custer Gallatin does not manage any class I areas. There are two class II wilderness areas: the Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness and Lee-Metcalf Wilderness. Yellowstone National Park and the Northern Cheyenne Reservation are both class I airsheds in close proximity to the Custer Gallatin.

#### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-AQ)

- 01** The overall quality of the air contributes positively to human and ecosystem health, visibility, and recreation, multiple-uses and wilderness values acknowledging that short-term smoke impacts from local, regional, or national wildland fire may occur.

#### Goals (FW-GO-AQ)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with Tribal, Federal, and State agencies to meet air quality regulations as necessary. Prescribed burns are coordinated with appropriate partners (for example, the Montana and Idaho Airshed Group) to minimize smoke impacts.

### Soils (SOIL)

#### Introduction

National forests provide goods and services for the benefit of the American public. Management actions must maintain the land’s inherent ability to produce those goods and services for the enjoyment and use of current and future generations. Soil and land productivity must not be reduced as a result of

management actions. Soil productivity is maintained when the soil's capacity to support desired types and amounts of native vegetation remains unchanged from pre-disturbance levels.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-SOIL)

- 01** The inherent productivity of soil resources sustains native plant communities and wildlife populations while maintaining hydrologic function and providing for social and economic benefits.
- 02** Organic substrates (vegetative litter, coarse woody debris, and soil organic matter) are present in sufficient amounts to support soil fertility and ecological functions.
- 03** Coarse woody debris (downed woody material greater than or equal to 3 inches diameter) is present across forested vegetation communities in quantities consistent with the natural range of variation, as shown in table 1, providing forest structural diversity, soil ecological function and wildlife habitat. Individual stands may have little or no coarse woody debris, or a higher amount depending on site productivity, disturbance history and management objectives. Amounts below the desired average are found on hot dry sites, in developed recreation areas, and where the concern for fire impacts to values at risk is elevated. Higher amounts may be found on moist sites and riparian areas, areas with low direct human influence, areas that have burned, and those with insect or disease infestations.

**Table 1. Forestwide desired and existing tons per acre of coarse woody debris**

| Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type | Existing <sup>1</sup> Tons per Acre | Average Desired <sup>2</sup> Tons per Acre |
|---|-------------------------------------|--|
| Cold  | 17 (14-20)                          | 14-20                                      |
| Cool Moist                                      | 21 (18-24)                          | 19-27                                      |
| Warm Dry - Montane                              | 10 (7-13)                           | 6-11                                       |
| Warm Dry - Pine Savanna                         | 6 (5-8)                             | 2-11                                       |

1. Existing condition is the mean tons per acre (forestwide) with the 90 percent confidence interval shown in parenthesis. Sources: Region 1 Summary Database, Forest Inventory and Analysis data.

2. Desired tons/acre is derived from the tons/acre found in wilderness and roadless areas on the Custer Gallatin National Forest, Sources: Region 1 Summary Database, Forest Inventory and Analysis data.

### Standards (FW-STD-SOIL)

- 01** New management activities shall not create detrimental soil conditions on more than 15 percent of an activity area. In areas where less than 15 percent detrimental soil conditions exist from prior activities, the cumulative detrimental effect of current activity following project implementation and restoration must not exceed 15 percent. In areas where more than 15 percent detrimental soil conditions exist from prior activities, the cumulative detrimental effect from project implementation and restoration should not exceed the conditions prior to the planned activity and should move toward a net improvement in soil quality. This standard does not apply to intensively developed sites such as mines, developed recreation sites, administrative sites, rock quarries, or permanent roads.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-SOIL)

- 01** To reduce the potential for rill or gully erosion occurring along equipment tracks, untethered, ground based mechanical equipment should not operate on sustained grades steeper than 40 percent.
- 02** To limit the loss of effective rooting depth during temporary road construction, blading depth should be limited to the shallowest depth necessary.

- 03** To limit new detrimental soil disturbance from restoration activities, restoration methods used along skid trails, temporary roads, timber processing areas, landings and haul routes should directly address the specific type or types of detrimental soil disturbance present, and should be tailored to local soil and site conditions.
- 04** To avoid detrimental soil displacement from mechanical scarification during reforestation seedbed preparation, the depth of scarification should be the shallowest depth necessary.
- 05** To maintain land stability and operator safety, the use of ground-based equipment for timber harvesting or temporary road construction should avoid areas of high landslide potential.
- 06** To limit degradation of topsoil and creation of new noxious weed infestations, new soil pit or trench excavations should avoid leaving subsoil and substrate materials on the soil surface.
- 07** To maintain soil productivity, provide wildlife habitat, and sustain functioning forest ecosystems, sufficient coarse woody debris should be retained on the ground after vegetation management projects. Table 2 identifies minimum levels to be retained within treatment units. If the minimum levels of coarse woody debris are unavailable, future recruitment of large woody debris should be accounted for in the vegetation management prescription. Retained coarse woody debris should be comprised mainly of the largest diameter coarse woody material available. Exceptions may be allowed where there is elevated concern with fire risk.

**Table 2. Minimum average levels of coarse woody debris within each treatment unit after vegetation management projects**

| Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type | Common Conifer Species Present   | Minimum Average Coarse Woody Debris (tons per acre) |
|---|--|---|
| Cold and Cool Moist                             | Engelmann spruce<br>Subalpine fir<br>Lodgepole pine<br>Whitebark pine<br>Douglas-fir | 10  |
| Warm Dry  | Ponderosa pine<br>Douglas-fir  | 5   |

- 08** To ensure proper soil conditions exist for successful native vegetation re-establishment, mineral soil should be exposed, or the depth of accumulated wood ash substantially reduced, on portions of large (greater than 800 square feet) burn pile footprints, as indicated by site conditions after pile burning.

## Watershed, Aquatic, and Riparian Ecosystems

### Introduction

Custer Gallatin National Forest headwaters provide high quality water for plants, fish, and wildlife, and to users on and off the national forest in support of municipal drinking water, agriculture, recreation, and stock growers. Groundwater resources provide base flow and maintain water quality at a level that sustains the biological, physical, and chemical integrity of aquatic systems and the survival, growth,

reproduction, and migration of native aquatic species. Plan direction supports native fish, aquatic habitat, riparian areas, water quality, water quantity, and the conservation watershed network.

Plan components contribute to the recovery of federally listed species, and maintain the long-term persistence of species of conservation concern within the plan area or within the species' range. Threatened, endangered, proposed, and candidate species are identified by the U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service, which maintains current information regarding which listed species may be present on the Custer Gallatin National Forest. Species of conservation concern are those species, other than federally listed threatened, endangered, proposed, or candidate species, that are known to occur in the plan area, and for which the regional forester has determined that the best available scientific information indicates substantial concern about the species capability to persist over the long-term in the plan area (36 CFR 219.9; FSH 1909.12.52). Aquatic species of conservation concern for the Custer Gallatin National Forest and associated species-specific evaluation of distribution, abundance, population trends, habitat trends, habitat attributes, and relevant threats can be found at the Northern Region Land Management Planning webpage.

Plan guidance is divided into three sections: Watershed and Aquatics, Riparian Management Zones and Conservation Watershed Network. The conservation watershed network and priority watersheds under the Watershed Condition Framework can be found in plan appendix C, which goes into more depth regarding strategies to protect and restore native fish and water quality.

## **Watershed and Aquatics (WTR)**

### **Introduction**

Properly functioning watersheds provide suitable conditions for sustainable clean water, healthy stable soils, vegetation growth, forage, aquatic and wildlife habitats, and the ability to withstand high intensity floods. Healthy watersheds contribute to local economies in the planning area including quality lands and water for, but not limited to, hunting, fishing, timber production, irrigation, and ranching.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WTR)**

- 01** Watershed features, including natural disturbance regimes and aquatic or riparian habitats, are well distributed, diverse, and complex. Watersheds and associated aquatic ecosystems retain their inherent resilience to respond and adjust to disturbances, including climate change, without long-term, adverse changes to their physical or biological integrity.
- 02** Spatial connectivity is prevalent within or between watersheds. Lateral, longitudinal, vertical, and drainage network connections include floodplains, wetlands, upslope areas, headwater tributaries, and intact habitat refugia. These network connections provide unobstructed physical and chemical routes to areas critical for fulfilling life history requirements of aquatic, riparian-associated, and many upland species of flora and fauna.
- 03** Habitat and ecological conditions support the persistence of native aquatic and riparian associated plant and animal species.
- 04** Aquatic systems and riparian habitats express physical integrity, including physical integrity of shorelines, banks, and substrata, within their aquatic natural range of variation.

- 05** The sediment regime within water bodies is within the range of conditions of the reference watersheds, as defined by agency monitoring. Elements of the sediment regime include the timing, volume, rate, and character of sediment input, storage, and transport.
- 06** In-stream flows create and maintain riparian, aquatic, and wetland habitats; to retain patterns of sediment, nutrient, and wood routing and transport while maintaining reference dimensions (such as bankfull width, depth, entrenchment ratio, slope, and sinuosity); to ensure floodplain inundation occurs within the natural range of variation allowing floodplain development; and to ensure the timing, magnitude, duration, and spatial distribution of peak, high, and low flows are retained, within the range of conditions of the reference watersheds, as defined by agency monitoring.
- 07** Groundwater-dependent ecosystems, including wetlands, seeps, springs, fens, riparian areas, groundwater-fed streams and lakes, and groundwater aquifers, persist in size and exhibit water table elevations and function within their natural range of variation. The function of surface and subsurface aquatic ecosystems persists.
- 08** Municipal watersheds provide clean drinking water for those downstream communities that derive their principal water from them.
- 09** Beavers play an important ecological role within suitable habitat by increasing water residence time, spatial extent of water on the landscape, aquatic and riparian habitat complexity, and adaptation to changing climate conditions. Due to these benefits, beaver habitation is encouraged and present across the Custer Gallatin National Forest in suitable areas.
- 10** Riparian vegetation provides breeding, feeding, and sheltering opportunities, as well as habitat connectivity and movement corridors for a wide range of terrestrial, semi-aquatic and avian wildlife species.
- 11** Instream and riparian habitat conditions in managed watersheds move towards conditions similar to those in reference watersheds (conditions such as large woody debris recruitment, pool frequency and residual depth, width-to-depth ratios, stream shading and temperature, bank stability, etc.).
- 12** Water quality, including groundwater, meets or exceeds applicable state water quality standards, fully supports designated beneficial uses and are of sufficient quality to support surrounding communities, municipal water supplies, and natural resources. The national forest has no documented lands or areas that are delivering water, sediment, nutrients, or chemical pollutants that would result in conditions that violate the Montana and South Dakota states' water quality standards (such as total maximum daily loads) or is permanently above natural or background levels.

### Goals (FW-GO-WTR)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with Montana Fish Wildlife and Parks and South Dakota Department of Game, Fish and Parks to reintroduce genetically pure native fish species in their historic range, introduce in locations the state(s) and the Custer Gallatin agree to for native fish species conservation, and conserve existing populations of native fish.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-WTR)

- 01** Per decade, complete 600 miles of stream and headwater spring restoration; and 50 acres of lake, pond, and wetland restoration projects across the spectrum of montane and pine savanna habitats,

to maintain and enhance aquatic and riparian habits and species to maintain and enhance aquatic and riparian habitats and species.

- 02** Per decade, replace 5 to 7 stream crossing structures to meet Aquatic Organism Passage (AOP) design standards on National Forest System roads, prioritized in the Conversation Watershed Network.
- 03** Per decade, progress towards conservation of an at-risk aquatic species is made by completing 5 to 7 projects with design features that restore habitat or populations of such species.

### Standards (FW-STD-WTR)

- 01** Management activities in source water protection areas shall be consistent with applicable source water protection requirements and goals. Short-term effects from activities in source water protection areas may be acceptable when those activities support long-term benefits to source water protection areas and aquatic resources. Table 3 provides the current source water protection areas designated as municipal waters on the Custer Gallatin National Forest.

**Table 3. Municipal waters of the Custer Gallatin National Forest**

| Community        | Geographic Area              | Source Water                      | Hydrologic Unit Code | Hydrologic Unit Name            |
|------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| Bozeman          | Northern Gallatin Mountains  | Bozeman Creek                     | 100200080904         | Bozeman Creek                   |
| Bozeman          | Northern Gallatin Mountains  | Hyalite Creek                     | 100200081001         | Upper Hyalite Creek             |
| Bozeman          | Bridger Mountains            | Lyman Creek                       | 100200080802         | Lower Bridger Creek             |
| Red Lodge        | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains | West Fork Rock Creek <sup>1</sup> | 100700060905         | Lower West Fork Rock Creek      |
| West Yellowstone | Madison Mountains            | Whiskey Spring <sup>2</sup>       | 100200070204         | Middle South Fork Madison River |

1. Municipal groundwater wells currently supply municipal water.

2. Whiskey spring is primary water source, and city maintains groundwater wells during times of increased demand.

Note: This list contains the source water protection areas currently designated as municipal water sources, although all water that originates on the Custer Gallatin could be used for municipal supply at some point downstream.

- 02** Portable pump set-ups shall include containment provisions for fuel spills and fuel containers shall have appropriate containment provisions. Vehicles shall be parked in locations that avoid entry of spilled fuel into streams.
- 03** Project-specific best management practices (including the more protective of both Federal and the states of Montana and South Dakota best management practices) shall be incorporated in project plans as a principle mechanism for controlling non-point pollution sources, preventing the introduction and spread of invasive species, to meet soil and watershed desired conditions, and to protect beneficial uses. To restore watersheds, management activities in watersheds with approved total maximum daily loads (TMDLs) shall be designed to comply with the total maximum daily load allocations. Management activities that produce short-term sediment or nutrient increases should result in a long-term decrease in sediment or nutrient delivery and sediment or nutrient yield in the stream system, which would comply with total maximum daily loads.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-WTR)

- 01** To maintain stream channel stability and aquatic habitat, large woody debris should not be cut or removed from stream channels unless it threatens critical infrastructure or human safety, such as mid-channel bridge piers.
- 02** To maintain or protect spawning adult fish, juvenile fish, fish eggs, and fish embryos, management activities that have the potential to directly deliver sediment outside of natural levels to spawning and rearing habitat, should be limited to times outside of spawning, rearing, and incubation seasons unless the short-term effects would be offset by a long-term benefit.
- 03** To protect the ecological functions that beavers provide, management actions to reduce beaver threats to infrastructure should use techniques that sustain beavers (such as using pipes or “beaver deceivers” to reduce water levels, notching dams to restore streamflow, and/or other non-lethal methods.). Lethal removal should only be considered after non-lethal strategy options have been considered.
- 04** To prevent capture of fish and aquatic biota such as amphibians, new and reconstructed water surface withdrawal systems (such as new stream diversions and associated ditches) should be screened; water drafting should be screened and located away from native fish spawning locations.
- 05** To prevent capture of fish and other aquatic organisms such as amphibians, pumps should be screened when drafting water from streams. During the spawning season for native fish, pumping sites should be located away from spawning gravels.

## Riparian Management Zones (RMZ)

### Introduction

Riparian management zones are areas in watersheds near surface water where riparian and riparian-associated resources, functions, goods, and services receive primary emphasis, and where management activities are accordingly subject to specific standards and guidelines. Riparian management zones include riparian corridors, wetlands, intermittent streams, and other areas near surface water that are critical for maintaining the integrity of aquatic ecosystems, by (1) influencing the delivery of sediment, organic matter, and woody debris to streams; (2) enhancing root density and rooting depth to maintain or improve channel stability; (3) shading the stream; and (4) protecting surface and groundwater quantity and quality. Likewise, riparian habitats are disproportionately critical in providing habitat and habitat connectivity for fish, other aquatic biota, and wildlife.

Various land-use activities within riparian management zones may be allowed (specifics are in the plan components) but riparian and aquatic ecological conditions must be maintained, restored, or enhanced. Since land management actions may be necessary to achieve desired conditions within riparian management zones, riparian management zones are not intended to be “no touch zones,” but rather “carefully managed zones” with an increase in protections in close proximity to water resources.

To achieve watershed and riparian management zone desired conditions, the riparian management zone is broken into two zones called the inner and outer riparian management zones (table 4). Management activities are more restrictive in the inner riparian management zone than the outer riparian management zone and those differences are called out in specific plan components in this section. In general, the inner riparian management zone typically contains riparian dependent vegetation and

processes, whereas the outer riparian management zone recognizes the need to manage the riparian ecotone (the transition between upland and riparian areas) differently than adjacent upland areas.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RMZ)

- 01** Riparian management zones have native, and/or desirable non-native, assemblages of flora and fauna; well distributed physical, chemical, and biological conditions resilient to disturbance regimes; and species composition and structural diversity of native plant communities. Riparian management zones provide adequate summer and winter thermal regulation, and provide bank stability moderating the rate of surface erosion, bank erosion, and channel avulsion. Riparian management zones maintain and contribute to water quality and nutrient cycling processes, organic matter processing, and ecosystem metabolism.
- 02** Riparian management zones are, at a minimum, in a properly functioning condition to provide energy dissipation, in-stream thermal buffering, sediment capture and routing, groundwater recharge, and have an intact normative flow regime.



## Standards (FW-STD-RMZ)

**01** Riparian management zones shall be delineated as follows:

**Table 4. Riparian management zones: distances (in feet) and descriptions of inner and outer areas on each side of a stream reach, lake, pond, or wetland by riparian management zone category with descriptions. The break location between inner and outer riparian management zones should be identified in the field based on site characteristics**

| Stream, Wetland, or Water Body Type   | Minimum Distance: (inner/outer) Total | Riparian Management Zone Description  |
|---|---------------------------------------|---|
| Category 1: Fish bearing streams  | (100/100)<br>200                      | <p>The inner riparian management zone will consist of the stream and the area on either side of the stream extending from the edges of the active channel to the top of the slope break or inner gorge where side slopes exceed 35 percent, or to the outer edges of the 100-year floodplain, or to the outer edge of riparian vegetation, or to 100-feet slope distance from the edge of the stream, whichever is greatest.</p> <p>The Category 1 outer riparian management zone is the space between the outer edge of the inner riparian management zone and a distance equal to the height of one site-potential tree, or 100-feet slope distance (400 feet total, including both sides of the stream channel), whichever is greatest.</p>  |
| Category 2: Perennial and intermittent non-fish-bearing streams   | (100/50)<br>150                       | <p>The inner riparian management zone will consist of the stream and the area on either side of the stream extending from the edges of the active channel to the top of the slope break or inner gorge where side slopes exceed 35 percent, or to the outer edges of the 100-year floodplain, or to the outer edge of riparian vegetation, or to 100-feet slope distance from the edge of the stream, whichever is greatest.</p> <p>The Category 2 outer riparian management zone is the space between the outer edge of the inner riparian management zone and 50-feet slope distance.</p>   |
| Category 3: Wetlands, fens/peatlands, greater than one-acre, natural lakes/ponds, and constructed ponds/reservoirs                                | (100/50)<br>150                       | <p>The inner riparian management zone will consist of the water body or wetland and the surrounding banks extending to the top of the slope break where side slopes exceed 35 percent, or to the outer edge of riparian vegetation, or to the extent of seasonally saturated soil, or the extent of unstable and potentially unstable areas or to 100-feet slope distance from the outer edge of the water body or wetland or maximum pool elevation of constructed ponds and reservoirs, whichever is greatest.</p> <p>The outer riparian management zone is the space between the outer edge of the inner riparian management zone and the extent of unstable and potentially unstable areas; or 50 feet slope distance, whichever is greatest.</p>   |
| Category 4: Ephemeral streams, Wetlands, fens/peatlands, seeps, and springs less than or equal to one acre or lands identified as landslide prone | (50/50)<br>100                        | <p>The inner riparian management zone will consist of the water body or wetland or landslide prone area and the surrounding area extending to the top of the slope break where side slopes exceed 35 percent, or to the outer edge of riparian vegetation, or to the extent of seasonally saturated soil, or the extent of unstable and potentially unstable areas or to 50-feet slope distance from the outer edge of the water body or wetland or landslide prone area or maximum pool elevation of constructed ponds and reservoirs; whichever is greatest.</p> <p>The outer riparian management zone is the space between the outer edge of the inner riparian management zone and the extent of unstable and potentially unstable areas; or 50 feet slope distance, whichever is greatest.</p> |

If an already established road is located within the inner riparian management zone and is more than 50 feet from the ordinary high watermark or bank-full channel, then the inner riparian management zone can end at the toe of the road fill, so that the road prism and all uphill area of that point is considered part of the outer riparian management zone.

Riparian management zones do not apply to ditches that were constructed to deliver water to downstream users. Riparian management zone protections do not apply to constructed ponds or reservoirs less than 1 acre, which are developed for the purpose and continued use of livestock watering. Constructed ponds or reservoirs greater than one acre, developed for the purpose and continued use of livestock watering, receive riparian management zone protections only if shorelines are composed of riparian vegetation and the pond or reservoir has a constructed outlet or spillway where water regularly is conveyed throughout the course of

the year. Constructed ponds may be removed and rehabilitated for hydrologic and riparian restoration purposes as opportunities arise.

- 02** Vegetation management shall only occur in the inner riparian management zone if the purpose is to restore or enhance ecological integrity of aquatic and riparian-associated resources. Exceptions may be allowed where needed to manage infrastructure within the entire riparian management zone as long as effects are localized to the smallest footprint necessary, and aquatic and riparian ecological function are maintained.
- 03** Pesticides, other toxicants and chemicals, or bio-controls shall only be applied within riparian management zones if needed to maintain, protect, or enhance aquatic and riparian resources or to restore native plant communities.
- 04** Refueling activity, equipment maintenance, and storage of fuels and other toxicants shall be located outside of inner riparian management zone to minimize effects to aquatic resources. If refueling, equipment maintenance or storage is needed within riparian management zones, the locations must be approved by the Forest Service and have an approved spill prevention, containment, notification, and cleanup plan that includes appropriate provisions.
- 05** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed within riparian management zones.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL-RMZ)

- 01** To reduce the likelihood of sediment input to inner riparian management zones and to reduce adverse effects to stream channels and riparian areas, new permanent or reconstructed livestock handling or loading facilities (for example, corrals), livestock handling activities, watering tanks and associated infrastructure, and livestock trailing should be located outside of the riparian management zone unless it can be demonstrated these facilities or handling activities will not affect the riparian area functionality or that such placement improves an existing situation. Livestock trailing is allowed when herding livestock away from riparian areas to uplands or to another pasture to meet riparian resource desired conditions.
- 02** To reduce the likelihood of sediment input to inner riparian management zones and reduce adverse effects to stream channels and riparian areas, temporary fire facilities (such as incident bases, camps, staging areas, heli-spots, retardant batch plants, and other centers for incident activities) should be located outside of riparian management zones. When no practicable alternative exists, all appropriate measures to maintain, restore, or enhance aquatic and riparian associated resources should be used.
- 03** To reduce the likelihood of sediment input to inner riparian management zones and reduce adverse effects to stream channels and riparian areas, the following activities should be avoided in riparian management zones: new permanent or temporary roads and the construction of machine fireline, except where necessary for stream crossings or where those activities would contribute to attainment of aquatic and riparian desired conditions.
- 04** To reduce the likelihood of sediment input to inner riparian management zones and reduce adverse effects to stream channels and riparian areas, new landings, skid trails, slash piles, burn piles, and staging or decking areas should be located outside riparian management zones. If these activities are needed inside of riparian management zones, the disturbance area footprint should not deliver sediment to watercourses and activities should be located outside the active floodplain.

- 05** To meet the role of downed or large woody debris in aquatic and riparian ecosystems, trees felled inside inner riparian management zones should be left onsite unless they will be in excess of what is needed to achieve watershed and riparian desired conditions. Exceptions may be allowed where needed to manage infrastructure within the inner riparian management zone.
- 06** To protect ecosystem functions of the inner riparian management zone, vegetation management in the outer riparian management zone should be specifically designed to ensure the ecosystem functions of the inner riparian management zone are protected.
- 07** To maintain thermal cover for aquatic systems and riparian biota and to minimize the risk for potential wind-throw, clear-cut harvest should not occur in the riparian management zone.
- 08** To ensure present and future woody debris recruitment into aquatic and riparian ecosystems and to ensure there are no adverse effects to aquatic habitat and biota from excessive sediment delivery and other direct and indirect effects, salvage harvest should not occur in inner riparian management zones.

#### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-RMZ)**

- 01** Riparian management zones are not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable as outlined under the riparian management zone plan components.
- 02** Firewood collection is not suitable within the inner riparian management zone.

### **Conservation Watershed Network (CWN)**

#### **Introduction**

The conservation watershed network is a specific subset of watersheds (10- or 12-digit hydrologic unit codes) in which the long-term conservation and preservation of pure Westslope cutthroat trout, Yellowstone cutthroat trout, and native prairie fish assemblages are prioritized, specifically in areas with an absence of non-native competition and also in pine savanna geographic areas where perennial water and native fish species overlap. Conservation watershed network tables and maps are located in plan appendix C.

#### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-CWN)**

- 01** The conservation watershed network contains functionally intact watersheds that are capable of responding to disturbance. At any point in time, some watersheds in the network will have high quality water and habitat and provide source populations of native fish, and other native organisms, to recolonize recovering habitat elsewhere in the network.

#### **Objectives (FW-OBJ-CWN)**

- 01** Reduce sediment production on five to eight miles of National Forest System roads, per year, within the conservation watershed network by enhancing the roadway drainage erosion control mechanisms.

## Guidelines (FW-GDL-CWN)

- 01 To reduce the likelihood of sediment input to streams and retain or improve high quality habitat in the conservation watershed network, net increases (measured from beginning to end of each project) in number of stream crossings and road lengths should be avoided in riparian management zones, unless the net increase would improve ecological function in aquatic ecosystems.

## Terrestrial Vegetation

### Introduction

Plan guidance for terrestrial vegetation is divided into three sections: At-Risk Plant Species; Forested Vegetation; and Grassland, Shrubland, Woodland, Riparian, Alpine, and Sparse Vegetation.

## At-Risk Plant Species (PRISK)

### Introduction

This section addresses plant species that are recognized as at-risk species. This includes species recognized as threatened, endangered, proposed, or candidate species under the Endangered Species Act by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and species identified by the regional forester as species of conservation concern. Species of conservation concern are species other than federally recognized species that are known to occur in the plan area and for which the regional forester has determined that the best available scientific information indicates substantial concern about the species' capability to persist over the long term in the plan area (36 CFR 219.9; FSH 1909.12.52).

The regional forester's list of plant species of conservation concern for the Custer Gallatin National Forest and associated species-specific evaluation of distribution, abundance, population trends, habitat trends, habitat attributes, and relevant threats are found at the Northern Region land management planning webpage. Forest Service Manual 2670 provides additional at-risk species management direction.

In addition to plan components outlined below, meeting or moving towards the desired conditions outlined for each of the broad potential vegetation types found in the terrestrial vegetation and invasive species sections are intended to also provide for long-term persistence of at-risk plant species.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-PRISK)

- 01 Habitat conditions support the recovery and persistence of plant species that are recognized as at-risk species. Ecological conditions and processes that sustain the habitats currently or potentially occupied by these species are present.
- 02 Whitebark pine promotes community diversity and community stability in high mountain ecosystems. Ecological conditions and processes lead to an increase in cone-bearing trees, particularly in areas projected to be suitable under future climates, and a decrease in susceptibility to succession to more shade tolerant conifers, mountain pine beetle, wildland fire and blister rust.

### Goals (FW-GO-PRISK)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with the Greater Yellowstone Coordinating Committee-Whitebark Pine Subcommittee on whitebark pine conservation strategies and adaptive management of habitat.

- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with other agencies and landowners to expand inventories, identify potential habitat for at-risk species, and promote protection and restoration of associated habitats.
- 03** The Custer Gallatin National Forest collaborates with Tribes, Federal, and State agencies, and other partners regarding applicable conservation plans in seeking progress towards conservation of at-risk plant species.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-PRISK)

- 01** Progress towards conservation of an at-risk plant species is made by completing at least two projects per decade with design features that restore habitat or populations of such species.
- 02** Treat a minimum of 1,000 acres per decade for the purpose of sustaining or restoring whitebark pine. Achieving this would also contribute to FW-OBJ-VEGF-01.

### Standards (FW-STD-PRISK)

- 01** Management activities that have potential to adversely affect the long-term persistence of at-risk plant populations shall be mitigated with project-level design criteria, or the populations avoided during project implementation.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-PRISK)

- 01** To protect at-risk plant species, wildfire control lines and retardant should not be placed within known populations of at-risk plant species with the exception of where they may be allowed for purposes of restoration or being advantageous to the at-risk plant species, or when needed to protect human life or private property or to manage infrastructure. For at-risk plant populations, exceptions will be determined based on the species and habitats that may be affected in specific fire incidents.
- 02** To support the recovery or long-term persistence of whitebark pine, when conducting management activities in or near whitebark pine trees or stands identified for collection of scion, pollen, or seed; areas identified as important for cone production or blister rust resistance; and whitebark pine plantations, project-level design criteria or wildland fire management strategies should protect them from potential loss.

## Forested Vegetation (VEGF)

### Introduction

The forested vegetation (VEGF) section deals exclusively with lands with the potential of being forested, not areas such as grasslands, shrublands or alpine environments. These lands are found on one of the three forested Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Types found on the Custer Gallatin: Cold, Cool Moist, and Warm Dry. Due to important differences in species composition and biophysical setting, the Warm Dry potential vegetation type has been divided into two zones: Montane and Pine Savanna. Forested desired conditions vary by broad potential vegetation types due to differences in climatic conditions, productivity, plant diversity, and disturbance regimes. Broad potential vegetation types represent aggregations of similar biophysical environments. The vegetation communities that would develop over time, given no major disturbances (the climax plant community), would be similar within a potential vegetation type. However, existing vegetation condition may vary widely on a potential

vegetation type, reflecting each site's unique history, pattern of disturbances, and point in time along the successional pathways. The key ecosystem characteristics below change through time whereas potential vegetation types generally remain constant.

The desired ranges apply at the forestwide and at the geographic area scales (as indicated) and would not necessarily be appropriate to apply at smaller scales, such as project areas. Rather, projects and stand-level treatments would contribute to the broad desired conditions and not preclude their achievement. Fluctuations in vegetation conditions over time are expected. Managing a particular vegetation characteristic at the upper, lower, or mid-point of the desired range may be appropriate, as influenced by other ecological, social, or economic objectives. Plan appendix A provides more discussion on how to interpret and manage towards desired conditions for forested vegetation.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-VEGF)

- 01** The amount and distribution of forest cover types supports the natural diversity of seral stages, habitats, and species diversity across the landscape and allows for appropriate recruitment and responses following disturbances. The desired condition for the distribution of dominance types is shown in table 5. Desired condition ranges apply to lands with a forested potential vegetation at the forestwide scale.

**Table 5. Existing and desired conditions for coniferous forest dominance types (percentage of forest area in the dominance type). Desired condition applies to lands with a forested potential vegetation, at the forestwide scale.**

| Dominant Species <sup>1</sup>  | Desired Range <sup>2</sup><br>(percentage of area) | Existing Condition <sup>3</sup><br>(percentage of area) |
|--------------------------------|--|---|
| Douglas fir                    | 15% - 30%  | 23%   |
| Ponderosa pine                 | 10% - 15%  | 9%  |
| Lodgepole pine                 | 15% - 30%  | 24%   |
| Engelmann spruce/Subalpine fir | 10% - 20%  | 12%   |
| Whitebark pine                 | 15% - 20%  | 14%   |

1. Dominance reflects the most common tree species in a stand.
2. Desired condition is informed by a natural range of variability analysis using SIMPPLLE, a spatially explicit, landscape level, dynamic simulation model (plan appendix D).
3. Existing condition is from the "Dom40" attribute of Northern Region Vegetation Map data based on 2015 imagery and does not include recently disturbed forest. Existing condition values do not sum to 100 percent because approximately 15 percent of the forested vegetation is in an early seral condition and not associated with dominance by any particular species or is dominated by minor species such as aspen.

- 02** The national forest supports the natural diversity and distribution of native tree species, generally within the natural range of variation. This diversity and distribution support the resilience and adaptive capacity of individual tree species. The forestwide desired condition for presence of tree species is described in table 6.

**Table 6. Existing and desired conditions for tree species presence (percentage of forested area where particular species are present). Desired condition applies to lands with a forested potential vegetation, at the forestwide scale.**

| Species     | Desired Range <sup>1</sup><br>(percentage of area) | Existing <sup>2</sup><br>(percentage of area) |
|-------------|--|---|
| Douglas fir | 20% - 40%  | 21% (18% - 24%)                               |

| Species          | Desired Range <sup>1</sup><br>(percentage of area) | Existing <sup>2</sup><br>(percentage of area) |
|------------------|--|---|
| Ponderosa pine   | 10% - 15%  | 8% (6% - 10%)                                 |
| Lodgepole pine   | 20% - 40%  | 26% (23% - 30%)                               |
| Engelmann spruce | 20% - 30%  | 27% (24% - 31%)                               |
| Subalpine fir    | 30% - 40%  | 34% (31% - 37%)                               |
| Whitebark pine   | 15% - 25%  | 16% (14% - 19%)                               |

1. Desired range refers to the proportion of forested area with at least one live tree of the species per acre, in any size class. Range is derived from SIMPPLLE, a spatially explicit, landscape level, dynamic simulation model (plan appendix D).

2. Existing condition (with 90 percent confidence limit) comes from the Northern Region Forest Inventory and Analysis Summary Database v. 1.9.12.

**03** The national forest supports a diversity of successional stages that is ecologically resilient and sustainable. Table 7 represents the desired condition of successional stages (estimated by size classes) across the national forest. The location and abundance of size classes fluctuate over time as forests develop, are influenced by disturbances, and may be limited by site productivity and species composition. The range of desired conditions allows for variations in the mix of structural stages to respond to potential changes in climate. Desired condition ranges for each broad potential vegetation type apply at both the forestwide and geographic area scales.

**Table 7. Existing and desired conditions for tree size classes within Northern Region Broad Vegetation Types. Desired condition applies to lands with a forested potential vegetation, at the forestwide and geographic area scales.**

| Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type <sup>1</sup> | Size Class <sup>2</sup>                 | Desired Range <sup>3</sup><br>(percentage of area) | Existing <sup>4</sup><br>(percentage of area) |
|--|---|--|---|
| Cold   | Seedling and Sapling (<5 inches d.b.h.) | 5% - 25%   | 8%  |
|  | Small Tree (5–9.9 inches d.b.h.)        | 5% - 25%   | 36%   |
|  | Medium Tree (10–14.9 inches d.b.h.)     | 50% - 75%  | 55%   |
|  | Large Tree (15 inches + d.b.h.)         | 5% - 20%   | 1%  |
| Cool Moist   | Seedling and Sapling (<5 inches d.b.h.) | 5% - 35%   | 15%   |
|  | Small Tree (5–9.9 inches d.b.h.)        | 5% - 30%   | 22%   |
|  | Medium Tree (10–14.9 inches d.b.h.)     | 35% - 60%  | 60%   |
|  | Large Tree (15 inches + d.b.h.)         | 10% - 25%  | 3%  |
| Warm Dry - Montane   | Seedling and Sapling (<5 inches d.b.h.) | 10% - 40%  | 23%   |
|  | Small Tree (5–9.9 inches d.b.h.)        | 5% - 15%   | 24%   |
|  | Medium Tree (10–14.9 inches d.b.h.)     | 20% - 35%  | 50%   |
|  | Large Tree (15 inches + d.b.h.)         | 30% - 60%  | 3%  |
| Warm Dry - Pine Savanna                                      | Seedling and Sapling (<5 inches d.b.h.) | 5% - 35%   | 38%   |
|  | Small Tree (5–9.9 inches d.b.h.)        | 1% - 25%   | 6%  |
|  | Medium Tree (10–14.9 inches d.b.h.)     | 1% - 25%   | 48%   |
|  | Large Tree (15 inches + d.b.h.)         | 55% - 95%  | 8%  |

1. Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type is a coarse grouping of Northern Region Habitat Type Groups that is applicable for broad-scale analysis and monitoring.

2. Size class is the basal area weighted average diameter class of live trees, shown as ranges of diameter at breast height (d.b.h.), or 4.5 feet above ground level. A stand within a particular size class may contain trees of multiple diameters, smaller or larger than the average class range.

3. Desired condition is informed by a natural range of variability analysis using SIMPPLLE, a spatially explicit, landscape level, dynamic simulation model (plan appendix D).

4. Existing condition is forestwide. Data Source: Northern Region Vegetation Map data based on 2015 imagery.

- 04** The national forest supports a range of forest densities that is resilient and sustainable. Table 8 displays the desired condition ranges for the percent of each broad potential vegetation type in each density class. The range of desired conditions allows for variations in the mix of density classes across the landscape to respond to potential changes in climate. Desired condition ranges for each broad potential vegetation type apply at both the forestwide and geographic area scales.

**Table 8. Existing and desired conditions for density classes within Northern Region Broad Vegetation Types. Desired condition applies to lands with a forested potential vegetation, at the forestwide and geographic area scales.**

| Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type <sup>1</sup> | Density Class <sup>2</sup>   | Desired Range <sup>3</sup><br>(percentage of area) | Existing <sup>4</sup><br>(percentage of area) |
|--|------------------------------|--|---|
| Cold   | Low (<40% canopy cover)      | 20% - 65%  | 26%   |
|  | Medium (40–60% canopy cover) | 20% - 55%  | 22%   |
|  | High (>60% canopy cover)     | 15% - 30%  | 52%   |
| Cool Moist   | Low (<40% canopy cover)      | 10% - 35%  | 22%   |
|  | Medium (40–60% canopy cover) | 25% - 45%  | 18%   |
|  | High (>60% canopy cover)     | 30% - 65%  | 60%   |
| Warm Dry - Montane   | Low (<40% canopy cover)      | 35% - 65%  | 36%   |
|  | Medium (40–60% canopy cover) | 30% - 50%  | 19%   |
|  | High (>60% canopy cover)     | 5% - 20%   | 45%   |
| Warm Dry - Pine Savanna                                      | Low (<40% canopy cover)      | 60% - 95%  | 76%   |
|  | Medium (40–60% canopy cover) | 5% - 20%   | 22%   |
|  | High (>60% canopy cover)     | 5% - 25%   | 2%  |

1. Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type is a coarse grouping of Northern Region Habitat Type Groups that is applicable for broad-scale analysis and monitoring.
2. Density classes are defined by average canopy cover. Canopy cover refers to the proportion of the forest floor covered by the vertical projection of tree crowns.
3. Desired condition is informed by a natural range of variability analysis using SIMPPLLE, a spatially explicit, landscape level, dynamic simulation model (plan appendix D).
4. Existing condition is forestwide. Data Source: Northern Region Vegetation Map data based on 2015 imagery.

- 05** Snags (standing dead trees) occur within all forested potential vegetation and cover types to provide adequate habitat for snag-dependent wildlife and pollinator species. Snags vary in amount and distribution across the landscape over time, based on site productivity, species composition, and disturbance patterns such as wildfire, wind, insects, and disease. A range of decay classes is present. The average desired quantity of snags (snag density) is described in table 9. The desired condition for the distribution of snags, defined as the percent of the area containing at least one snag of a given size class, is shown in table 10. While achieving these desired average conditions at large scales, snags are unevenly distributed across the national forest with densities that are generally higher in riparian areas to provide for snag-dependent species and woody debris in streams and lower along roads and in developed sites or other areas where the concern for human safety is elevated. Individual stands may have no snags, or a higher quantity, depending upon site-specific conditions. Desired condition ranges for each forest type apply at both the forestwide and geographic area scales.



**Table 9. Average existing and desired conditions for snag density; 90 percent confidence limit shown in (). Desired condition applies at the forestwide and geographic area scales.**

| Snag Analysis Group <sup>1</sup> | Snags per acre 10 inches+ Existing <sup>2</sup> | Snags per acre 10 inches+ Desired <sup>3</sup> | Snags per acre 15 inches+ Existing <sup>2</sup> | Snags per acre 15 inches+ Desired <sup>3</sup> | Snags per acre 20 inches+ Existing <sup>2</sup> | Snags per acre 20 inches+ Desired <sup>3</sup> |
|----------------------------------|---|--|---|--|---|--|
| Cold                             | 28.4<br>(23.1–33.6)                             | 27.5<br>(21.8–33.6)                            | 8.2<br>(6.2–10.3)                               | 7.9<br>(5.9–10.1)                              | 2.1<br>(1.3–3)                                  | 2.1<br>(1.2–3)                                 |
| Lodgepole Pine                   | 22.4<br>(16.5–29)                               | 30.7<br>(21.9–40.3)                            | 3.7<br>(2.3–5.3)                                | 4.2<br>(2.5–6.1)                               | 0.6<br>(0.1–1.1)                                | 0.8<br>(0.1–1.6)                               |
| Cool Moist                       | 19.9<br>(15–25.3)                               | 22.5<br>(16.9–28.7)                            | 6.3<br>(4.4–8.4)                                | 7.1<br>(4.9–9.5)                               | 1.6<br>(0.8–2.6)                                | 1.8<br>(0.8–3)                                 |
| Warm Dry                         | 9.3<br>(6.6–12.5)                               | 9<br>(3.9–15.7)                                | 2.1<br>(1.3–3)                                  | 1.5<br>(0.3–3)                                 | 0.5<br>(0.1–0.9)                                | 0.2<br>(0.1–0.6)                               |

1. Snag analysis groups are consistent with the Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Types except that areas dominated by lodgepole pine are separated.
2. Existing condition (with 90 percent confidence limit) is forestwide average and comes from the Northern Region Summary Database v. 1.9.12.
3. Desired condition is also a forestwide average and is derived from snag levels (with 90 percent confidence interval) found in predominantly unmanaged areas of the Custer Gallatin National Forest. Data source: Northern Region Summary Database v. 1.9.12.

**Table 10. Existing and desired conditions for snag distribution; 90 percent confidence limit shown in (). Desired condition applies at the forestwide and geographic area scales.**

| Snag Analysis Group <sup>1</sup> | Percentage of area with at least one snag per acre 10 inches+ Existing <sup>2</sup> | Percentage of area with at least one snag per acre 10 inches+ Desired <sup>3</sup> | Percentage of area with at least one snag per acre 15 inches+ Existing <sup>2</sup> | Percentage of area with at least one snag per acre 15 inches+ Desired <sup>3</sup> | Percentage of area with at least one snag per acre 20 inches+ Existing <sup>2</sup> | Percentage of area with at least one snag per acre 20 inches+ Desired <sup>3</sup> |
|----------------------------------|---|--|---|--|---|--|
| Cold                             | 43%<br>(37% - 49%)  | 44%<br>(37% - 51%)   | 23%<br>(18% - 28%)  | 24%<br>(18% - 30%)   | 9%<br>(6% - 13%)  | 10%<br>(6% - 13%)  |
| Lodgepole Pine                   | 36%<br>(29% - 43%)  | 47%<br>(37% - 56%)   | 12%<br>(8% - 17%)   | 15%<br>(9% - 21%)  | 3%<br>(1% - 5%)   | 4%<br>(1% - 8%)  |
| Cool Moist                       | 39%<br>(32% - 47%)  | 44%<br>(36% - 52%)   | 21%<br>(16% - 27%)  | 25%<br>(18% - 32%)   | 9%<br>(5% - 14%)  | 10%<br>(5% - 16%)  |
| Warm Dry                         | 20%<br>(16% - 25%)  | 17%<br>(10% - 25%)   | 8%<br>(5% - 11%)  | 5%<br>(1% - 10%)   | 3%<br>(1% - 5%)   | 2%<br>(0% - 4%)  |

1. Snag analysis groups are consistent with the Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Types except that areas dominated by lodgepole pine are separated (plan appendix D).
2. Existing condition (with 90 percent confidence limit) comes from the Northern Region Summary Database v. 1.9.12.
3. Desired condition is also a forestwide average and is derived from snag levels (with 90% confidence interval) found in predominantly unmanaged areas of the Custer Gallatin National Forest. Data source: Northern Region Summary Data Base.

**06** Landscape-scale patch configuration and composition is conducive to ecological processes operating within their natural range of variation including the extent, intensity, and frequency of disturbance events, to provide for habitat connectivity, wildlife movement and gene flow. In montane ecosystems, the density of patches per square mile is doubled relative to 2017. In particular, large contiguous patches of medium-sized, closed canopy forest conditions are reduced (smaller percentage of landscape) as well as disaggregated to reduce contagion and increase landscape-level ecosystem diversity and heterogeneity. In turn, the extent and density of early and late seral patches is increased. Early seral conditions are also less aggregated and more evenly distributed across the

landscape resulting in greater diversity and contrast among patches. Table 11 shows the desired patch size distribution at the geographic area and forestwide scale.

**Table 11. Current and desired patch size distribution for three broad seral stages in each Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type (PVT). Desired condition applies to lands with a forested potential vegetation, at the forestwide scale.**

| Northern Region Broad PVT | Patch Size (acres) | Early-Seral (0-5 inches d.b.h.): Current <sup>1</sup> (percentage of PVT) | Early-Seral (0-5 inches d.b.h.): Desired <sup>2</sup> (percentage of PVT) | Mid-Seral (5-15 inches d.b.h.): Current <sup>1</sup> (percentage of PVT) | Mid-Seral (5-15 inches d.b.h.): Desired <sup>2</sup> (percentage of PVT) | Late-Seral (>15 inches d.b.h.): Current <sup>1</sup> (percentage of PVT) | Late-Seral (>15 inches d.b.h.): Desired <sup>2</sup> (percentage of PVT) |
|---------------------------|--------------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| Cold                      | <40                | 5%  | 3% - 6%   | 10%  | 11% - 16%  | 1%   | 11% - 14%  |
|                           | 40-100             | 1%  | 1% - 2%   | 5%   | 4% - 8%  | 0%   | 4% - 6%  |
|                           | 100-500            | 2%  | 1% - 5%   | 11%  | 6% - 14%   | 0%   | 7% - 11%   |
|                           | 500-1,000          | 1%  | 0% - 2%   | 5%   | 2% - 6%  | 0%   | 3% - 6%  |
|                           | >1,000             | 1%  | 0% - 8%   | 59%  | 3% - 16%   | 0%   | 8% - 32%   |
| Cool Moist                | <40                | 6%  | 5% - 11%  | 13%  | 11% - 14%  | 2%   | 12% - 15%  |
|                           | 40-100             | 2%  | 1% - 4%   | 8%   | 4% - 6%  | 1%   | 4% - 5%  |
|                           | 100-500            | 3%  | 1% - 6%   | 14%  | 6% - 10%   | 1%   | 6% - 9%  |
|                           | 500-1,000          | 1%  | 0% - 2%   | 6%   | 2% - 5%  | 0%   | 2% - 4%  |
|                           | >1,000             | 5%  | 0% - 8%   | 39%  | 4% - 15%   | 0%   | 8% - 19%   |
| Warm Dry - Montane        | <40                | 7%  | 7% - 15%  | 14%  | 10% - 16%  | 3%   | 19% - 23%  |
|                           | 40-100             | 2%  | 2% - 4%   | 7%   | 2% - 4%  | 1%   | 6% - 9%  |
|                           | 100-500            | 2%  | 3% - 6%   | 13%  | 2% - 5%  | 1%   | 7% - 15%   |
|                           | 500-1,000          | 1%  | 1% - 3%   | 5%   | 0% - 2%  | 0%   | 2% - 6%  |
|                           | >1,000             | 10%   | 1% - 10%  | 36%  | 0% - 4%  | 0%   | 4% - 23%   |
| Warm Dry - Pine Savanna   | <40                | 5%  | 1% - 11%  | 8%   | 0% - 9%  | 3%   | 5% - 6%  |
|                           | 40-100             | 2%  | 0% - 1%   | 4%   | 0% - 2%  | 1%   | 2% - 3%  |
|                           | 100-500            | 4%  | 0% - 4%   | 7%   | 0% - 5%  | 1%   | 4% - 7%  |
|                           | 500-1,000          | 3%  | 0% - 3%   | 4%   | 0% - 3%  | 1%   | 2% - 4%  |
|                           | >1,000             | 24%   | 0% - 20%  | 32%  | 0% - 21%   | 1%   | 35% - 76%  |

1. Data Source: Northern Region Vegetation Map data based on 2015 imagery.

2. Desired Condition ranges based on the Natural Range of Variability analysis using the SIMPPLLE model.

**07** The extent, concentration and distribution of large live tree structure is sufficient to provide structural diversity, wildlife habitat, future snags, and potential future late-seral forest conditions. The desired range of large tree structure is shown in table 12. Desired condition ranges for each broad potential vegetation type apply at both the forestwide and geographic area scales.

**Table 12. Existing and desired conditions for large live tree structure.<sup>1</sup> Desired condition applies to lands with a forested potential vegetation, at the forestwide and geographic area scale**

| Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type <sup>2</sup> | Desired Range <sup>3</sup> (percentage of area) | Existing <sup>4</sup> (percentage of area) |
|--|---|--|
| Cold   | 45%–80%   | 26% (21%–30%)                              |
| Cool Moist   | 30%–60%   | 33% (27%–40%)                              |
| Warm Dry - Montane   | 45%–80%   | 31% (24%–39%)                              |
| Warm Dry - Pine Savanna                                      | 55%–95%   | 13% (8%–18%)                               |

1. Large tree structure refers specifically to stands with 5 live trees per acre greater than 15 inches in the Warm Dry broad potential vegetation type, 10 live trees per acre greater than 15 inches in the Cool Moist broad potential vegetation type, and 8 live trees per acre greater than 15 inches in the Cold broad potential vegetation type.

2. Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type is a coarse grouping of Northern Region Habitat Type Groups that is applicable for broad-scale analysis and monitoring.
3. Desired condition is informed by a natural range of variability analysis using SIMPPLLE, a spatially explicit, landscape level, dynamic simulation model (plan appendix D).
4. Existing condition (with 90 percent confidence limit) comes from the Northern Region Summary Database v. 1.9.12.

- 08** Forest composition, structure, and pattern allows for native forest insect and diseases to occur across their native extent and affect vegetation at a scope and scale consistent with their natural role. Forests impacted by insects and disease provide structural features including snags, downed wood, and decaying live trees important for wildlife habitat.
- 09** The amount of old growth is maintained or increased relative to existing condition shown in table 13. The location and condition of old growth is dynamic over time. Development and maintenance of old growth stands is influenced by succession, natural disturbance regimes, silvicultural treatments, and climate. Landscape-level resiliency is provided by promoting a mosaic of younger forests to replace old growth when it is killed by stand-replacing events. The desired condition of old growth is described in table 13.

**Table 13. Forestwide desired and existing condition of old growth**

| Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Types <sup>1</sup> | Existing Condition (90 percent confidence interval) <sup>2</sup> | Desired conditions   |
|---|--|--|
| Forestwide  | 17%<br>(15% - 20%)   | Old growth is distributed widely across the forest, and levels vary depending on available compositions and structures, disturbance levels, and management objectives. The amount of old growth is generally similar to or greater than that of the existing condition. Old growth distribution that complements habitat connectivity is desired. Old growth is resilient to impacts that might result in the loss of old growth characteristics, such as insect infestations, wildfire, and drought. Old growth contains components that contribute to high quality habitat, including large or very large live trees with rot or broken tops, snags, downed woody material, and a diversity of tree size classes and canopy layers. A variety of old growth types are present. |
| Cold  | 32%<br>(26% - 37%)   | Old growth in this broad potential vegetation type generally consists of whitebark pine, Engelmann spruce, and subalpine fir, with stand-level resiliency and open structures desired in whitebark pine types versus spruce/fir types which may be denser and more layered.  |
| Cool Moist  | 22%<br>(16% - 27%)   | Old growth in this broad potential vegetation type may be subject to wider pulses of availability, due to the preponderance of lodgepole pine and high severity low frequency disturbance regimes. Old growth includes spruce/fir or Douglas-fir dominated stands, often with dense canopy layers, as well as even-aged lodgepole pine.  |
| Warm Dry - Montane  | 4%<br>(1% - 6%)  | Old growth is dominated by Douglas-fir, often in large patches with an uneven-aged and irregular tree distribution. Stands are resilient to low severity disturbance. Other species such as juniper and aspen are valuable habitat components.   |
| Warm Dry - Pine Savanna                                       | 3%<br>(1% - 6%)  | Old growth is dominated by pure stands of large, fire-resistant ponderosa pine, in various patch sizes with an uneven-aged and irregular tree distribution. Stands are resilient to low severity disturbance.  |

1. Old growth forests are defined specifically as forests that meet the minimum criteria established for the Northern Region of the Forest Service (see glossary) unless more current scientific information becomes available.
2. Existing condition shown is the mean percent of old growth (see glossary) with the 90 percent confidence interval shown in parenthesis. Source is Northern Region Summary Database, Forest Inventory and Analysis data, updated in 2015.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-VEGF)

- 01** Complete vegetation management treatments (such as timber harvest, planned ignitions, thinning, planting) on a minimum of 6,000 to 7,500 acres of the Custer Gallatin, measured as an annual average on a decadal basis, to maintain or move towards achieving desired conditions. At least 10 percent of acres treated (600 to 750 acres) have explicit primary or secondary purposes of benefitting wildlife, whitebark pine and other at-risk species habitat, pollinator habitat, non-commercial vegetation, and general terrestrial ecosystem conditions.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-VEGF)

- 01** To contribute to plant and animal diversity and landscape heterogeneity, as well as provide habitat for old-growth-associated plant and animal species, vegetation management activities in old growth should retain old growth characteristics to the extent practicable. Vegetation management (including timber harvest, fuels treatment, or prescribed fire) in old growth should be used only to achieve one or more of the following purposes:

- a. To maintain or restore old growth habitat characteristics and ecosystem processes.
- b. To increase resilience to disturbances or stressors (such as drought, high severity fire, bark beetles) that may have negative impacts on old growth characteristics or abundance at stand or landscape scales.

Exceptions to this guideline may be allowed in old growth lodgepole pine forests or where needed to manage infrastructure within or adjacent to old growth.

- 02** To maintain habitat connectivity and minimize disturbance of old-growth associated wildlife, road construction (permanent or temporary) or other developments should be avoided in old growth (see glossary) unless access is needed to implement vegetation management activities and purposes as outlined in FW-GDL-VEGF-01 and there are no feasible alternative road locations.
- 03** To maintain snags (standing dead trees) over the long term for wildlife habitat and ecosystem processes, all vegetation management projects should retain at least 40 snags per 10 acres. The largest snags available should always be prioritized for retention. Guideline applies as an average of treatment units across a project area and allows for variation in snag retention among treatment units with the intent of preserving the most desirable snags. Snags need not necessarily be present on every acre or in every treatment unit; they may be clumped as appropriate for the site, species, and existing snag distribution. If fewer than the minimum desired snags are present, live trees should be retained to meet the minimum desired snags within treatment units with a preference for the largest and most decadent trees available. Large, live replacement trees may also count toward compliance with FW-GDL-VEGF-05. Trees with evidence of rot or wildlife use are preferred. Live replacement trees do not need to be retained where retention is not possible due to operational limitations associated with harvest or burning implementation. Snags should be retained greater than 300 feet away from roads in areas open for firewood collection. Exceptions to the snag retention guideline may be allowed in areas where the minimum number of snags or live replacement trees are not present prior to management activities or where needed to manage infrastructure.
- 04** To maintain snags (standing dead trees) over the long term for wildlife habitat and ecosystem processes, if snags retained to meet FW-GDL-VEGF-03 are felled (to manage infrastructure or for

safety concerns) during vegetation management activities (such as timber harvest), they should be left on site to provide coarse woody debris. Exceptions may be allowed where there is elevated concern with fire risk.

- 05** In order to maintain forest structure that provides future seed source, structural diversity, wildlife habitat and future snags and downed wood, vegetation management projects should retain at least the following minimum number of large live trees:
- a. Warm Dry broad potential vegetation type: 50 trees greater than 15 inches dbh per 10 acres
  - b. Cool Moist or Cold broad potential vegetation types: 80 trees greater than 15 inches dbh per 10 acres

This guideline applies to each harvest unit with large tree structure in a project area or can be applied as an average across a combination of harvest units, as dictated by local conditions. Large live trees need not be present on every acre; they may be clumped as appropriate for the site and species. The most desirable trees to leave are long-lived, windfirm, and fire adapted. If the minimum number of large trees are not present, leave all that are available. No replacements or smaller sizes need be left unless desired in the site-specific prescription. Exceptions may occur in treatment units when there are no or fewer desirable large trees available due to factors such as insects, disease, lack of wind-firmness, lack of desirable species or where retention is not possible due to operational limitations associated with harvest or burning implementation. Retained trees may also function as replacement snags or be mixed in clumps with snags to meet FW-GDL-VEGF-03.

## Grassland, Shrubland, Woodland, Riparian, Alpine and Sparse Vegetation (VEGNF)

### Introduction

This section includes plan components that apply to grassland, shrubland, woodland, riparian, alpine, and sparse vegetation. Key ecosystem characteristics of resiliency in these ecosystems include a diversity of plant composition, structure, ground cover, life forms, and associated processes. The broad potential vegetation types (based on site potential outlined in applicable habitat type descriptions; ecological site descriptions or equivalent descriptions and outlined in plan appendix D), were aggregated into broad ecosystems having similar life forms, processes, and disturbance response. Habitat types, ecological site descriptions, or similar descriptions can provide project-specific descriptions of resilient vegetation conditions. Other vegetation types not described in the following section or plan appendix D exist on the Custer Gallatin in minor amounts. Project level desired conditions may need to be determined on a project specific basis based on local information.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-VEGNF)

- 01** Native plant communities are self-sustaining relative to site potential, and represent a heterogeneous mix of seral stages, plant species, life forms, age classes and structure to support and maintain plant diversity.
- 02** Native plant species and plant communities dominate the landscape. Nonnative species (such as cheatgrass, Kentucky bluegrass, timothy, and smooth brome) may be present, but do not increase in either abundance or extent, and do not disrupt ecological processes or function.

- 03** Healthy plant communities and floral diversity support a complementary suite of native pollinators (birds, bats, and insects). In turn, pollinators sustain native plant communities, symbiotically contributing to overall ecological integrity of plant and animal communities.
- 04** Grassland, shrubland, woodland, riparian, alpine, and sparsely vegetated plant communities support desired conditions described in table 14.

**Table 14. Desired conditions for grasslands, shrublands, xeric woodlands, deciduous woodlands, riparian or wetlands, alpine, and sparsely vegetated broad potential vegetation types**

| Broad Potential Vegetation Type | Desired Condition Description by Vegetation Type  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Xeric Grassland                 | <p><b>Xeric Grassland</b> plant communities in the pine savanna geographic areas are heterogeneous and have high diversity of medium height native perennial cool and warm season grasses (for example, western wheatgrass, needle-and-thread grass, green needlegrass, little bluestem) and short cool and warm season grasses (for example, blue grama, prairie junegrass), Xeric Grassland plant communities in the montane geographic areas have high diversity of tall and medium height, native perennial cool and warm season grasses (for example, Idaho fescue, bluebunch wheatgrass, needle-and-thread grass) and short grasses (for example, Sandberg bluegrass, junegrass).</p> <p>Subshrubs and shrubs may be present with minor cover. There is a variety of forbs in varying amounts. The diversity of plant species present allows for drought tolerance. Individual species can vary greatly in the amount of production depending on growing conditions. Vegetation typically has strong and robust root systems that allow production to increase under favorable growing conditions and contribute to the production and retention of soil organic matter and below ground biotic activity. This vegetation type provides for soil stability, improved hydrologic function and carbon cycling. Plant litter is a common component and is available for soil building and moisture retention. There is very little movement of plant litter off-site, and with plant mortality typically being low. Soft biological soil crusts are present in arid areas where plant cover is low and plants are more widely spaced. Bare ground is present because of the warm dry nature of these sites but at low amounts.</p> <p>Encroachment by conifers is limited since these grasslands are either maintained by a high frequency, low-severity fire regime or are maintained by site conditions where they do not require fire to maintain grassland vegetation. These vegetation types are generally tolerant of fire although recovery is a function of fire intensity and species. Maintenance of grasslands is dependent, in part, on periodic fires for nutrient release and encroaching shrubs and trees</p> |
| Mesic Grassland                 | <p><b>Mesic Grassland</b> plant communities have greater amounts of forbs, higher cover, and higher species richness than xeric grasslands. Mesic grasses are long lived, moderately deep -rooted native perennial cool season grass species (for example, Idaho fescue, upland sedges, western needlegrass, etc.) with a wide variety of mesic forbs present in varying amounts. Shrubs may be present with minor cover. Vegetation typically has strong and robust root systems that allow production to increase considerably with favorable growing conditions and contribute to the maintenance of soil organic matter and below ground biotic activity. This vegetation type provides for soil stability and a functioning hydrologic cycle and provides for the flow of energy and cycles nutrients and carbon through the ecosystem. Soft biological soil crusts are found on almost all soil types while these moister habitats generally support more lichens and mosses than other types of crusts. Bare ground is typically low across most sites; plant litter is the dominant ground cover and available for soil building and moisture retention. Plant litter rarely moves off-site.</p> <p>These vegetation types are generally tolerant of moderate intensity wildfire. Common dominant grasses, such as Idaho fescue, may be top killed, but the root crowns and associated growing points are protected and respond favorably with vigorous regrowth in light to moderate intensity fire. Frequent burning maintains diversity in these vegetation types.</p>   |

| Broad Potential Vegetation Type | Desired Condition Description by Vegetation Type  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Xeric Shrubland                 | <p><b>Xeric Shrubland</b> plant communities in the pine savanna geographic area is largely Wyoming big sagebrush. Other xeric shrubs include skunkbush sumac, silver buffaloberry, silver sage, and silverberry. Xeric Shrubland plant communities in the montane geographic area support shrub species such as mountain big sagebrush, Wyoming big sagebrush, low sagebrush, black sagebrush, and bitterbrush. Overstory species vary by location and site type. For example, Wyoming, black, and low sagebrush tends to occupy the lower, drier, and hotter sites with shallow soils whereas mountain big sagebrush typically dominates sites with deeper, well developed soils with more plant available moisture. The understory is typically dominated by grass or grass-like species such as western wheatgrass in the pine savanna areas or Sandberg bluegrass, Idaho fescue, or bluebunch wheatgrass in the montane areas. Canopy cover varies depending on the site and growing conditions but is typically low to moderate. Vegetation typically has strong and robust root systems that allow production to increase considerably with favorable growing conditions and contribute to the maintenance of soil organic matter and below ground biotic activity. This vegetation type provides for soil stability and a functioning hydrologic cycle and provides for the flow of energy and cycles nutrients and carbon through the ecosystem. Plant litter is a common component and is available for soil building and moisture retention. There is very little movement of plant litter off-site with natural plant mortality typically being low. Soft biological soil crusts are found on almost all soil types, but are more commonly found in arid areas where plant cover is low and plants are more widely spaced. Bare ground is present in higher amounts when compared to mesic shrubland sites.</p> <p>Sagebrush and native perennial grass/forb communities have a diversity of age and cover classes on the landscape to provide a variety of wildlife habitats and productivity conditions. Suitable habitat for greater sage-grouse is distributed across priority (core) and general habitat areas and includes breeding, nesting, brood-rearing, and wintering habitats. Distribution of these habitats allow for dispersal and genetic flow. Open sagebrush habitat with limited or no overstory trees, such as ponderosa pine or Douglas-fir, provides habitat connectivity. Site-specific conditions apply to an area being used by sage-grouse for the appropriate life stage and not across the entire landscape.</p> <p>Resilient sagebrush ecosystems typically have a mosaic of multiple seral plant communities across the landscape. Fire occurs infrequently, or in small extents, as a natural process, limiting colonization of conifer trees and establishment by invasive species. The natural fire regime of xeric shrublands maintains a patchy distribution of shrubs, so the general aspect of the vegetation is shrub-steppe grassland. Periodic, low-intensity burns can reduce sagebrush cover and increase abundance of herbaceous species, creating a mosaic of shrubland-grassland patches.</p> |
| Mesic Shrubland                 | <p><b>Mesic shrubland</b> plant communities in the pine savanna geographic area support shrub species such as chokecherry, snowberry, serviceberry, and silver sage. Mesic shrubland plant communities in the montane geographic area support shrub species such as chokecherry, snowberry, ninebark, serviceberry, shrubby cinquefoil, snowfield big sagebrush. These mesic shrubs are the dominant overstory species with grass or grass-like species (such as western wheatgrass, green needlegrass or Sprengel's sedge in the pine savanna areas or Idaho fescue or mountain brome in montane areas) and various mesic forbs (for example, yarrow, or gallium in the pine savanna areas or cinquefoil, sticky geranium, and prairie smoke in the montane areas) typically dominating the understory. Shrub canopy cover varies depending on the site and growing conditions (for example, temperature, timing, and amount of precipitation), but is typically moderate to high, and may result in lower cover of understory species.</p> <p>Most of the mesic shrub species are vigorous root crown sprouters and respond favorably to fire, typically sprouting immediately following fire. However, extremely hot, and intense fires that occur during summer months can cause damage to these shrublands and seed banks. However, periodic less intense burns can maintain these systems.</p>  |

| Broad Potential Vegetation Type | Desired Condition Description by Vegetation Type  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Xeric Woodland                  | <p><b>Xeric woodlands</b> are typically hot and dry, or are steep sites, with shallow, skeletal soil. Fire can easily kill young limber pine and Rocky Mountain juniper because of their thin bark. However, fuel loads in these systems are generally light due to open rocky terrain, and fires do not generate severe damage or considerably alter vegetation composition.</p> <p>Juniper woodland is characterized by an open-tree canopy or patchy woodland that is dominated by Rocky Mountain or Utah juniper. Cover of conifers is limited, as it is maintained by a natural high frequency, low-severity fire regime. While any associated sagebrush are often killed by fire, nonlethal or mixed-severity fires that burn in a mosaic pattern leave live individuals and promote age class diversity and sprouting of other shrubs (such as rabbitbrush, horsebrush) and grass species.</p> <p>Limber pine woodland is characterized by an open-tree canopy or patchy woodland that is dominated by limber pine. A sparse to moderately dense short-shrub layer is usually present. Shrubs may include Wyoming big sagebrush, black sagebrush, rubber rabbitbrush, skunkbush sumac, Woods' rose, common snowberry, or western snowberry. Herbaceous layers are generally sparse, but range to moderately dense; they are typically dominated by perennial grasses and forbs. Clark's nutcrackers have co-adapted an important mutualism with limber pine, and are the primary harvester and disperser of its seeds. These woodlands often originate with and are likely maintained by fire. Regeneration on burns is largely from germination of seedlings from Clark's nutcracker seed caches.</p>   |
| Mesic Deciduous Woodlands       | <p><b>Mesic Deciduous Woodlands</b></p> <p><b>Cottonwood</b> may be present along with riparian shrubs and herbaceous species. In wide valley bottoms, the vegetation typically is a mosaic of all lifeforms with patterns reflecting the meander patterns of the stream or river. Plains, narrowleaf, or black cottonwood are supported at lower elevations with Engelmann spruce and subalpine fir at higher elevations; on drier sites, Douglas-fir and Rocky Mountain juniper may be present along riparian corridors.</p> <p><b>Aspen</b> stands have a diversity of age and structural classes to provide wildlife habitat, natural fuel breaks, and other ecosystem functions. Aspen stands are joined together by a shallow, subsurface root network. Stands expand and contract over time in response to natural disturbances like browsing and wildfire. Where aspen occur, there is usually water near the surface and stands thrive best in abundant sunlight. Healthy stands have a mix of older, middle aged and young "trees" (stems) and support a wide variety of forbs and shrubs. The rich understory of an aspen stand is many times more diverse than the floor of a conifer forest.</p> <p><b>Woody Draws</b> (also known as green ash draws) are dominated by green ash trees with a shrub and herbaceous undergrowth. Other minor deciduous tree components may include boxelder, aspen, or paper birch. Shrubs such as chokecherry, serviceberry, wild plum, and hawthorn dominate the taller and more conspicuous shrub layer. Herbaceous species such as Sprengel's sedge and shade-tolerant forbs, dominate the lower layer. All age groups of hardwood tree species are present (seedlings, saplings, pole, and mature) in late-seral states while age classes may vary in earlier seral states following disturbances. Bare ground is typically low (Ashland and Sioux Geographic Areas).</p> <p>Typically, except for conifers, species in mesic deciduous woodland systems respond favorably to fire. The growing points of the vegetation are usually protected in the moist to saturated soil or have sprouting capabilities. Regrowth typically occurs within the same growing season.</p> |



| Broad Potential Vegetation Type | Desired Condition Description by Vegetation Type  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| Riparian/Wetlands               | <p><b>Riparian Ecosystems</b> are comprised of a mosaic of communities dominated by native species which tolerate and are adapted to periodic flooding and an associated seasonally high water table. Vegetation associated with riparian ecosystems is dominated by a variety of species, age classes, and structure including deciduous trees, willows, alders, birches, sedge, and hydrophilic vegetation depending on stream substrate, gradient, elevation, soil-hydrologic, and disturbance processes. Dominant shrubs may include mountain alder, various species of willows, river birch, dogwood, hawthorn, chokecherry, rose, silver buffaloberry, Rocky Mountain maple and snowberry, among others. A wide variety of native herbaceous species, including, grasses, sedges, rushes, spikerushes, bulrushes and forbs, are present in the understory in varying amounts. The riparian complex is a mosaic of herbaceous and woody plant communities that armor streambanks and create floodplain roughness, slowing flows, and facilitating bank and floodplain development and associated riparian species recruitment and regeneration.</p> <p><b>Wetlands - Groundwater dependent Ecosystems</b> support deeply rooted vegetation and include, but are not limited to, seeps, springs, fens, marshes, and wetlands. Wetlands are comprised by dominant native vegetation adapted to saturated (anerobic) soil conditions. Low willow species (for example, wolf willow) and bog birch are typically present in subalpine wetlands. Herbaceous species may be dominated by sedges, rushes, spikerushes, cattails, and bulrushes. Bryophytes, including sphagnum, are often well represented in fens.</p> <p>The response of riparian and aquatic communities to fire can differ widely, depending on characteristics of both the fire and the riparian area. Fires in riparian areas can be less severe, as severe, or more severe than in adjacent uplands, depending on the local topography, vegetation, and ecosystem characteristics (especially species composition, fuel moisture and loading), and fire weather. Generally, plant species in riparian/wetland systems can respond favorably to fire, dependent on the species, characteristics of the ecosystem, and fire behavior. The growing points of the vegetation are usually protected in the moist to saturated soil. Species survive through sprouting or seed recolonization and regrowth typically starts to occur within the same growing season.</p> |
| Alpine                          | <p><b>Alpine and subalpine</b> ecosystems are dominated by short stature and relatively slow growing shrubs and herbaceous species, although some conifers (for example, subalpine fir, whitebark pine) may be present with minor cover as krummholtz patches. Wetland communities are present in snowloaded depressions, and support various willow species (for example, planeleaf willow), along with wetland herbaceous species (such as tufted hairgrass, marsh marigold). Vegetation cover is typically low to moderate, depending on site characteristics. The plant communities are dominated by a number of native shrubs, forbs, grass, and grass-like species including: arctic willow (turf community), mountain avens (cushion plant community), mountain heather and moss-heather (snow bed communities).</p> <p>Many of these areas experience only patchy fire due to the low amounts and patchiness of fuels. The fire-return interval is typically very long in alpine ecosystems. Historically, stand-replacing fires occur infrequently in adjacent associated subalpine woodlands. Fire severity and spread is usually variable due to the short duration without snow cover. In addition, limited fuel loading and rock scree fields preclude fires from spreading if lightning strikes do occur (montane districts).</p>   |
| Sparsely Vegetated              | <p><b>Sparsely vegetated</b> areas occupy harsh talus sites, rocky sites, disturbed sites, exposed sites, or badlands. Tree and herbaceous cover is low due to limited soil development and dry growing conditions, site disturbance, or rocky conditions. Natural rock outcrops cover a wide range of rock types, varying from acidic to highly calcareous. Native vegetation is sparse. Bryophytes and lichens often occur in crevices and occurs on open rock surfaces where the competition from vascular plants is absent. Species composition can vary widely, depending on the moisture regime and adjacent communities contributing to the seed source.</p> <p>Many of these areas experience only patchy fire due to the low amounts and patchiness of fuels. Fire severity and spread is usually variable due to fuel settings of adjacent associated habitats. In addition, limited fuel loading and rock scree fields preclude fires from spreading if lightning strikes do occur.</p>  |

Northern Region Broad Potential Vegetation Type is a coarse grouping of Northern Region Habitat Type Groups that are applicable for broad-scale analysis and monitoring. See crosswalks for habitat type groupings in plan appendix D. Local habitat type classifications for grasslands, shrublands, and woodlands describe resilient communities (plan appendix D). Where available, local Natural Resources Conservation Service Major Land Resource Area (MLRA)-specific Ecological Site Descriptions also describe resilient communities

### Goals (FW-GO-VEGNF)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest collaborates with Tribes, Federal, and State agencies, and other partners regarding applicable conservation plans in seeking progress towards conservation of grasslands, shrublands, woodlands, alpine, and sparsely vegetated lands.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest collaborates with Tribes, Federal, and State agencies, and other partners with emphasis on important plant communities and key habitats of greatest conservation need such as sagebrush-grasslands, aspen, woody draws, and riparian areas.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-VEGNF)

- 01** To maintain and enhance plant and animal diversity and conserve rare and unique habitats, progress towards conservation and restoration of non-forest vegetation types is made by completing at least six to eight projects per decade with explicit primary or secondary purposes of benefitting vegetation communities such as hardwoods (including green ash and aspen), woody draws, grasslands, shrublands and woodlands (including limber pine).

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-VEGNF)

See additional plan components for shrubland habitats for greater sage-grouse habitat needs and big game winter ranges in the wildlife section. See riparian and wetland related plan components outlined in watershed, aquatics, riparian section and permitted grazing section.

- 01** To promote habitat heterogeneity, prescribed fire management should include a mosaic of burned and unburned areas (including different fire regimes for example frequency, season, extent, intensity, type, and time since last burn).
- 02** To minimize erosion from ground disturbance in fragile alpine or subalpine settings, new facilities should be directed away from alpine or subalpine vegetation or rehabilitated to reduce erosion.
- 03** To minimize habitat fragmentation, where there are other options for siting a facility, choose the habitat that is already more fragmented or locate development at the edge of intact areas.
- 04** To minimize impacts to areas providing important habitat and species diversity, new facilities should be avoided or managed to avoid degradation in areas of unique habitats such as exposed ridges, and rocky or naturally moist areas that are still in a natural or near natural state.
- 05** To minimize stem damage, soil compaction, or root damage from frequent human use, new buildings or other structures associated with developed sites or outfitter and guide camps should be located outside of aspen stands, riparian areas, or woody draws.
- 06** To minimize impacts to cavity nesting habitat, vegetation treatment in hardwoods should retain trees with signs of cavity nesting, cavities, or loose or cracked bark on the tree trunk or branches, where this will not conflict with aspen regeneration, woody draw restoration or human safety.
- 07** To minimize stem damage, soil compaction, or root damage from frequent human use, new permanent or temporary roads should not be constructed or permanently retained in aspen stands

or woody draws except as needed to cross the area or as needed for restoration purposes. If road construction is necessary, roads should be designed to minimize impacts on aspen stands and woody draws.

- 08** To maintain hardwood habitats, live hardwood trees should not be cut except for purposes of human safety or for restoration purposes.

## Fire and Fuels (FIRE)

### Introduction

Fire is a primary and necessary ecological process that has shaped and maintained forest and non-forest ecosystems, which in turn sustain native plant communities and wildlife species. The absence of fire in many areas of the Custer Gallatin over the last century, mainly due to fire suppression, has led to a fire deficit. This fire exclusion has altered natural fire regimes and has been detrimental to native vegetation, fauna, and ecosystem processes. Fire on the landscape occurs due to unplanned (natural and human caused) and planned (prescribed fire) ignitions. Most natural ignitions and the largest fires on the Custer Gallatin occur from July through September and are generally wind-driven events. Typical fire behavior in the ponderosa pine woodland and savanna landscapes on the east side of the Custer Gallatin includes low intensity, fast-spreading surface fires with occasional uncharacteristic large stand-replacing fires. The more mountainous landscapes on the central and west side of the Custer Gallatin experience mixed intensity, mixed severity fires and high intensity, large stand-replacing fires. Prescribed fires (broadcast and piled) typically occur in the spring (March–June) and in the fall (September–November) with fire intensities dependent upon the objectives of the individual project.

Fire management strives to balance the natural role of fire while minimizing the impacts from fire on values to be protected, especially in the wildland urban interface. This can be accomplished by implementing a coordinated risk management approach to promote landscapes that are resilient to fire-related disturbances, and preparing for and executing a safe, effective, and efficient response to fire. Wildland fire may occur on all acres, depending on expected fire effects and resource objectives.

Treatment of vegetation for hazardous fuels mitigation is intended to reduce fire intensity and thus the probability of crown fire and spotting. Treatments can also focus on restoring and maintaining natural fire regimes and reducing the negative impacts of wildfires to watershed health, wildlife habitat, community values at risk, air quality, and the safety of fire personnel and the public. Refer to plan components for other vegetation management direction, most of which would also apply to fuel reduction treatments.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-FIRE)

- 01** The amount and severity of wildland fire is within the natural range of variation to maintain resilient ecological conditions. Table 15 displays the desired condition ranges for each fire regime group. Please refer to the glossary for the definition of fire regimes.

**Table 15. Existing and desired conditions for average amount and severity of wildland fire per decade within fire regime groups. Desired condition applies to all potential vegetation types, at the forestwide scale**

| Fire Regime Group <sup>1</sup> | Average Desired Acres Burned per Decade <sup>2</sup> | Existing Average Acres Burned per Decade <sup>3</sup> | Desired Fire Return Interval (Frequency) <sup>1</sup> | Desired Fire Severity <sup>1,4</sup> | Existing Low Severity Acres per Decade <sup>5</sup> | Existing Moderate Severity Acres per Decade <sup>5</sup> | Existing High Severity Acres per Decade <sup>5</sup> |
|--------------------------------|--|---|---|--------------------------------------|---|--|--|
| I                              | 181,000 - 237,000                                    | 34,188  | 0 – 35 years  | <b>Low/mixed</b>                     | 12,906  | 13,034   | 8,247  |
| II                             | 270,000 - 365,000                                    | 50,208  | 0 – 35 years  | <b>High</b>                          | 25,109  | 19,795   | 5,303  |
| III                            | 130,000 - 149,000                                    | 46,049  | 35 – 100+ years                                       | <b>Mixed/low</b>                     | 11,090  | 12,908   | 22,051   |
| IV                             | 33,000 - 37,000                                      | 13,018  | 35 – 100+ years                                       | <b>High</b>                          | 5,489   | 3,749  | 3,780  |
| V                              | 32,000 - 49,000                                      | 42,497  | 200+ years  | <b>High/mixed/low</b>                | 7,649   | 9,800  | 25,048   |
| Total                          | 646,000 - 837,000                                    | 185,959   | n/a   | n/a                                  | 62,243  | 59,286   | 64,429   |

1. Fire regime groups, fire return intervals, and fire severity types as defined in the Fire Regime Condition Class Guidebook.
2. Expected acres are the average range derived from Mean Fire Return Interval data from LANDFIRE 2012, v.1.3.0. Rounded to nearest thousand.
3. Existing comes from 1984 to 2017 Monitoring Trends in Burn Severity (MTBS) data, wildfires greater than 1,000 acres. Does not include unburned areas within wildfire perimeters.
4. Bold lettering indicates dominant severity. Mixed severity is defined as a combination of low to high fire severity within the perimeter of a single fire, or across consecutive events.
5. Fire severity classification is defined by MTBS. Existing fire severity comes from 1984 to 2017 Monitoring Trends in Burn Severity (MTBS) data.

**02** Vegetation conditions (composition, structure, and function) support natural fire regimes except in the wildland-urban interface and adjacent to infrastructure where vegetation conditions support low-intensity fire where necessary in order to reduce negative impacts to values at risk.

**03** There are minimal detrimental impacts to values at risk from wildland fire.

## Goals (FW-GO-FIRE)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with community leaders, service providers, business owners, homeowners and permittees who are invested in or adjacent to the Custer Gallatin to provide education about wildfire risk and that wildland fire is an essential ecological process.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates fire management actions with Tribal, State, local, and adjacent Federal agencies. Opportunities to manage fire and fuels are expanded across the planning area through coordination and collaboration.

## Objectives (FW-OBJ-FIRE)

- 01** Hazardous fuels mitigation occurs on a minimum of 6,000 acres per year, primarily in the wildland urban interface. Treatment includes initial entry and maintenance to ensure desired conditions are achieved. Completing this objective would also contribute to FW-OBJ-FVEG-01.
- 02** Natural unplanned wildfire occurs on a minimum of 375,000 acres per decade, as conditions allow, in all vegetation types, to move toward resilient ecological conditions.

### **Standards (FW-STD-FIRE)**

- 01** All wildfires shall have a management response that considers risk to life and safety, considering the costs and effects to resources and values at risk.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-FIRE)**

- 01** To meet multiple resource desired conditions, the Custer Gallatin should use wildland fire forestwide where and when conditions permit.
- 02** To reduce the negative impacts of wildfires to values at risk, improve fire control opportunities, or decrease risk to fire personnel and the public, fuels treatments should be designed to remove or rearrange the live and dead vegetation as necessary to reduce fire intensity.
- 03** To minimize resource damage, minimum impact suppression tactics should be used forestwide. Exceptions to this guideline may be allowed to protect human life, private property, or infrastructure.

## **Carbon Storage and Sequestration (CARB)**

### **Introduction**

Carbon sequestration is the process by which atmospheric carbon dioxide is taken up by trees, grasses, and other plants through photosynthesis and stored as carbon in biomass (trunks, branches, foliage, and roots) and soils. The sink of carbon sequestration in forests and wood products helps to offset sources of carbon dioxide to the atmosphere, such as deforestation, forest fires, and fossil fuel emissions.

Sustainable forestry practices can increase the ability of forests to sequester atmospheric carbon while enhancing other ecosystem services, such as improved soil and water quality. Planting new trees and improving forest health through thinning and prescribed burning are some of the ways to increase forest carbon in the long run. Harvesting and regenerating forests can also result in net carbon sequestration in wood products and new forest growth (also see Terrestrial Vegetation and Soils sections).

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-CARB)**

- 01** Carbon storage and sequestration potential is sustained by biologically diverse and resilient forests, woodlands, shrublands, and grasslands that are adapted to natural disturbance processes and changing climates.

### **Goals (FW-GO-CARB)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages in cooperation and collaboration with Tribal governments, Universities, Forest Service Research Stations, non-governmental organizations, and other interested partners in the development and implementation of research, management practices, and monitoring programs to better understand and address the effects of climate change on ecosystems and ecosystem services in order to inform adaptation and mitigation strategies.

## **Invasive Species (INV)**

### **Introduction**

A species is considered invasive if it meets two criteria: (1) it is a nonnative organism to the ecosystem under consideration, and (2) its introduction causes, or is likely to cause economic or environmental harm, or harm to human, animal, or health (Executive Order 13751, 2016). Invasive species includes all taxa, including plants (such as state and county designated noxious weeds), vertebrates, invertebrates (such as emerald ash borer, non-native mussel larvae), and pathogens (such as blister rust or white-nosed syndrome fungus).

Forest Service invasive species management policy and guidance are provided in Forest Service Manuals 2900 Invasive Species Management, 2070 Vegetation Ecology, 2150 Pesticide Use Management and Coordination, Forest Service National Strategic Framework for Invasive Species Management of 2013, and A National Road Map for Integrated Pest Management (Revised September 2018).

Forest Service policy (FSM 2903) requires determining the risk of introducing, establishing, or spreading invasive species associated with any proposed action, as an integral component of project planning and analysis and, where necessary, provide for alternatives or mitigation measures to reduce or eliminate that risk prior to project approval.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-INV)**

- 01** Non-infested areas remain free of invasive species. Where invasive species occur, their range is reduced where possible, or at a minimum, they do not expand. Desired nonnative species occur where they do not conflict with native species, and are supported by healthy, functioning ecosystems.

### **Goals (FW-GO-INV)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates and cooperates with Tribes, Federal, State and County agencies, non-government organizations, permittees, and adjacent landowners to support integrated pest management including invasive species prevention, early detection and rapid response, control and containment, restoration and rehabilitation, and inventory and monitoring activities.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates with Tribes, and State or County agencies to support implementation and enforcement of regulations, permits, plans, and guidance on invasive species management across the national forest, including but not limited to:
  - a. State regulations and protocols related to prevention and control of aquatic and terrestrial invasive species (including noxious weeds);
  - b. State regulations associated with utilizing, storing, transporting, or certifying invasive species-free (or noxious weed-free) straw, hay, mulch, gravel, forage, seed, or other materials;
  - c. State aquatic invasive species regulations, management plans, disinfecting protocols, fish and wildlife management plans, early detection, and rapid response plans, or other statewide or region-wide invasive species management plans;
  - d. State required wildlife handling permits, which also address disease and invasive species prevention protocol.

- 03** The Custer Gallatin National Forest participates in agreements and memorandums of understanding with Tribes, other Federal, State or County agencies, non-government organizations, and other partner organizations to address invasive species issues. Collaborative efforts such as “cooperative weed management areas,” “cooperative invasive species management areas,” or similar collaborative partnerships support invasive species management across the landscape.
- 04** A coordinated (internally and externally) invasive species management, awareness, and education approach supports:
  - a. Improved invasive species awareness.
  - b. Opportunities for cooperators, organizations, and members of the public to adopt areas on the Custer Gallatin for invasive species management are provided. This would include survey, inventory, monitoring, and treatment.
  - c. Development and distribution of invasive species education materials at high use areas and Forest Service offices.

#### Objectives (FW-OBJ-INV)

- 01** Noxious weed management actions are implemented annually on 2,500 to 4,500 acres of inventoried acres to reduce plant cover, infestation size, and/or occurrences, and to maintain and protect uninfested areas.

#### Standards (FW-STD-INV)

- 01** Decisions authorizing the use of chemicals shall outline protection measures for treatment, and measures to minimize contamination of water resources and injury to non-target desired plants and animals, including at-risk species.
- 02** Invasive species treatments in or near at-risk-species populations shall use methods that are not detrimental to the long-term persistence of the species.
- 03** Forest Service employees and agency-authorized personnel shall use standard operational procedures, National Best Management Program practices and other agency requirements to minimize invasive species establishment and spread through contaminated vehicles, equipment, personnel, or materials (including plants, wood, plant/wood products, water, soil, rock, sand, gravel, mulch, seeds, grain, hay, straw, or other materials).
- 04** Forest Service employees and agency-authorized personnel, shall use best management practices and Federal and State agency guidance to inspect and clean equipment (including boats, rafts, waders, and boots, drafting equipment, water tenders, helicopter buckets, etc.) prior to use in a water body or when moving between watersheds or water sources to reduce the potential for the introduction of aquatic invasive species, including aquatic pathogens.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL-INV)

- 01** To reduce soil erosion, reduce noxious weed invasion, and provide site conditions conducive for native species establishment, following new ground-disturbing management activities that cannot be restored naturally, revegetation with Forest Service-approved, weed-free seed and locally adapted native or desired non-native plant species should occur as promptly as possible during suitable conditions for germination.

## Wildlife (WL)

### Introduction

This section provides direction designed to maintain the diversity of animal communities and support the persistence of native wildlife species on the Custer Gallatin. Terrestrial wildlife species on the Custer Gallatin include birds, mammals, reptiles, and invertebrates. Aquatic and semi-aquatic species such as fish, amphibians, beavers, and invertebrates, are addressed separately under Watershed. Wildlife habitat on the Custer Gallatin is extremely diverse, ranging from the rugged topography and alpine environs associated with the highest peaks in the state of Montana, to the more temperate coniferous forest slopes at mid-elevations, to the pine-savanna and badland ecosystems at lower elevations in the eastern Districts. Such diversity and associated complexity provide conditions for a vast array of wildlife species and guilds, with over 600 species of mammals, birds, reptiles, and invertebrates recorded on the Custer Gallatin, according to the Montana Natural Heritage Program in 2018. Many species are residents, with some individuals spending their entire lives within the national forest, while others are migratory, and spend only part of their life cycle here.

The 2012 Planning Rule adopts a complementary ecosystem- and species-specific approach, also known as a coarse-filter or fine-filter approach, to provide for the diversity of plant and animal communities and the long-term persistence of native species in the plan area. The ecosystem plan components are designed to maintain or restore ecological conditions for ecosystem integrity and plant and animal diversity on the Custer Gallatin. Species-specific plan components are designed to provide for additional specific habitat needs for native animal species when those needs are not met through the ecosystem plan components. Since habitat for wildlife is composed of both physiological and biological conditions on the landscape, most of the ecosystem plan components that benefit wildlife are found throughout the “ecosystems” section of the plan, under headings for air quality, soils, watershed, aquatic, riparian, and terrestrial vegetation. Species-specific components are included in the wildlife section to address factors that affect the animals themselves, or to address specific habitat conditions that may not fall within the ecosystem considerations.

Both ecosystem and species-specific plan components are included to contribute to the recovery of federally listed threatened or endangered species, conserve proposed and candidate species, and maintain the long-term persistence of species of conservation concern within the plan area or within the species’ range. Additional species-specific plan components may be included to address other species as well, but are not required under the 2012 Planning Rule. Collectively, the term “at-risk species” refers to federally listed threatened, endangered, proposed and candidate species as well as Forest Service species of conservation concern. Threatened, endangered, proposed, and candidate species are identified by the U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service, which maintains current information regarding which listed species may be present on the Custer Gallatin National Forest. Species of conservation concern are those species, other than federally listed threatened, endangered, proposed, or candidate species, that are known to occur in the plan area, and for which the regional forester has determined that the best available scientific information indicates substantial concern about the species capability to persist over the long term in the plan area. Terrestrial wildlife species of conservation concern for the Custer Gallatin National Forest and associated species-specific evaluation of distribution, abundance, population trends, habitat trends, habitat attributes, and relevant threats can be found at the Northern Region land management planning webpage.



## General Wildlife Plan Components

### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WL)*

- 01** A complete suite of native species is present, with sufficient numbers and distribution to be adaptable to changing conditions for long-term persistence. Desired non-native species are present where biologically suitable and socially acceptable. Wildlife diversity contributes to ecological processes such as predator-prey relationships, nutrient cycling, hydrologic function, vegetation composition and structure.
- 02** Habitat conditions contribute to species recovery needs such that population trends of listed species are stable or increasing across their range. Lands within critical habitats designated by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service provide the physical and biological features identified as essential to the conservation and recovery of listed species.
- 03** Vegetation conditions are generally within the natural range of variation as described for vegetation, thereby providing wildlife habitat for a variety of life cycle needs, including year-round and seasonal use by a diverse suite of native and desired non-native species.
- 04** Habitat conditions provide security and refuge for wildlife to escape from stresses and threats, while still meeting basic needs such as feeding, breeding, sheltering and movement.
- 05** Landscape patterns throughout the Custer Gallatin provide habitat connectivity for wildlife, particularly wide-ranging species such as medium to large carnivores and wild ungulates. Resulting habitat connectivity facilitates daily and seasonal movement, as well as long-range dispersal of wildlife to support genetic diversity, allowing animals to adapt to changing conditions over time.
- 06** Habitat conditions within the Custer Gallatin near boundaries provide structural and functional diversity, and are resilient to existing and predictable future stressors, thereby supporting natural movement patterns for a wide variety of species across administrative boundaries.
- 07** In key linkage areas, human disturbance does not limit habitat connectivity for wildlife, particularly wide-ranging species.
- 08** Human-related foods and attractants are unavailable to wildlife. Natural wildlife foraging patterns are the norm, while food conditioning and habituation of animals, and associated wildlife conflicts with humans do not occur.
- 09** There is low or no risk of disease transmission between domestic animals and wildlife.

### *Goals (FW-GO-WL)*

- 01** Through Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperation and collaboration with Tribal governments, and other agencies in the development of conservation strategies and recovery plans, as well as coordinated management of habitat, federally listed species occurring on national forest lands achieve recovery, and the need for listing of additional wildlife species under the Endangered Species Act is prevented.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates management actions with Tribes, other Federal, State, and local agencies, and adjacent landowners. Opportunities to manage wildlife habitat and provide for connectivity are expanded through coordination and collaboration along and across administrative boundaries.

- 03** Through Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperation with willing landowners and other entities, non-federal lands within the national forest boundary are acquired, or managed under conservation easements where needed to maintain or restore wildlife habitat structure, function, or connectivity.
- 04** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages in partnerships with Tribes, State and Federal agencies, universities, permittees, and other willing entities, to conduct ecological research, improve or coordinate inventories and monitoring, and expand data and knowledge collection where needed.
- 05** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with partners to develop and disseminate information designed to increase public awareness of the high value of wildlife resources such as diversity, habitat connectivity, recreation opportunities, cultural or spiritual connections, safety issues and co-existence.

*Objectives (FW-OBJ-WL)*

- 01** Progress towards conservation of an at-risk wildlife species is made by completing three to seven projects per decade with design features that restore habitat or populations of such species.
- 02** Ten projects per decade are completed that are designed to maintain or improve habitat for one or more terrestrial wildlife species.

*Standards (FW-STD-WL)*

- 01** A food and attractant storage special order shall apply to the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains; Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains; Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains, and Pryor Mountains Geographic Areas.
- 02** Recreation events that take place at night shall not be authorized in key linkage areas.

*Guidelines (FW-GDL-WL)*

- 01** To maintain or restore habitat connectivity for wildlife, management actions should not create movement barriers to wide-ranging species such as medium to large carnivores and wild ungulates, except where necessary to provide for human or wildlife safety.
- 02** To protect long distance movements and range shifts for wide ranging wildlife species, vegetation management activities in key linkage areas should include design features to restore, maintain or enhance habitat connectivity.
- 03** To maintain wildlife habitat connectivity, new recreation development designed for the purpose of increasing recreation use should not be allowed within key linkage areas. New recreation developments may be allowed to address on-going or imminent ecological resource concerns within the key linkage area, including but not limited to, degradation of wildlife habitat connectivity.
- 04** To limit habitat alternations that could impede long range movement to wide-ranging species, new permanent facilities or structures and relocation of existing facilities within key linkage areas should be designed and located so that wildlife movement patterns are not permanently disrupted.
- 05** To maintain habitat quality and limit disturbance effects on wildlife movement patterns, key linkage areas should be free of sustained substantial disturbance for at least four years out of every 10-year period, including at least two consecutive years of no sustained substantial disturbance. Sustained substantial disturbance is the use of heavy equipment or low-level helicopter flights for vegetation

management activities for a total of more than 30 days throughout the collective key linkage areas in a calendar year.

- 06** To allow for successful reproduction, management activities should avoid disturbance at known active raptor nests and fledging areas during the reproductive season. Raptors that establish nests near existing human use areas are assumed to be tolerant of the level of activity present when the nest was established.
- 07** To protect airborne species, new wind energy developments should be located and designed to minimize impacts to birds and bats.
- 08** To protect reptile and amphibian populations during key seasons, management activities, resulting in ground disturbance should avoid impacts to known reptile and amphibian reproductive areas and hibernacula during breeding and wintering seasons.

#### *Suitability (FW-SUIT-WL)*

- 01** Key linkage areas are suitable for mountain biking only on approved system routes.

### **Bats (WLBAT)**

#### *Introduction*

Bats are important contributors to animal diversity with multiple species present in the Custer Gallatin National Forest. In addition, bats contribute to ecological integrity by controlling insect populations, supplying nutrients in cave environments through guano deposition, and may even have a minor (incidental) role as pollinators in the forest. The northern long-eared bat was listed as a threatened species under the Endangered Species Act in April 2015. The Custer Gallatin is at the very western edge of this species' range; however, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service has determined the species may be present in the Ashland and Sioux Geographic Areas. In listing this species, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service stated that white-nose syndrome is the primary threat and subsequent cause of the species' decline. White-nose syndrome is considered a threat to a wide range of bat species. At the time this plan was written, white-nose syndrome has not yet been detected on the Custer Gallatin National Forest, but it has been progressively moving in this direction.

#### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLBAT)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest provides habitat that maintains bat species diversity, and contributes to the long-term conservation of native bat species. Key habitats such as winter hibernacula and maternity roosts are free from human caused disturbance and introduced disease.

#### *Goals (FW-GO-WLBAT)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages with State and Federal agencies, Natural Heritage Programs, cavers, and other interested parties to develop, update, and implement bat monitoring protocols and white-nose syndrome prevention and response guides.

#### *Standards (FW-STD-WLBAT)*

- 01** Forest Service employees and agency-authorized personnel such as contractors, researchers and permittees, volunteers and cooperators shall use established decontamination procedures prior to

entering and upon exiting caves or abandoned mines known to be used as roost sites or winter hibernacula by bats.

*Guidelines (FW-GDL-WLBAT)*

- 01** To maintain vegetative conditions that may be associated with microclimates of winter hibernacula, tree removal through mechanical means or prescribed fire should not occur within 0.25 miles of known bat winter hibernacula at any time of year, except when removal will improve existing habitat condition for bats, or hazard tree removal is needed to protect human life or property.
- 02** To protect young, vulnerable bats, vegetation management should not remove trees within 150 feet of known, occupied bat maternal roosts during the pup season. Roost trees may be removed once adults and young bats have moved on after the pup season, but replacement roost trees should be retained in the general vicinity to provide for maternal roosts in the future.
- 03** To avoid potential disturbance of, and disease transmission to bats, new developed recreation sites such as roads, trails, campgrounds, picnic areas, or other features that concentrate human use, should not be placed within 0.5 mile of known bat hibernacula or maternal roost sites.
- 04** If bats are observed roosting in or on buildings, bridges, or other structures identified for removal or reconstruction, then demolition and construction activities should only occur once bats have left for the season. If facilities used by bats are to be removed and not replaced, then bat structures should be installed to compensate for habitat loss.
- 05** To maintain functionality of potential habitat wildlife-friendly closure devices should be used when mines or caves with suitable habitat for bats or other cave obligate species are to be closed for human safety or resource protection unless public safety needs preclude addressing wildlife needs.

**Big Game (Deer, Elk and Moose) (WLBG)**

*Introduction*

Big game animals generally include terrestrial wildlife species that are commonly enjoyed and used by the public for viewing, photography, hunting, trapping, and subsistence, including cultural or tribal uses. This section addresses deer, elk, and moose collectively, while certain species, including bighorn sheep, bison, and grizzly bears, have separate sections with species-specific plan components.

*Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLBG)*

- 01** Wildlife resources contribute to social and economic benefits, including diverse and sustainable opportunities for research, wildlife viewing, photography, hunting, and trapping. Wildlife abundance and distribution supports state wildlife harvest and population objectives.

*Goals (FW-GO-WLBG)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages in cooperation and collaboration with State wildlife management agencies, Tribal governments, and other interested partners in the development of management strategies, including monitoring programs, to maintain suitable habitat conditions and big game populations in numbers and distribution that allow for sustainable, high quality hunting experiences on National Forest System lands.

**Guidelines (FW-GDL-WLBG)**

- 01** To maintain functionality of key big game habitats, management activities should retain hiding cover, thermal regulation, or snow intercept for moose, elk, or deer when analysis demonstrates suitable amounts of these components are limiting. Exceptions may be allowed for the following reasons:
  - a. For safety issues such as hazard tree removal.
  - b. For hazardous fuel reduction projects aimed at reducing fire risk around infrastructure and to private property.
  - c. Where research or restoration is needed for conservation of at-risk species.
- 02** To avoid stressing wildlife when energy demands are high, management activities should be located and scheduled to minimize disturbance of wild ungulates on winter ranges during the winter and in known calving, fawning, lambing, or kidding areas during the reproductive season. Exceptions may occur when needed for protection of other resources as mandated by law, regulation, or policy. In such cases, management activities should be concentrated in time or space to reduce impacts to wild ungulates.
- 03** If current conditions indicate that secure habitat is limiting in a particular area, then road construction and reconstruction should not result in a reduction of secure habitat in that area during big game hunting seasons (archery and rifle). The intent of this guideline is to maintain secure habitat during a time when big game animals are vulnerable, and added pressure from hunting may cause displacement of wild ungulates from public land.

**Bighorn Sheep (WLBHS)**

*Introduction*

Bighorn sheep occur in the montane ecosystem geographic areas south of Interstate 90. Bighorn sheep were widespread in Montana historically, and were used by Native Americans and early European explorers for food, clothing, and tools. Settlement of the western United States led to significant declines of bighorn sheep due to subsistence hunting, range competition with domestic livestock, and contact with domestic sheep, which led to contraction of disease resulting in major die-offs in multiple bighorn sheep herds. Since then, statewide restoration efforts led by Montana Fish Wildlife and Parks focused on habitat improvement projects and bighorn sheep transplants to recolonize areas of historic habitat. Disease transmission from domestic animals, particularly domestic sheep and goats, is considered a primary threat to bighorn sheep populations. At the time this plan was written, there were no permitted grazing allotments on the Custer Gallatin stocked with domestic sheep or goats.

*Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLBHS)*

- 01** Habitat conditions support robust bighorn sheep populations that can if necessary, serve as source populations for translocation to facilitate recolonization of wild sheep in historic ranges or help augment existing populations where appropriate.
- 02** Native bighorn sheep do not intermingle with, or contract contagious disease from, domestic livestock.

### *Goals (FW-GO-WLBHS)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages with Tribal governments, State wildlife management and livestock health agencies, livestock permittees or producers, targeted weed sheep or goat operators, and pack goat users to develop, disseminate, and enforce livestock management protocols and habitat management strategies to minimize risk of disease transmission between domestic sheep and goats and native bighorn sheep.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with Tribes, State wildlife management agencies, and other stakeholders to support bighorn sheep establishment in suitable areas not currently occupied by wild sheep, and use such opportunities to gain information about land use patterns, wild sheep ecology, and emerging technologies in order to develop adaptive management approaches to sustain healthy bighorn sheep populations on the Custer Gallatin National Forest and elsewhere.

### *Bison (WLBI)*

#### *Introduction*

The Yellowstone bison population is unique in that it is genetically pure (for example isolated from domestic livestock), and it contains thousands of individuals that exhibit wild behavior and roam relatively freely over a very large landscape. As such, this bison population is of great importance to Tribes and local, regional, and national visitors. The Custer Gallatin National Forest is unique because it borders Yellowstone Park on the north and west sides, where bison naturally tend to migrate out of the Park to lower elevation habitats on National Forest System lands when winter snows become too deep in the Park. The framework for management of Yellowstone bison is found in the Interagency Bison Management Plan, which delineates management zones where bison presence is tolerated and management is emphasized. At the time the plan was written, bison were located only in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area and the Absaroka Beartooth Geographic Area.

#### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLBI)*

- 01** Native bison have access to forage, security, and movement corridors to facilitate distribution of the species to suitable habitats within the plan area.
- 02** Suitable habitat supports a year-round bison presence on the Custer Gallatin National Forest. Habitat accommodates bison migrating out of Yellowstone National Park in winter, as well. Adequate connecting corridors exist between suitable habitats to facilitate bison movement and distribution to increase resilience to stressors, adaptability to changing conditions, and contributing to stable and increasing genetic diversity.
- 03** Educational materials, including signage at trailheads and campgrounds where bison may occur, are available to help national forest users understand wild bison behavior and act accordingly in order to avoid conflicts.
- 04** Bison are present year-round with enough numbers and adequate distribution to support a self-sustaining population on the Custer Gallatin National Forest in conjunction with bison herds in Yellowstone National Park.

### *Goals (FW-GO-WLBI)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages with Tribal, Federal, State, and other willing partners to expand the science of bison ecology, foster awareness of the important biological, ecological, and cultural roles of bison on the landscape, reduce conflict with livestock and non-National Forest System property, and cooperatively develop adaptive strategies to manage bison and their habitats to facilitate natural movement or translocation of bison into and between suitable habitats.

### *Objectives (FW-OBJ-WLBI)*

- 01** Complete three projects within, or for the purpose of creating or connecting, suitable bison habitat every three years, one of which is a habitat improvement project.

### *Guidelines (FW-GDL-WLBI)*

- 01** To promote bison expansion within management zones, management actions taken to resolve bison-livestock conflicts should favor bison within these zones.
- 02** To facilitate progressive expansion of bison management zones over time, bison habitat improvement projects should be strategically placed within and near existing management zone boundaries.
- 03** To facilitate bison expansion into unoccupied, suitable habitat in the area that coincides with the grizzly bear primary conservation area, management actions should not create a barrier to bison movement unless needed to achieve interagency targets for bison population size and distribution.

## Canada Lynx (WLLX)

### *Introduction*

The Canada lynx was listed as a threatened species by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service in 2000. As a result, the Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction was amended to existing land and resource management plans in 2007. Habitat direction from the Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction is retained in this plan through standard FW-STD-WLLX-01. The Custer Gallatin plan carries forward the objectives, standards, and guidelines in the Northern Rockies Lynx Management Record of Decision (plan appendix G). For purposes of application in the plan, the terms “standard” and “guideline” in the Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction will be consistent with definitions of these terms found in chapter 1 of the plan. The definition of “objectives” in the Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction will be applied consistent with the definition of “desired condition” in chapter 1 of the plan. If modifications are made to the Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction, then plan components for lynx could change through amendment to this plan. Therefore, the current record of decision for the Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction is included as plan appendix G.

### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLLX)*

- 01** Boreal forest habitats provide denning, foraging, resting, and travel habitat for Canada lynx at a scale that approximates the size of a reproductive female’s home range; for example, within a lynx analysis unit. Matrix habitats that occur between patches of boreal forest provide adequate cover to facilitate lynx movement between denning and foraging habitats within lynx analysis units, as well as dispersal between lynx analysis units.

### *Standards (FW-STD-WLLX)*

- 01** The Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction in plan appendix G shall be applied.
- 02** To ensure that Northern Rockies Lynx Management Direction exemptions for fuel treatment do not disproportionately affect designated critical habitat for lynx, vegetation management projects for fuel treatment in wildland-urban interface that reduce snowshoe hare habitat, shall occur on no more than 6 percent cumulatively of the lynx habitat (excluding matrix) within designated lynx critical habitat on the Custer Gallatin National Forest.

## **Greater Sage-grouse (WLSG)**

### *Introduction*

The greater sage-grouse is an upland game bird dependent upon the sagebrush steppe ecosystem. Due to habitat loss and other factors such as West Nile disease, greater sage-grouse have experienced rangewide population declines for several decades, and the species was consequently petitioned for listing under the Endangered Species Act. Due at least in part to collaborative conservation efforts between State, Federal, and private entities, in 2015, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service determined that the species is not warranted for listing. Sage-grouse habitat is categorized as either priority or general habitat. Priority habitat includes those areas surrounding locations with the largest number of displaying male sage-grouse on leks. Priority habitat within the plan area is located at the periphery of the Ashland and Sioux Geographic Areas. General habitat is the area that provides sage-grouse habitat, but is not considered priority habitat. General habitat is identified across the plan area, but varies in proportion by landscape area, with the largest amounts in the Ashland, Pryor Mountains, and Sioux Geographic Areas.

### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLSG)*

- 01** Greater sage-grouse habitat contains contiguous areas of native vegetation, including a variety of sagebrush-community compositions, little or no invasive species present, and variation in species composition, shrub cover, herbaceous cover and structure, to meet seasonal requirements for feeding, sheltering, breeding, nesting, brood rearing and habitat connectivity. Flight paths are unimpeded by man-made structures.

### *Goals (FW-GO-WLSG)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest actively engages in interagency efforts to coordinate greater sage-grouse habitat management across administrative boundaries, and works cooperatively with willing private landowners to conserve priority and general sage-grouse habitat and provide connectivity across landownership boundaries.

### *Standards (FW-STD-WLSG)*

- 01** In greater sage-grouse priority and general habitat, vegetation management shall result in no net loss of habitat or result in a net conservation gain to greater sage-grouse.

### *Guidelines (FW-GDL-WLSG)*

- 01** In order to avoid fragmentation of greater sage-grouse habitat, wildfire management tactics and strategies should minimize loss of existing sagebrush habitat using the safest and most practical means as determined by fireline leadership and incident commanders.



- 02** To avoid the degradation of habitat associated with establishment of undesirable grass species wildfire rehabilitation projects in greater sage-grouse habitat at high risk of annual grass invasions should seed with an appropriate mixture to reduce the probability of undesirable grass establishment.
- 03** New power line corridor infrastructure development should not be located in priority habitat unless the infrastructure can be buried without permanent damage to or loss of established sagebrush communities. The intent is to minimize habitat loss, avoid disturbing sage-grouse on breeding grounds, and limit the risk of sage-grouse mortality from collisions with infrastructure or from predators using infrastructure for hunting perches.
- 04** To avoid adding disturbance and mortality risk of sage-grouse, new recreation facilities such as roads, fences, campgrounds, picnic areas, etc. should not be constructed in priority or general sage-grouse habitat unless the development results in a net conservation gain to the species and its habitat.
- 05** In order to maintain or restore ecological integrity of sage-grouse habitat, vegetation management projects in general or priority sage-grouse habitat should be designed to remove or reduce conifer encroachment, control or stop the spread of invasive annual grasses, and/or reduce the extent of existing nonnative plants.
- 06** In order to avoid habitat fragmentation and limit mortality risk to sage-grouse, new range management structures (such as fences, stock tanks, etc.) should be designed and located to be neutral or beneficial to greater sage-grouse.
- 07** To avoid habitat fragmentation and limit disturbance and mortality risk to sage-grouse at or near leks, new energy and mineral developments should not be located in priority sage-grouse habitat, subject to valid existing or statutory rights.

## Grizzly Bear (WLGB)

### *Introduction*

Grizzly bears on the Custer Gallatin National Forest are part of the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem population that occurs in parts of Montana, Idaho, and Wyoming. In 1975, the grizzly bear was listed as a threatened species under the Endangered Species Act of 1973 (as amended) in the lower 48 states. The Greater Yellowstone grizzly bear population met demographic recovery targets by 1998, and has generally met or exceeded most recovery targets since then. As a result, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service identified Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem grizzlies as a distinct population segment (DPS), and delisted (removed from the endangered species list) the distinct population segment in March 2007. However, the delisting was challenged, and a District Court order vacated the delisting and remanded the decision back to the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service in September 2009. State and Federal agencies addressed the court's concerns, and the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service again delisted the Greater Yellowstone distinct population segment of grizzly bears in July 2017 (USDI FR 80(82) 2017). This action was also challenged, and again the District Court vacated the delisting rule, thereby restoring Endangered Species Act protection for the Yellowstone grizzly bear population in September 2018.

In anticipation of the delisting of Greater Yellowstone grizzly bears, Federal and State agencies developed a conservation strategy for managing Yellowstone grizzlies in 2003, which was updated in 2007, and

again in 2016. The conservation strategy was developed by an interagency team consisting of representatives from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Interagency Grizzly Bear Study Team, National Park Service, U.S. Forest Service, and wildlife management agencies from Montana, Idaho, and Wyoming. This team brought a wealth of knowledge and experience to the table, and developed the conservation strategy using this combined expertise, as well as drawing upon the best available scientific information and literature relative to grizzly bear management. The conservation strategy identifies secure habitat, developed sites, livestock grazing allotments, and key food sources as the habitat elements most likely to influence grizzly bear persistence in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem. The following plan components formally adopt habitat standards from the Conservation Strategy for the Grizzly Bear in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem into the Custer Gallatin Plan.

The plan formally adopts habitat standards from the Conservation Strategy for the Grizzly Bear in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem (hereafter conservation strategy). Plan components adopted from the conservation strategy apply to specific areas on the national forest. Legal status of the grizzly bear (for example, whether or not the distinct population segment is listed under the Endangered Species Act) affects the terminology used to describe the specific area to which these plan components apply. So long as the Greater Yellowstone grizzly population is listed under the Endangered Species Act, plan components adopted from the conservation strategy apply within the recovery zone as delineated in the Grizzly Bear Recovery Plan (USDI FWS 1982, revised 1993). However, if the Greater Yellowstone distinct population segment of grizzly bears is successfully delisted, the term “primary conservation area” replaces the term “recovery zone” to reflect the change in management paradigm from a focus on achieving species recovery to conservation of a recovered population (USDI FWS 2017). Regardless of the terminology used, the spatial extent to which the plan components apply is the same, because the boundary for the primary conservation area is the same as the boundary for the recovery zone (see map in plan appendix B). Due to recent and expected future fluctuation of the legal status of the grizzly bear, area-specific plan components use both terms (recovery zone/primary conservation area) in order to apply to the current situation. All plan components apply regardless of the legal status of the grizzly population, and area-specific plan components apply to the same portion of the Custer Gallatin National Forest regardless of the terminology used to describe that area.

#### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLGB)*

- 01** Inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, grizzly bears, including reproductive females, are present with sufficient distribution to be resilient to stressors and adaptable to changing conditions. Habitat conditions associated with availability of secure areas, presence of developed sites, and the amount of livestock grazing, are commensurate with, or improved (for bears) relative to levels that existed in 1998, when the species first met recovery criteria. Human development for public and administrative use remains focused in areas where concentrated human use was present in 1998.
- 02** Outside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, grizzly bears occur where habitat is biologically suitable and grizzly bear occurrence is socially acceptable. Availability of secure habitat contributes to habitat connectivity, which facilitates grizzly bear movement between the Greater Yellowstone Area and other grizzly bear ecosystems. Human development is configured in a manner that strikes a balance between management needs to accommodate administrative and public use and habitat protection that allows for grizzly bear and human co-existence.

- 03** Bear awareness information is available to national forest users and there are few bear-human conflicts.

*Goals (FW-GO-WLGB)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with Tribal, Federal, State, and other willing partners to address the issue of habitat connectivity between grizzly bear ecosystems, with the long-term goal of achieving successful dispersal of grizzly bears between ecosystems, and ultimately increasing the genetic diversity and long-term health of grizzly bears inhabiting the Custer Gallatin National Forest.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works cooperatively with Montana Fish Wildlife and Parks and the Interagency Grizzly Bear Study Team to identify potential relocation sites for grizzly bears that meet habitat requirements for the bears and are consistent with Forest Service management interests.
- 03** The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperatively supports or assists in interagency efforts to track, record, and/or report grizzly bear-human and grizzly bear-livestock conflicts to be summarized in the Annual Reports of the Interagency Grizzly Bear Study Team.
- 04** The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperatively supports or assists in interagency efforts to monitor key grizzly bear food items.

*Standards (FW-STD-WLGB)*

- 01** Inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, management actions shall not reduce the percent of secure habitat in each bear management subunit below 1998 baseline levels. For subunits identified in the 2007 Conservation Strategy as needing improvement above 1998 levels (Gallatin #3, Henrys Lake #2, and Madison #2), management actions shall not reduce the percent of secure habitat below levels attained from full implementation of the 2006 Gallatin National Forest Travel Management Plan. See glossary: baseline levels for grizzly bears, and plan appendix F for secure habitat values. Management actions that result in temporary or permanent reduction of secure habitat below the applicable baseline are allowed so long as they follow the application rules listed in standards FW-STD-WLGB 02 and 03 below.
- 02** *Permanent Changes in Secure Habitat.* Construction of new motorized routes (roads or trails), reconstruction of existing motorized routes, or opening of a previously decommissioned motorized route inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area shall meet the following conditions:
- Replace any loss in secure habitat below baseline levels by restoring secure habitat of equivalent quality and quantity (such as through decommissioning) in the same bear management subunit. Habitat quality must be assessed based on the best collective scientific understanding of grizzly bear habitat ecology and the rationale for all mitigation measures must be fully documented.
  - Replacement habitat must be in place before project implementation or concurrent with project development as an integral part of the project plan. Replacement habitat must remain in place for a minimum of 10 years (the approximate generation time of a female grizzly bear, or the time it takes to replace herself in the population).
  - Emergency repairs, replacements, or realignments of existing forest system roads or trails, power lines, utilities and/or associated infrastructure shall be made in the nearest suitable location to the damaged facilities when replacement within the existing alignment is not feasible due to

natural hazards such as landslides, slumps, or other conditions that render the original location unsafe or unsuitable for the intended structure.

- d. For activities based on statutory rights, such as the 1872 General Mining Law, where permanent reductions in secure habitat cannot be replaced within the affected subunit, then secure habitat must be compensated at a commensurate level at or above the baseline in the nearest possible subunit. Subsequent changes to secure habitat in the two affected subunits will then constitute permanent changes to the baseline.
- e. Proposed applications for permit to drill and operating plans within existing oil and gas leases or mine locations, shall meet the application rules for changes to secure habitat. New leases, applications for permit to drill, and operating plans shall meet the secure habitat standards.

**03 *Temporary Changes in Secure Habitat.*** Inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, project activities shall meet the following conditions for temporary reductions in secure habitat below baseline:

- a. Only one project affecting secure habitat below baseline values may be active within a given bear management subunit at any one time.
- b. Total acreage of secure habitat below baseline values within a given bear management unit shall not exceed 1 percent of the acreage in the largest subunit within that bear management unit. The acreage of a project that counts against the 1 percent limit (for example the amount of secure habitat affected) is measured as the acreage within the 500-meter buffer around any temporary motorized access route or low-level helicopter flight line that intrudes into existing secure habitat.
- c. New temporary roads shall be limited to administrative purposes associated with project activities. Project activities shall not reduce secure habitat below baseline levels for more than four consecutive years. The collective set of temporary roads that affect secure habitat below baseline levels shall be closed to all motorized use after three years. Temporary roads shall be decommissioned such that secure habitat is restored within one year after closure.

**04 *Developed Sites within Authorized Footprints and Primary Roads.*** Inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, new infrastructure designed to accommodate additional human capacity for administrative and/or public use may be allowed within the authorized footprint of a site that existed in 1998 or the area within 300 meters of a primary road that existed in 1998 (see plan appendix F for map of authorized footprints and primary road segments affected). Any such increases shall meet the following conditions:

- a. All new infrastructure needed to accommodate increased capacity at existing developed sites shall be completely contained within the authorized footprint for the site. Exceptions may be made only for emergency administrative and maintenance infrastructure needed to reduce resource damage or minimize potential for bear-human conflicts where such infrastructure cannot feasibly be accommodated within the authorized footprint.
- b. Added capacity at existing resorts that operate under special use permit shall not exceed ten percent increase over use authorized in 1998.
- c. All infrastructure associated with new developed sites along primary roads shall: 1) be located no more than 300 meters (approximately 1000 feet) from the edge of the primary road, 2) be for

day use only (see glossary), 3) be non-commercial in nature, 4) be located outside of known wildlife crossing areas, riparian areas, ungulate calving/fawning grounds, and whitebark pine stands, and 5) affect no more than 10 percent of the existing mapped primary road corridors. Any new roads associated with new developed sites within 300 meters of a primary road shall not reduce existing secure habitat below established baseline levels.

- 05 *Developed Sites Outside Authorized Footprints and Primary Roads.*** Inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, the number and capacity of developed sites outside of authorized footprints, or more than 300 meters from a primary road shall be maintained at or below 1998 baseline levels, with the exception of FW-STD-WLGB-05(a) through (d) below. See glossary: baseline levels for grizzly bears, and plan appendix F for baseline developed site values. Construction of new sites or added human capacity at existing sites outside of authorized footprints or primary road buffers must be mitigated for by closure of, or reduction of capacity in, a comparable site within the affected bear management subunit, or as close as possible. Mitigation must be in place before, or concurrent with, construction at new or existing sites. Additional acceptable mitigation measures are listed below:
- a. For new or expanded developed sites based in statutory rights (such as 1872 General Mining Law, Americans with Disability Act, ANILCA, etc.), if mitigation cannot be accomplished within the affected subunit, commensurate compensation shall be made in the nearest subunit possible and changes in the two affected subunits become permanent changes to the baseline.
  - b. Modifications to dispersed recreation sites (outside of authorized footprints and primary road buffers), are allowed only where necessary to address ongoing resource damage or reduce potential for human-grizzly bear conflicts. Modifications shall accommodate the same type (such as day use vs. camping) and level (human capacity) of use occurring at existing dispersed sites. Examples include, but are not limited to addition of toilets and/or bear-resistant food/garbage containers to address water quality, sanitation, and/or minimization of attractants.
  - c. Effective closure and elimination of overnight dispersed recreation sites and areas shall be required as mitigation for construction of a single new campground within each of four key gateway areas (Gardiner Basin, Hebgen Basin, Taylor Fork, Cooke City) where it will have a demonstrable benefit to grizzly bears and other resources. New campground development shall be commensurate with the site capacity provided by the eliminated overnight dispersed sites. Overnight dispersed sites replaced by the new campground must be restored and those areas shall be closed to the public for future vehicle access and overnight use. Effective closure shall not result in displacement of dispersed use to nearby areas.
  - d. Temporary work camps associated with authorized projects (such as vegetation management) or emergency response (such as wildland fires) that cannot reasonably be accommodated off of national forest system lands or within existing developed sites, shall be designed to: minimize the footprint of use, include no new permanent infrastructure, and have all temporary infrastructure removed and vegetation restored immediately upon completion of work associated with the project or incident.
- 06 *Livestock Grazing Allotments.*** Inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, there shall be no increase in the number or acreage of domestic livestock grazing allotments above that which existed in 1998. See glossary: baseline levels for grizzly bear, and plan appendix F for baseline permitted livestock allotment values. Changes in livestock allotments inside the Primary Conservation Area shall meet the following conditions:

- a. A vacant allotment may be issued a permit (for example, re-activated) resulting in an increase in the number of permitted cattle as long as the number and net acreage of active allotments inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area does not exceed the 1998 baseline.
  - b. Combining or dividing existing allotments is allowed as long as the number and net acreage of active allotments inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area does not exceed the 1998 baseline.
  - c. Acres not previously part of a grazing allotment could be added to an active or vacant allotment(s), or be used to create a new allotment, as long as the number and net acreage of active allotments inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area does not exceed the 1998 baseline.
- 07** Inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, use of targeted grazing by domestic sheep or goats for weed control shall include written instructions in the permit, contract or agreement terms, to address timing, location, numbers of domestic sheep or goats retrieval of strays, disposition of domestic sheep or goats carcasses, or any other mitigation measures deemed necessary to minimize risk of conflict with grizzly bears. Instruction shall stipulate that if domestic sheep or goats are subject to depredation by grizzly bears, domestic sheep or goats will be removed from the area. Grizzly bears depredating on domestic sheep or goats used for weed management shall not be removed unless additional circumstances indicate removal is warranted.

*Guidelines (FW-GDL-WLGB)*

- 01** *Temporary Changes in Secure Habitat.* To minimize human disturbance and associated displacement of grizzly bears, project activities should meet the following conditions for temporary reductions in secure habitat below baseline inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area:
- a. Project activities should be concentrated in space and time to minimize disturbance.
- 02** *Developed Sites.* To minimize risk of disturbance, displacement, and human-caused mortality of grizzly bears inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area, changes to existing, or construction of new developed sites should meet the following conditions:
- a. Temporary work camps associated with major projects or emergency response should be placed in low grizzly bear use areas to minimize disturbance and displacement of bears as well as to reduce risk of bear-human conflicts.
  - b. For proposed applications for permit to drill, and new or revised operating plans within existing oil and gas and other mineral leases, the Forest Service should, to the fullest extent of their regulatory authority, strive to meet the developed site standard. The Forest Service must meet the developed site standard when permitting new leases, applications for permit to drill, and operating plans.
  - c. Overnight developed site expansion should occur in the area within the authorized footprint of a site that existed in 1998 unless expansion as outlined in FW-STD-WLGB-05(c) would have a greater benefit to grizzly bears and other resources.

*Suitability (FW-SUIT-WLGB)*

- 01** Where otherwise allowed (such as outside of designated wilderness), secure habitat inside the recovery zone/primary conservation area is suitable for the following activities:

- a. Activities that do not require route construction or reconstruction, re-opening of a previously closed road, or recurring low-level helicopter flight lines.
- b. Helicopter use for short term (no more than 2 days in the duration of a project), or at higher elevations (at least 500 meters above ground level with no landing). Aircraft used in emergency firefighting are allowed.
- c. Non-wheeled, over-the-snow motor vehicle use (such as snowmobile) unless such use results in grizzly bear den abandonment, or bear-human conflicts shortly after den emergence, or new research identifies a threat.
- d. Access to power lines or utility corridors for occasional and necessary maintenance service that does not require new route construction and is used only for administrative purposes related to power line and utility maintenance.
- e. Project activities (such as temporary road construction and maintenance, or use of recurring low-level helicopter flights) that occurs entirely during the grizzly bear denning season.

## Prairie Dogs (WLPD)

### *Introduction*

Two species of prairie dogs are known to occur on the Custer Gallatin. Black-tailed prairie dogs are in the Ashland Geographic Area, and adjacent to the Sioux Geographic Area, where they typically occur in small (generally less than 100 acres), but persistent colonies. Black-tailed prairie dogs were petitioned for listing under the Endangered Species Act, but in 2009 the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service determined the species did not warrant listing. The Custer Gallatin is at the very northern tip of the range for white-tailed prairie dogs, and this species is limited to one known colony in the plan area, located at the eastern fringe of the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area. Like its black-tailed relative, the white-tailed prairie dog was petitioned for listing under the Endangered Species Act, but again in 2010 the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service determined the species did not warrant listing. However, due to its limited distribution, and threats such as susceptibility to plague, predation, and habitat conversion, the long-term persistence of the white-tailed prairie dog in the plan area is of concern. The two species of prairie dogs have similar habitat requirements and management issues, so are addressed together in the following plan components.

### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLPD)*

- 01** Prairie dog colonies contribute unique habitat conditions for a variety of prairie-associated flora and fauna. Habitat for both white-tailed and black-tailed prairie dogs allows for colony expansion where desirable to promote plant and animal diversity and long-term persistence on the Custer Gallatin National Forest.
- 02** Black-tailed prairie dog colony expansion does not result in unwanted encroachment onto adjacent non-Federal lands.

### *Goals (FW-GO-WLPD)*

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages with State (Montana and South Dakota) wildlife agencies to coordinate management of prairie dog towns and habitat toward achievement of mutual conservation goals.

### *Standards (FW-STD-WLPD)*

- 01** Use of toxicants (such as rodenticides) shall not be permitted to control the spread of white-tailed prairie dog colonies.
- 02** New roads, trails and other permanent facilities or structures, shall not be constructed within 100 feet of white-tailed prairie dog colonies.

### *Guidelines (FW-GDL-WLPD)*

- 01** To maintain important ecological contributions of prairie dogs, non-lethal means should be implemented before lethal means to control the spread of black-tailed prairie dogs.
- 02** To limit disturbance to prairie dogs and other species associated with prairie dog colonies, new roads, trails and other permanent facilities or structures, should not be constructed within 100 feet of black-tailed prairie dog colonies, unless for the specific purpose of managing undesired colony expansion.

## Wolverine (WLWV)

### *Introduction*

The wolverine is the largest land-dwelling member of the weasel family, and is well adapted to live in cold, snowy conditions. Consequently, wolverines are typically found at higher elevations, in alpine and subalpine habitats in the plan area. Wolverine habitat is patchily distributed across the plan area, and the species has a large home range relative to other mammals of similar body size. As a result, they naturally occur at low densities in the plan area. Wolverines on the Custer Gallatin National Forest are part of a meta-population, or a network of subpopulations occupying isolated patches of suitable habitat. Their persistence in the naturally fragmented habitat found at high elevations may be dependent on regular, or at least intermittent, dispersal of individuals amongst habitat islands to facilitate gene flow between subpopulations.

### *Desired Conditions (FW-DC-WLWV)*

- 01** Forest and alpine habitat characterized by persistent snow cover and cooler temperatures provide high quality reproductive habitat, denning and foraging opportunities for wolverines. High elevation habitat and associated micro-climates provide refugia and habitat connectivity for wolverines in the face of changing climates and emerging threats.

### *Guidelines (FW-GDL-WLWV)*

- 01** To provide secure habitat for reproductive wolverines, there should be no increase in special use authorizations or designation of winter routes in maternal habitat for wolverines during the reproductive denning season.

## Benefits to People: Multiple Uses and Ecosystem Services

### **Introduction**

Social, cultural, and economic resources on the Custer Gallatin National Forest contribute to the social and economic sustainability of local communities and the public. The 2012 Planning Rule calls those resources “ecosystem services” or, put more simply, the benefits people obtain from the national forest.



Healthy forest, shrubland, grassland, and riparian ecosystems are life-supporting systems that provide a full suite of goods and services that are vital to human health, financial sustainability, and wellbeing. These ecosystem services or benefits include all the multiple uses that people traditionally have relied on, such as recreation, minerals, forage and timber, as well as less obvious or apparent benefits, such as clean air and carbon sequestration. Multiple use is defined by the Multiple-Use Sustained-Yield Act of 1960 (16 U.S.C. 528–531). Other sections of this plan, such as water quality, air quality, and recreation also provide plan direction that contribute benefits to people.

The 2012 Planning Rule also requires that forests take an all-lands approach to ensure that ecological sustainability and contributions to social and economic sustainability are considered in the context of the larger landscape. This involves managing the plan area in partnership with both public and private landowners and stakeholders to ensure management efforts are coordinated whenever possible. Included in this section are plan components related to partnerships and coordination.

## **General Contributions to Social and Economic Sustainability (SUS)**

### **Introduction**

Social sustainability refers to the capability of society to support the network of relationships, traditions, culture, and activities that connect people to the land and to one another, and support vibrant communities (36 CFR 219.19).

Economic sustainability refers to the capability of society to produce and consume or otherwise benefit from goods and services including contributions to jobs and markets and nonmarket benefits.

Executive Order No. 12898 on Environmental Justice (issued February 11, 1994), mandates Federal agencies to make achieving environmental justice part of their mission. This includes identification and response to disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects of its programs, policies, and activities on minority and low-income populations. Environmental justice communities are those identified as having significant minority or low-income demographics. Areas influenced by the Custer Gallatin that meet this definition include the Crow Indian Reservation and the Northern Cheyenne Indian Reservation, as well as high poverty areas located north of the Indian reservations in northwestern South Dakota.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-SUS)**

- 01** Key forest resources, products, services, and opportunities including clean air, clean water and aquatic ecosystems, terrestrial ecosystems, education and volunteer programs, flood control, infrastructure, forest products, mineral and energy resources, historic, cultural, tribal or archeological sites, geologic features, grazing, scenery, recreation, spiritual inspiration, opportunities to experience peace, quiet and solitude in nature, free roaming wildlife, and designated areas (including their intrinsic values), contribute to the well-being, quality of life, mental, physical and spiritual health, and safety of the public.
- 02** Sustainable levels of forest provided goods and services (such as wilderness, fish and wildlife, livestock grazing, recreation opportunities and access, timber, minerals, energy resources, infrastructure, etc.) are available and contribute to the social, cultural, and economic sustainability of local communities. The flow of these goods and services align with existing and emerging industries, growing and vulnerable populations, and overall economic conditions of forest communities.

- 03** Ecosystems structures and functions provide for clean air and water; desirable recreation and tourism opportunities; forest products; livestock forage; plant and animal food supplies, carbon sequestration, water storage; and mineral and other energy resources.
- 04** High quality terrestrial and aquatic habitats and opportunities for fishing, trapping, and hunting exist on the Custer Gallatin and contribute to local economies as well as the well-being, quality of life, mental, physical, and spiritual health of the public.

### Goals (FW-GO-SUS)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages with local agencies, partner organizations and the public in ecosystem goods and services related planning, particularly in environmental justice communities where residents are more vulnerable to shifts in social and economic conditions.

## **Areas of Tribal Importance (American Indian Rights and Interests) (TRIBAL)**

### Introduction

Tribes are sovereign nations with whom the Forest Service maintains government-to-government relationships. Each Tribe has unique rights, interests, and governing processes, necessitating unique coordination and consultation in order to ensure the Forest Service meets its trust responsibilities to the Tribes. Trust responsibility is the U.S. Government's permanent legal obligation to exercise statutory and other legal authorities to protect tribal lands, assets, resources, and treaty rights. See map of treaty rights and land cessions within and surrounding the Custer Gallatin National Forest is found in plan appendix A, Management Approaches for Areas of Tribal Importance.

Some Tribes have reserved treaty-protected rights while others have rights established by Executive Order or statute. Among the items reserved by Tribes in exchange for land, are the rights to hunt, gather, and fish in a manner that would allow them to maintain their traditional way of life on open and unclaimed lands. "Open and unclaimed lands" may include public lands outside of the Tribe's ceded territory and forest lands are generally held to be "open and unclaimed." It is the Forest Service responsibilities to accommodate these reserved treaty rights including maintaining and improving the wildlife, fish and plant habitats upon which the Tribes rely. Bison hunting occurs along the periphery of the Yellowstone National Park and Tribes currently engage in this traditional practice, a treaty protected right.

Sacred sites, sacred places, tribal cultural landscapes, and traditional cultural properties have religious, cultural, and traditional importance to indigenous individuals and Indian Tribes. Traditional cultural properties are managed under the authority of the National Historic Preservation Act. They are, by definition, eligible for listing on the National Register and must be a tangible property, that is, a district, site, building, structure, or object as defined in 36 Code of Federal Regulations 64.4.

Sacred sites and sacred places important to Native Americans are managed under the authority of Executive Order 13007: Indian Sacred Sites. Indian Sacred Sites are identified by an Indian Tribe or indigenous individual determined to be an authoritative representative of an Indian religion. It is the Forest Service responsibility to protect sacred sites, manage for sacred sites, and provide for tribal traditional and cultural practices. This includes protecting the physical integrity of these sites and access to them.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-TRIBAL)**

- 01** In recognition of Federal trust responsibilities, healthy and sustainable plant and animal habitats support the availability of reserved treaty rights resources for traditional cultural practices.
- 02** Tribal members have access to sacred sites, sacred places and tribal cultural landscapes within the Custer Gallatin for the exercise of reserved treaty rights and traditional cultural practices.
- 03** Rituals and ceremonies at sites identified as sacred by Tribes and practitioners of native traditional religions can be conducted in privacy and without disruption.

### **Goals (FW-GO-TRIBAL)**

- 01** Tribal cultural landscapes, sacred sites, sacred places, traditional cultural properties and other culturally significant areas identified by Tribes are maintained and managed through government to government consultation and coordination with the appropriate Tribes.
- 02** When Tribes identify sacred sites or sacred places, the Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks to develop agreements with the associated Tribes for management and access to sacred places, processes for consultation, notice and dispute resolution, and site confidentiality.

### **Standards (FW-STD-TRIBAL)**

- 01** Requests from Tribes with ties to the Custer Gallatin for temporary closures for traditional and cultural purposes shall be facilitated in conjunction with other on-going or permitted activities.
- 02** When conducting management activities, the Forest Service shall accommodate, to the extent that the use is practicable and is consistent with the Forest Service essential functions, access to and ceremonial use of Indian sacred sites by native religious practitioners and shall maintain the confidentiality of sacred sites.
- 03** All new land management activities shall avoid, minimize, or mitigate potential conflict with forest resources used in the exercise of reserved treaty rights, and for traditional and cultural practices.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-TRIBAL)**

- 01** To support reserved treaty rights, management activities and permitted recreation uses should avoid areas of tribal importance during specific times of tribal use as designated by the associated Tribe.
- 02** To protect sacred sites, management activities should avoid adversely affecting the physical integrity of these sites.

## **Cultural and Historic Resources (CR)**

### **Introduction**

Numerous laws, regulations, and policies govern the use and administration of cultural resources on national forest lands. Some are more commonly used regulations, such as the Archaeological Resource Protection Act, the National Historic Preservation Act, the Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Act, and the American Religious Freedom Act. National laws and regulations are also interpreted in Forest Service manuals, handbooks, and regional guides.

Over 4,500 archaeological, traditional cultural properties, and historic sites are recorded on the Custer Gallatin, including sites on the National Register of Historic Places. “Priority assets” is a special Forest Service category that demonstrates a distinct value to the Custer Gallatin and are, or should be actively maintained. The Nez Perce National Historic Trail, commemorating the flight of members of the Nez Perce Tribe in 1877, also crosses the Custer Gallatin on the west border.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-CR)

- 01** Identified traditional cultural properties, cultural landscapes, and other culturally significant areas provide tangible links to historically rooted beliefs, customs, and practices.
- 02** Interpretation and adaptive use of cultural resources provide public benefits and education, and enhance understanding and appreciation of Custer Gallatin National Forest precontact, contact, and indigenous presence.
- 03** Historic Forest Service administrative buildings and sites reflect agency history, identity, and function. Historic buildings are adaptable to other innovative proposed uses.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-CR)

- 01** Annually conduct ten or more public outreach or interpretive projects that enhances public understanding and awareness of cultural resources and history of the Custer Gallatin.
- 02** Annually manage to standard 20 percent of the priority assets, based on available budgets, so that every five years all priority assets will have updated condition assessments.

## Permitted Livestock Grazing (GRAZ)

### Introduction

Livestock grazing on the Custer Gallatin is an important contribution to the social and economic importance of rural communities and to the associated traditional cultural landscapes. Forest grazing is often an integral component of overall ranch operations.

It is Forest Service policy (36 CFR 222.2 (c) and Forest Service Manual 2202.1, 2203.1) and congressional intent (*Multiple Use Sustained Yield Act of 1960, Wilderness Act of 1964, Forest and Rangeland Renewable Resources Planning Act of 1974, and National Forest Management Act of 1976*) to continue contributions to the economic and social well-being of people by providing opportunities for economic diversity and by promoting stability for communities that depend on rangeland resources for their livelihood, and to make forage available to qualified livestock operators from lands suitable for grazing consistent with land management plans. National Forest System lands on the Custer Gallatin are considered suitable for permitted livestock grazing except for those areas where livestock grazing is identified in the plan as not being an acceptable use (not suitable).

Forage for permitted livestock grazing is predominantly found in natural grasslands, shrublands, riparian, wetlands, deciduous woodlands, and pine savannas. Plan components are designed to accommodate the range of site-specific needs of individual allotments, species, and plant communities. Policy directs that allotment environmental analysis be scheduled for completion and subsequent periodic environmental analysis sufficiency reviews be conducted. Allotment management plans for livestock provide specific operational guidance and are the appropriate planning level to develop and implement management tools such as utilization guidelines or stream bank alteration limitations (FSH 1909.12 section 22.23d).

Forest Service policy direction for permitted livestock use is found in 36 CFR 222 and agency manuals (Forest Service Manual 2200) and handbooks. Existing grazing allotments in wilderness areas are to be managed in accordance with wilderness values. Wilderness area grazing direction is found in 36 CFR 293.7 and Forest Service Manual 2323.2 (which includes congressional direction from H.R. Report No. 96-1126, dated June 24, 1981).

Desired conditions for forage producing vegetation (such as grasslands, shrublands, riparian, wetlands, deciduous woodlands) are outlined in the “terrestrial vegetation” section, “invasive species” section, and the “watershed, aquatic, and riparian” section of this plan and will not be repeated here.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-GRAZ)

- 01** Grazing allotments contribute to a supply of livestock forage that contributes to local ranching operation sustainability and local community economy while maintaining or moving toward ecological desired conditions.
- 02** Forage reserve allotments are available across the Custer Gallatin to provide short term permitted livestock grazing opportunities when conditions on active allotments are limited by factors such as fire, drought, etc.
- 03** Non-grazed areas represent reference conditions (natural or near natural conditions) in locations where reference habitats do not currently exist or are locally underrepresented, such as riparian, woody draws, ecotonal habitats, and upland vegetation.

### Goals (FW-GO-GRAZ)

- 01** As opportunities arise, the Custer Gallatin National Forest works with permittees to remove or relocate existing allotment infrastructure that attract livestock use in or near aspen, woody draws, riparian areas, groundwater-dependent ecosystems and at-risk plant occurrences.
- 02** When evaluating current or future vacant livestock allotments, the Custer Gallatin National Forest assesses them for designation as a forage reserve allotment, opportunities to enhance management or improve resources through combination with adjacent allotment(s), retention of vacant allotment status for potential use demands in the future or allotment closure based on resource conflicts, conservation opportunities, or economic considerations.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-GRAZ)

- 01** Annually provide conditions which support approximately 213,650 to 217,220 animal unit months, recognizing that allotment site-specific conditions may require adjustments in permitted or annually authorized animal unit months (for example wildland fire, drought, vacant allotment conversions to forage reserve allotments, or vacant allotment closures for other resource purposes).

### Standards (FW-STD-GRAZ)

- 01** New or revised allotment management plans shall design grazing practices (such as stocking levels, duration, timing), and allotment infrastructure to meet or move toward applicable desired conditions in order to maintain or improve resiliency of riparian and upland ecosystems, and associated flora and fauna.
- 02** Stocking of allotments with domestic sheep or goat for livestock production and associated trailing routes shall not be permitted in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains; Bridger, Bangtail,

and Crazy Mountains; Absaroka Beartooth Mountains; or Pryor Mountains Geographic Areas. Stocking of permitted grazing allotments with domestic sheep or goats for livestock production may be permitted in the Ashland and Sioux Geographic Areas only if a risk assessment indicates that spatial or temporal separation, or other mitigation can effectively minimize risk of disease transmission between domestic sheep or goats and bighorn sheep.

- 03** Use of targeted grazing by domestic sheep or goats as part of an integrated pest management program for weed control may occur only if a risk assessment indicates that mitigation can effectively minimize disease transmission between domestic sheep or goats and bighorn sheep.
- 04** Terms and conditions of sheep or goat permits, trailing permits and weed control permits, contracts or agreements shall include:
  - a. Retrieval and disposition procedures to address management of stray domestic sheep or goats left on National Forest System lands prior to or after grazing, trailing, permitted on- and off-dates.
  - b. Notification and emergency procedures to address those situations when wandering bighorn sheep may come into contact with domestic sheep or goats.
  - c. Appropriate measures to prevent turnout of sick or diseased domestic sheep and goats on grazing allotments, on trailing routes, or in weed control situations. Sick or diseased animals shall be removed as soon as possible after their recognition.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL-GRAZ)

- 01** To maintain riparian management zone habitats and water quality, new or revised allotment management plans should incorporate adaptive strategies to reduce sediment delivered to watercourses, reduce degradation to streambank stability, and protect saturated soils from livestock grazing.
- 02** The purpose of this guideline is to maintain or improve riparian and aquatic conditions and achieve riparian desired conditions over time through adaptive management. New grazing authorizations and reauthorizations that contain low gradient, alluvial channels should require that end-of-season stubble height be 10 to 15 cm (4 to 6 inches) along the greenline. However, application of the stubble height numeric value range should only be applied where it is appropriate to reflect existing and natural conditions for the specific geo-climactic, hydrologic, and vegetative conditions where it is being applied. Alternative use and disturbance indicators and values, including those in current ESA consultation documents, may be used if they are based on current science and monitoring data and meet the purpose of this guideline. Long-term monitoring and evaluation should be used to adapt this numeric range and/or the use of other indicators.
- 03** To maintain functionality of big game winter range, new or revised allotment management plans should incorporate adaptive strategies to meet big game forage needs in coordination with other uses.
- 04** To improve livestock distribution and reduce livestock attraction to special habitats or recreational sites, salt or supplement placement should not be within 0.25 mile of water developments, recreational developments, groundwater-dependent ecosystems, streams, aspen stands, woody draws, other special habitats or populations of at-risk plant species that are susceptible to livestock impacts.

- 05** To prevent adverse livestock impacts on sensitive or unique areas, new or reconstructed allotment infrastructure should protect aspen, woody draws, riparian areas, groundwater-dependent ecosystems, and at-risk plant species. For example, new water developments should be located away from groundwater dependent ecosystems and new fences should not funnel or congregate livestock into hardwoods
- 06** New and reconstructed gates should be built to be easily opened and closed by most users.
- 07** To reduce the probability of wildlife entanglement, new and reconstructed fences should allow for free movement and distribution of wildlife.
- 08** To facilitate animal escape and prevent hazards to wildlife, new and reconstructed water developments should be built to be wildlife friendly.
- 09** To reduce impacts on livestock distribution and forage values from surface-disturbance activities, new locatable or leasable mineral development should use specific mitigation measures. Existing range improvements should be relocated as necessary to accommodate new mineral development.
- 10** To move towards desired conditions for vegetation and riparian resources, considering both the needs and impacts of domestic livestock and wildlife, new or revised allotment management plans should incorporate adaptive management strategies.

## Timber (TIM)

### Introduction

Harvest of timber on national forest lands occurs for many different reasons, including ecological restoration, community protection in wildland-urban interfaces, public safety, habitat restoration, protection of municipal water supplies; and to contribute to economic sustainability through the production of timber, pulp for paper, specialty woods for furniture, or fuel as a renewable energy source. Timber harvest, whether for regularly scheduled wood production or for restoration and other reasons, supports local businesses and employment.

### Suitability for Timber Production

Timber production is defined as the purposeful growing, tending, harvesting, and regeneration of regulated crops of trees to be cut into logs, bolts, or other round sections for industrial or consumer use. The 2012 Planning Rule requires identification of lands that are suited and not suited for timber production based on factors that include legal withdrawal (for example, timber production prohibited due to statute, executive order, etc.), technical factors (non-forested lands, geology or soil conditions, etc.), and compatibility with desired conditions and objectives stated in the plan (plan components). Therefore, in lands suitable for timber production, active vegetation management and some regular flow of timber products is expected to occur. Table 16 displays the acres of timber production suitability classification. Unless prohibited by other plan components, timber harvest may occur on lands unsuitable for timber production to meet other resource objectives.

**Table 16. Timber production suitability classification (acres)**

| Land Classification Category           | Acres     |
|--|-----------|
| A. Total forest lands in the plan area | 3,045,965 |

| Land Classification Category  | Acres     |
|---|-----------|
| B. Lands not suited for timber production due to legal or technical reasons   | 2,365,855 |
| C. Lands that may be suited for timber production (A–B)   | 680,110   |
| D. Total lands suited for timber production because timber production is compatible with the desired conditions and objectives established by the plan; percent of forest | 560,071   |
| E. Lands not suited for timber production because timber production is not compatible with the desired conditions and objectives established by the plan (C–D)            | 120,039   |
| F. Total lands not suited for timber production (B+E)   | 2,485,894 |

### Sustained Yield Limit

Per the National Forest Management Act and planning rule regulations, the total quantity of saw timber that may be sold from all lands (excluding salvage or sanitation harvest volume) must be less than or equal to the sustained yield limit. The sustained yield limit is the amount of timber meeting applicable utilization standards, “which can be removed from [a] forest annually in perpetuity on a sustained-yield basis” as addressed in the National Forest Management Act at section 11, 16 United States Code 1611; 36 Code of Federal Regulations 219.11(d)(6). The sustained yield limit is not a target but is a limitation on harvest. Calculation of the sustained yield limit is based on lands that may be suitable for timber production (line C from table 16) and is not limited by plan components or considerations of the anticipated fiscal capability or organizational capacity. The Sustained Yield Limit for the Custer Gallatin National Forest is 8.08 MMCF (38.25 MMBF) per year.

### Projected Wood and Timber Sale Quantities

To clearly display the intended timber program associated with achieving ecological, social, and economic desired conditions, the plan identifies the projected wood sale quantity and projected timber sale quantity. Table 17 displays the distinguishing characteristics of the metrics. The projected wood sale quantity is the estimated output of timber and all other wood products (such as fuelwood, firewood, or biomass) expected to be sold during the planning period for any purpose (except salvage harvest or sanitation harvest) on all lands on the Custer Gallatin. The projected timber sale quantity is the portion of the projected wood sale quantity that meets applicable utilization standards (the sawlog portion of offered timber sales). Both the projected wood sale quantity and the projected timber sale quantity are limited by the projected fiscal capability and organizational capacity of the Custer Gallatin. Projected wood sale quantity and the projected timber sale are displayed in FW-OBJ-TIM-01 and FW-OBJ-TIM-02 respectively.



**Table 17. Characteristics of the timber volume metrics**

| Characteristics   | Sustained Yield Limit (SYL) | Projected Wood Sale Quantity (PWSQ) | Projected Timber Sale Quantity (PTSQ) |
|---|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Based on lands that may be suitable for timber production (line c; table 16)  | Yes                         | No                                  | No                                    |
| Based on quantity sold from all lands in plan area  | No                          | Yes                                 | Yes                                   |
| Based on the assumption that all lands that may be suitable for timber production are managed for timber production | Yes                         | No                                  | No                                    |
| Limited by plan components, fiscal capability, and organizational capacity  | No                          | Yes                                 | Yes                                   |
| All volume meets utilization standards  | Yes                         | No                                  | Yes                                   |
| Includes salvage or sanitation harvest volume   | No                          | No                                  | No                                    |
| Varies by alternative in plan environmental impact statement  | No                          | Yes                                 | Yes                                   |

Neither the projected wood sale quantity nor the projected timber sale quantity serve as management targets or as limitations on harvest. Rather, both are based on reasonable expectations about the fiscal capability and organizational capacity to achieve the desired conditions and objectives in the plan for the planning period. As such, calculation of these volume estimates are sensitive to a number of important assumptions including future budget trends, future markets for timber products, efficiency in planning and implementation, and the timing and locations of large disturbance events. If additional support to achieve desired conditions was provided through opportunities such as increased congressional allocations, stewardship contracting, or work with partners through other authorities, the potential wood and timber sale quantity could be exceeded. Conversely, if available resources, markets, or other factors are less favorable than anticipated, the potential wood and timber sale quantities identified may not be met.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-TIM)

- 01** Lands identified as suitable for timber production support a regularly scheduled timber harvest program that provides for jobs and income while also sustaining ecological integrity.
- 02** Lands suitable for timber production are resistant to natural disturbances, thereby minimizing the economic loss of the timber resource compared to lands designated as unsuitable for timber production.
- 03** Timber production and harvest contribute to ecological sustainability and ecological integrity while contributing to economic sustainability, providing jobs, and income to local economies.
- 04** Timber harvest supports maintaining regional timber harvesting and processing infrastructure.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-TIM)

- 01** Annually offer timber meeting product utilization standards for sale at an average projected timber sale quantity of 2 million cubic feet (10 million board feet)\*, measured on a decadal basis.

\*A projected timber sale quantity level of approximately 4.5 MMCF (approximately 23 MMBF) would be possible within the constraints of the desired conditions and other plan components if budget was not considered as a limiting factor.

- 02** Annually offer wood products (including timber as well as fuelwood, biomass, and other volumes that do not meet product utilization standards) for sale at an average annual projected wood sale quantity of 3.5 million cubic feet (approximately 18 million board feet)\*, measured on a decadal basis.

\*A projected wood sale quantity level of approximately 6.8 MMCF (approximately 35 MMBF) would be possible within the constraints of the desired conditions and other plan components if budget was not considered as a limiting factor.

### Standards (FW-STD-TIM)

- 01** Harvest for purposes of timber production shall occur only on those lands classified as suitable for timber production.
- 02** Timber shall not be harvested on lands where soil, slope or other watershed conditions may be irreversibly damaged by harvest activities, as identified in project specific findings.
- 03** Silvicultural treatments shall not be selected based solely on their ability to provide the greatest dollar return or output of timber.
- 04** Clearcutting shall be used as a harvest method only where it has been determined to be the method most appropriate to achieve plan objectives or for achieving desired conditions for vegetation, wildlife habitat, scenery, and other resources. Other types of even-aged harvest shall be used only where determined to be appropriate. Determinations shall be based on an interdisciplinary review of site-specific conditions and the desired conditions for vegetation, wildlife habitat, scenery, and other resources.
- 05** Timber harvest units shall be shaped and blended to the extent practicable with the natural terrain.
- 06** Even-aged stands shall generally reach a minimum of 95 percent of culmination of mean annual increment, as measured by cubic volume, prior to regeneration harvest, unless at least one of the following conditions have been identified during project development:
- a. When such harvesting would modify fire behavior to protect resource, social or economic values;
  - b. When harvesting of stands will trend landscapes toward vegetation desired conditions;
  - c. When harvest uses uneven-aged silvicultural systems, thinning, or other intermediate stand treatments that do not regenerate even-aged or two-aged stands;
  - d. When harvest is for sanitation or salvage of timber stands that have been substantially damaged by fire, windthrow, or other disturbance or which are in imminent danger from insect or disease attack;
  - e. When harvest is on lands not suited for timber production and the type and frequency of harvest is due to the need to protect or restore multiple use values other than timber production.
- 07** The quantity of timber that may be sold per decade from lands both suitable and not suitable for timber production shall not exceed the sustained yield limit 8.08 million cubic feet average annual volume (approximately 38 million board feet) with the exception of salvage or sanitation cutting of trees that are damaged by fire, windthrow, or other disturbance or to manage insect infestation or

disease spread. Salvage harvest of such trees may be harvested above the sustained yield limit, where such harvest is consistent with desired conditions for terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems.

- 08** Openings created by clearcutting, seedtree cutting, shelterwood seed cutting, or other cuts designed to regenerate an even-aged stand of timber in one harvest operation shall not exceed 40 acres. This standard applies to new, individual harvest proposals on national forest lands only and need not consider existing openings on national forest land, adjacent private or other agency lands. Exceptions to the 40-acre maximum opening size may occur when determined necessary to achieve desired ecological conditions for the plan area, such as those associated with forest patterns, patch sizes, and forest resilience in the short and long term. Maximum opening size under this exception is 75 acres. Harvest openings created as a result of a single harvest operation that exceed the exception to the maximum opening size shall require 60-day public notice and regional forester review.
- 09** The maximum opening size displayed in FW-STD-TIM-08 and the 60-day public notice and regional review process shall not apply to the size of areas harvested as a result of natural disturbances, such as fire, windstorms, or insect and disease infestations.
- 10** To maintain forest cover, timber harvest shall only be used when there is reasonable assurance of restocking within 5 years after final regeneration harvest. Restocking level is prescribed in a site-specific silvicultural prescription for a treatment unit and is determined to be adequate depending on the objectives and desired conditions for the plan area. In some instances, such as when stands are treated to reduce fuel loadings, to create openings for scenic vistas, or to prevent encroaching trees to meet desired vegetation or wildlife habitat conditions, it is acceptable not to restock or restock at low tree densities.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-TIM)

- 01** Salvage harvest in areas burned by wildfire should retain some unburned patches and patches burned at low severity (less than 20 percent tree mortality) to contribute to ecosystem and wildlife habitat diversity.
- 02** Salvage harvest in areas burned by wildfire should retain clusters of burned trees of a variety of sizes, including large and very large sizes (greater than 15 inches d.b.h.) to provide habitat for wildlife species associated with burned habitats.
- 03** On lands not classified as suitable for timber production, regularly scheduled timber harvest should not occur and timber harvest should only be used as a tool to assist in achieving or maintaining one or more applicable desired conditions or objectives of the plan in order to protect other multiple-use values, and for salvage, sanitation, or public health or safety. Examples of using timber harvest to protect other multiple use values may include improving wildlife or fish habitat, thinning to reduce fire risk, or restoring meadow or savanna ecosystems where trees have invaded.

## Special Forest Products (FP)

### Introduction

Special forest products are part of the overall ecosystem services provided. Special forest products are natural resources that are not the traditional timber and fiber products. They include, but are not limited

to, mushrooms, medicinal plants, posts and poles, Christmas trees, boughs, and teepee poles. Petrified wood is not considered a special forest product.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-FP)

- 01 A variety of special forest products are available for tribal, commercial, personal, educational, and scientific uses.

### Standards (FW-STD-FP)

- 01 Permits for commercial use of special forest products shall not be allowed in designated wilderness, wilderness study areas, recommended wilderness, wild portions of designated and eligible wild and scenic rivers, backcountry areas, Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area and special areas. Special forest products shall not be permitted for commercial or noncommercial personal use in research natural areas.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-FP)

- 01 To support persistence and conservation of special forest product habitats, permits for special forest product collection should require sustainable collection methods and levels.

## Energy, Minerals, and Geologic Areas of Interest (EMIN)

### Introduction

The Custer Gallatin National Forest has a long history of mineral exploration and extraction starting in the 1860s when precious and base minerals such as gold, silver, copper, and chromium were discovered in a variety of locations throughout the mountain portions of the Custer Gallatin. Similarly, the eastern portions of the national forest hosted turn of the century mineral extractions associated with discovery and production of energy minerals such as coal, oil, and natural gas. The national forest also contains widespread deposits of saleable mineral materials suitable for use in infrastructure construction, reconstruction, and maintenance projects. The Custer Gallatin National Forest hosts geologic hazards and geologic resources that are unique and offer special considerations during their use and management.

There are three types of mineral and energy resources:

- a. Locatable minerals: include commodities such as gold, silver, copper, zinc, nickel, lead, platinum, etc., and some nonmetallic minerals such as asbestos, gypsum, and gemstones. Under the Mining Law of 1872 (as codified by 36 CFR 228), U.S. citizens are guaranteed the right of access to prospect and explore lands reserved from the public domain and open to mineral entry. The disposal of these commodities is guaranteed and not a discretionary action.
- b. Saleable mineral materials: include petrified wood and common varieties of sand, stone, gravel, cinders, clay, pumice, pumicite and other similar materials. The Forest Service has the authority to dispose of these materials on public lands through a variety of methods. The disposal of these materials is discretionary.
- c. Leasable minerals: include commodities such as oil, gas, coal, geothermal, potassium, sodium phosphates, oil shale, and sulfur on public domain lands and solid leasable minerals on acquired lands.

Areas of the Custer Gallatin are open to leasable minerals exploration, development, and production. Currently there are 68 suspended oil and gas leases covering approximately 100,531 acres on the national forest. No activity can take place on the leases until a site-specific environmental impact statement is completed. A leasing decision, for both the suspended leases and other lands, is not a part of this plan. The disposal of these mineral resources is discretionary.

Mineral encumbrances for subsurface minerals estate include both reserved and outstanding private mineral rights on acquired lands on the Custer Gallatin, active and suspended oil and gas leases and mining claims under the 1872 Mining Law.

The reserved and outstanding mineral rights occur on acquired lands that are split estate, federal surface and private subsurface. Reserved mineral rights are those that a private landowner kept when they sold the property to the United States. Reserved minerals are managed based on the secretary of agriculture's rules and regulations. Outstanding minerals are those minerals that were separated from the surface estate sometime in the past. Outstanding minerals are subject to state law and conditions stated in the original deed conveying the minerals. In both cases, the Forest Service has little control over the access and mineral activities for these private mineral rights.

A part of the Forest Service's mission is to encourage, facilitate, and administer the orderly exploration, development, and production of mineral and energy resources on National Forest System lands to help meet the present and future needs of the nation. Existing Federal law, regulation, and legal decisions guide much of how or if particular minerals and energy management actions should take place. Plan components do not reiterate overarching Federal law, regulation, and policy that must be implemented. The energy and minerals plan components provide further clarity and specificity as to how or if particular minerals and energy management actions should take place. All mineral and energy management activities on national forest system lands are required to meet applicable environmental protection measures as required by law, regulation, and policy.

The right to access and conduct locatable mining activities is a provision of the 1872 Mining Law. Accessing and conducting mining activities on the Custer Gallatin must be reasonable as defined by law and statute. Reasonable access and new facilities for mining activities would not be prohibited under this plan. The plan does not identify new areas for mineral withdrawals..

Specific location information of significant caves is exempt from disclosure to the public unless an approved cave management plan identifies that such disclosure furthers the purpose of Federal Cave Resources Protection Act of 1988 and that such disclosure would not create a substantial risk of harm, theft, or destruction of such cave. The cave standards apply to significant caves, and to caves not yet determined as non-significant; they do not apply to caves determined to be non-significant.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-EMIN)

- 01** Energy and mineral resources are available in consideration of other resources values that may be present. Following mineral activities, lands are in a productive capacity in recognition of site conditions, site stability, and prior existing land use.
- 02** Renewable energy resources (geothermal, hydropower, solar and wind energy) are available in consideration of other resource values that may be present. Following renewable energy activity, impacted areas are in a productive capacity in recognition of site conditions, site stability, and prior existing land use.

- 03** Energy and mineral resources contribute to economic sustainability, providing jobs and income to local economies.
- 04** Abandoned mines lands and areas impacted by past mining activities reflect a state of site condition comparable to pre-mineral activity and provide comparable form and function based on site potential.
- 05** Underground environments in abandoned mines remain unaltered, except where necessary to protect human health and safety.
- 06** Cave and karst resources, inclusive of significant caves, are available for the use, enjoyment, and provision of benefits associated with the cave or karst resources, while also providing wildlife habitat requirements of stress- and disease-free environments for vulnerable, cave-associated species.
- 07** Opportunities for rock hounding and other types of noncommercial rock and mineral collecting (such as for recreational, scientific, research, or educational purposes) are available.
- 08** Geologic resources provide ecological, scientific, educational, interpretative, scenic, recreational, and paleontological benefits for the public and academia.
- 09** Geologic hazards (for example, naturally occurring erionite or radio-active materials, mass wasting, floods, sinkholes, abandoned mines, etc.) do not pose associated risks to public health and safety, facilities, and infrastructure.
- 10** Appropriate access to paleontological resources supports a range of sustainable multiple uses of such resources, including but not limited to educational/interpretation, research, recreational and cultural uses.

### Goals (FW-GO-EMIN)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest fosters cooperation and exchange of information between governmental authorities and those who utilize caves located on national forest system lands for scientific, ceremonial, traditional, education, or recreation purposes.

### Standards (FW-STD-EMIN)

- 01** New mineral and energy management activities shall only be authorized when the associated reclamation plan includes provisions to return disturbed areas to stability and land use comparable to adjacent lands and pre-operational site conditions to the extent practicable.
- 02** The extent and mode of new access for locatable mineral activity conducted under the General Mining Law of 1872 shall be commensurate with the stage of mining activities (prospecting, exploration, site development, mineral production, abandonment or site reclamation and closure).
- 03** When closing underground mine features or caves to public entry, pre-closure inspections shall be conducted to determine if resource protection is necessary. Closures shall be designed and implemented to address any resource concerns, unless public safety needs preclude addressing the resource needs.
- 04** Logging, road construction, and other uses of heavy equipment above or in the vicinity of a cave with a thin roof or the course of such a cave shall be avoided if there is a potential for damage.

Vegetation in the vicinity of a cave or cave course will be retained if it is required to protect the cave's microenvironment.

- 05** Tree cutting in the vicinity of a cave shall directionally fall trees to protect the cave and its course.
- 06** Cave entrances shall not be used as disposal sites for slash, spoils, or other refuse.
- 07** Management activities shall not be permitted within the surface drainage area draining into a cave if such activities may affect the cave ecosystem with diverting surface drainage, sedimentation, soil sterilization, or addition of nutrients or other chemicals (including pesticides, herbicides, fertilizers, dust suppressants and fire retardant) that could change the cave's natural hydrology, irrespective of whether the channels carry perennial, ephemeral, or intermittent flows.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-EMIN)

- 01** To protect prior mine site reclamation work, new activities should not compromise the infrastructure and any remedy applied to mine reclamation sites, including mine waste repositories.
- 02** To protect and conserve aquatic and riparian associated resources (such as streams, rivers, woody draws, wetlands, springs, and seeps) new mining activities should avoid riparian management zones. If the riparian management zone cannot be avoided operators should take all practicable measures to maintain, protect, and rehabilitate water quality and habitat for fish and wildlife, hydrologic function, and other riparian associated resources which may be affected by the operations. Required bonding must consider (in the estimation of bond amount) the cost of stabilizing, rehabilitating, and reclaiming the area of operations.
- 03** To protect and preserve paleontological resources of scientific, educational/interpretive, and recreational value, management activities should avoid or mitigate disturbance to these resources.

## Infrastructure – Roads, Trails, Facilities, Airfields, and Dams

### Introduction

The Infrastructure section direction does not apply to facilities specifically addressed as part of the livestock grazing program, such as allotment fences and water developments, which is found in the “permitted grazing” section. This section also does not include direction for Forest Service-owned communication infrastructure such as radio towers and communication equipment buildings, nor any privately-owned infrastructure under special use authorization.

## Roads and Trails (RT)

### Introduction

The Custer Gallatin National Forest open-road system supports land management activities, recreational users, access to private land in-holdings and commercial ventures, and Forest Service administrative needs. Roads include the roadway, any constructed feature such as bridges, ditches, culverts, signs, retaining walls, etc., that support the user and minimize the effects to other values. The road system is comprised of National Forest System roads and are part of the Forest's Transportation Atlas.

The Custer Gallatin summer and winter trail system is managed for a variety of recreational uses, including hiking, horseback riding, bicycling, running, skiing and snowshoeing, snowmobiling, motorcycle

and all-terrain vehicle riding, and off-highway vehicle riding. In addition to recreation uses, the trail system also supports commercial ventures such as outfitter and guide services. Trails include the trail-way, any constructed feature such as bridges, ditches, culverts, signs, retaining walls, and other features that support the user and minimize the effects to other resources. The trail system is comprised of National Forest System trails and are part of the Forest's Transportation Atlas. In addition, there are "trails open to all vehicles" on the Sioux and Ashland Ranger Districts, which are open to all non-motorized uses and motorized vehicles uses shown on the Motor Vehicle Use Map. The intent of this plan is to apply both trail and road plan direction to "trails open to all vehicles".

While airfields are considered part of the transportation system, there are no authorized airfields on the Custer Gallatin. Site-specific designation of roads, trails, and motorized areas is addressed in the Custer National Forest and the Gallatin National Forest Travel Plans.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RT)

- 01** The transportation system provides safe and efficient public, private inholding, and administrative access to the Custer Gallatin for recreation, special uses, forest resource management, and fire management activities. The transportation system and its use have minimal impacts on resources including ecological integrity and diversity, threatened and endangered species, species of conservation concern, heritage and cultural sites, watersheds, water quality and aquatic species. Roads in intermittent stored service pose minimal risks to water quality and aquatic ecosystems. Drainage structures have a minimal risk of failure and provide adequate drainage that prevents accelerated runoff, erosion, and sediment delivery to streams. In addition, stream crossings provide for passage of aquatic organisms.
- 02** The transportation system is connected to state, county, local public, and other federal roads and trails. The transportation system provides reasonable access to facilities, private in-holdings, and infrastructure (such as buildings, recreation facilities, municipal water systems, dams, reservoirs, range improvements, electronic and communication sites, and utility lines).
- 03** Non-infested areas along national forest roads, trails or around facilities remain free of invasive species. Where invasive species occur along forest roads, trails or around facilities, their range is reduced where possible, or at a minimum, they do not expand.
- 04** Roads and bridges provide for the health and safety of each user, are cost effective, preserve the integrity of the road or trail, and reasonably protect the natural, cultural, and aesthetic values within the roadway or trail-way.
- 05** The trail system accommodates current and reasonably foreseeable recreational demands and ability of the Forest Service to provide sustainable maintenance through volunteer, partnership, or agency resources.

### Goals (FW-GO-RT)

- 01** The road system is part of a broader public road system that is under the jurisdiction of multiple road agencies. Road agencies cooperate routinely to reduce conflicts, ensure cost effective partnering, and provide a seamless transportation system to the public and reduces the overall footprint of the entire transportation system.



- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest pursues road maintenance agreements with users, so that residential subdivisions, commercial enterprises, utility companies, etc., using a National Forest System road share in the fair cost of road maintenance and improvement, based generally on type and timing of use.
- 03** The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with Tribes, highway managers, State agencies, and landowners to implement wildlife and aquatic organism crossings that reduces encounters.
- 04** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates with nearby utilities to encourage co-location within the road prism and undergrounding of lines.

#### Objectives (FW-OBJ-RT)

- 01** Annually maintain 20 percent of high clearance vehicle roads, based on available budgets.
- 02** Annually maintain 75 percent of passenger vehicle clearance roads, based on available budgets.
- 03** Annually maintain 30 percent of trails to standard, based on available budgets, emphasizing areas of higher use.
- 04** Provide maintenance annually on 80 percent of trails, based on available budgets.

#### Standards (FW-STD-RT)

- 01** During dust abatement applications on roads, chemicals shall not be applied directly to watercourses, water bodies (such as ponds and lakes), wetlands, petroglyphs or pictographs.
- 02** Forest Service owned or authorized construction and maintenance equipment shall be free of invasive plant materials prior to mobilizing onto national forest land.
- 03** For new road construction and reconstruction of existing road segments within or adjacent to riparian management zones, do not side-cast fill material.
- 04** Newly constructed or reconstructed roads shall not encroach into streams and riparian management zones in ways that impact channel and floodplain function, geometry, or sediment delivery in the long term.
- 05** To maintain fish and other organism passage new and reconstructed stream crossing sites (culverts, bridges, and other stream crossings) shall accommodate at least the 100-year flow and be designed to withstand and to route stream flows into the downstream thalweg in the event the crossing is plugged or is exposed to a flow greater than for which the crossing was designed to pass through. Exceptions may be allowed when an evaluation of site conditions, resource values, infrastructure values, or passage design features demonstrates fish and other organism passage can be maintained without installing a structure that accommodates the 100-year flow.
- 06** In the case of trails open to all vehicles, all road plan direction shall apply as well as all trail plan direction.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL-RT)

- 01** Road and trail construction or reconstruction should utilize new technologies to enhance functionality, improve efficiency, reduce resource impacts and reduce costs.

- 02** Temporary roads should be located and constructed to facilitate removal and restoration following the needed use.
- 03** To maintain the hydrologic integrity of watersheds, construction, reconstruction, and maintenance activities of roads, skid trails, temporary roads, trails and airfields, should hydrologically disconnect the drainage system from delivering water, sediment, and pollutants to the inner riparian management zone and water bodies (except at designated stream crossings).
- 04** To reduce the risk to aquatic resources when decommissioning roads, making roads impassable, or putting roads into intermittent stored service, roads should be left in a hydrologically stable condition, for example, drainage off roads should be routed away from water resources and landslide-prone areas and towards stable areas of the forest floor to provide filtering and infiltration.
- 05** New physical barriers on travel routes (such as berms) should assure that drainage features are enough to avoid future risks to aquatic resources (such as remove culverts from stream crossings). Travel routes include roads, skid trails, temporary roads, and trails.
- 06** To maintain or improve watershed ecosystem integrity and reduce road-related mass wasting and sediment delivery to watercourses, new and reconstructed road, trail, (including skid trails and temporary roads), airfields and other linear features should not be constructed on lands with high mass wasting potential.
- 07** To maintain channel stability and reduce sediment delivery to watercourses, during construction or reconstruction, trails, fords, and other stream crossings should be hardened to protect the streambed, banks and approaches.
- 08** To reduce the likelihood of sediment input to streams, maintenance activities such as road blading and snow plowing on existing roads should minimize side-casting, particularly into or adjacent to water bodies. Care should be taken when plowing snow so as not to include road soil. Breaks should be designed in the snow berms to direct water off the road.
- 09** To protect wetlands and to protect the roadbed, wetlands and unstable areas should be avoided when reconstructing existing roads or constructing new roads and landings. Impacts should be minimized where avoidance is not practical.
- 10** To protect the roadbed or airfield and to minimize sediment delivery to streams, when constructing, reconstructing, or maintaining roads and airfields, drainage should be routed away from potentially unstable channels, fills, and hillslopes.
- 11** To maintain or improve watershed ecosystem integrity, transportation infrastructure should be designed to maintain natural hydrologic flow paths to the extent practicable (for example, streams should have crossing structures and not be routed down ditches).

## **Facilities (FAC)**

### **Introduction**

The Custer Gallatin National Forest manages a variety of administrative and recreational facilities.

Administrative facilities include offices, warehouses, fire stations, helicopter landing pads, water and wastewater systems, fire lookouts, residences, bunkhouses, stock handling buildings and pastures,

fueling stations, backcountry cabins, fire retardant filling stations, radio repeater sites, storage, dams, site fencing, and other minor developments. These are used primarily for administrative support to forest land management activities.

Recreational facilities include visitor centers, campgrounds, picnic areas, trailheads, river access sites, rental cabins, water and wastewater systems, interpretive sites, and support facilities such as toilets that support the Custer Gallatin's recreational program. Additional direction is included in the recreation section of this plan.

Facilities are needed support the agency's mission. This mission is characterized in each of the facility master plans where the appropriate facilities are recommended. For instance, the master plan characterizes how the Forest Service determines the need and scale of its residential housing program (quarters) and proposes the needed facilities.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-FAC)

- 01** Administrative facilities support the agency's multiple use mission.
- 02** Administrative facilities not needed to support the agency's mission are no longer existent.
- 03** Administrative facilities provide for the safety, health, and intruder security of the occupants.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-FAC)

- 01** Annually maintain 60 percent of administrative facilities, based on available budgets.

### Standards (FW-STD-FAC)

- 01** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed in administrative sites.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-FAC)

- 01** To maintain quality and quantity of water flows to, within, or between groundwater-dependent ecosystems, new groundwater use developments (such as recreation and administrative sites, drinking water wells, waste water facilities) should not: (a) be developed in riparian management zones (unless no alternatives exist); (b) measurably lower river flows, lake levels, or flows to wetlands or springs (such as change springs from perennial to intermittent, or eliminate springs altogether); or (c) discharge pollutants directly to groundwater.
- 02** To protect resources, new and reconstructed solid and sanitary waste facilities should not be located within inner riparian management zones.
- 03** To reduce potential impacts to water and fishery resources, new facilities or infrastructure should be avoided within riparian management zones.
- 04** Where new activities inherently must occur in riparian management zones (such as road stream crossings, boat ramps, docks, interpretive trails), they should be located to minimize impacts on riparian associated resource conditions.
- 05** To enhance functionality, improve efficiency, reduce needed space, and reduce costs, new technologies in energy, building materials, and water management should be applied in all renovations.

### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-FAC)**

- 01** Forest Service administrative sites, such as ranger stations, barns, and corrals are not suitable for public camping. This does not include campgrounds or facilities managed under the rental program.

### **Airfields (AIRFIELDS)**

#### **Introduction**

The Custer Gallatin National Forest does not manage any public or administrative airfields as part of the transportation system. The national forest owns taxiways and tarmacs at the West Yellowstone Airport in support of the smokejumper and air tanker base. No public sites have been designated or authorized on the Custer Gallatin National Forest. Desired conditions under Roads and Trails and General Recreation apply to public recreational motorized aircraft landing locations (airfields).

#### **Standards (FW-STD-AIRFIELDS)**

- 01** Public recreational motorized aircraft landing and take-off shall only be allowed at designated and authorized sites.
- 02** Any new public designated aircraft landing and take-off locations (airfields) shall be constructed, maintained, and operated through partnerships (for example, by the holder of a special use authorization or an agreement).

#### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-AIRFIELDS)**

- 01** Public airfields are not suitable in designated wilderness, the Hyalite Porcupine Buffalo Horn Wilderness Study Area, the Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area, National Natural Landmarks, the Wild Horse Territory, research natural areas, special areas, recommended wilderness areas, designated or eligible wild river corridors, within ½ mile each side of the Continental Divide Trail, key linkage areas, riparian management zones, areas of primitive or semi-primitive nonmotorized recreation opportunity spectrum, or within the grizzly bear recovery zone. Public airfields are suitable in areas of rural, roaded natural and semi-primitive summer motorized recreation opportunity spectrum, outside of the areas listed in the preceding sentence.

### **Dams (DAM)**

#### **Introduction**

The Custer Gallatin National Forest currently manages six Forest Service-operated jurisdictional dams. These do not include small, no-risk stock water impoundments that are addressed in the livestock grazing section.

Existing dams were likely constructed for one or two primary purposes that included water storage for stock watering and crop irrigation. Since that time, many impoundments have been maintained or enhanced for other benefits such as waterfowl habitat enhancement, recreational fisheries, and watersport or lakeside recreation.

#### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-DAM)**

- 01** Dams further the agency's mission of water storage for livestock, wildlife and recreation.

- 02** Dams not needed for the agency’s mission are no longer present and the land is in a no-hazard condition with a more natural hydrologic function.

### Goals (FW-GO-DAM)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates with Tribes and other agencies to enhance recreation, terrestrial, and aquatic habitat benefits of dams.

## Recreation Settings, Opportunities, and Access

### Introduction

The Forest Service strives to provide a set of recreation settings, opportunities, and benefits that are sustainable over time. Sustainable recreation is defined as the set of recreation settings and opportunities on the national forest that are ecologically, economically, and socially sustainable for present and future generations.

Recreation niches are useful in conveying the special, unique, or highly valued recreation opportunities across a landscape. The Custer Gallatin niche statements, developed separately before the two national forests joined, portray the role recreation plays across the combined national forest. The west side of the Custer Gallatin is described as “world class wildland adventures” with river corridors and high mountain trails, and visitors enjoying year-round, world-class, recreation opportunities. The eastern side of the national forest focuses on the theme of “uncommon landscapes,” where jagged peaks and striking buttes offer expansive views of geologic and cultural changes. The diverse landscape, from peaks and alpine plateaus to rolling pine forests and prairies, provide wilderness, remote travel and vistas, wildlife viewing, and hunting. Pack goats are considered recreational livestock and therefore restrictions on recreational livestock apply to pack goats (for example, areas closed to recreational livestock in designated wilderness areas).

Plan components for facilities under this section apply to recreation facilities only.

## General Recreation (REC)

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-REC)

- 01** Recreation activities contribute to jobs and income in the local economy, community stability or growth, and the quality of lifestyles in the area.
- 02** Recreation opportunities promote long-term physical and mental health of the public by encouraging opportunities to connect with nature while pursuing adventure and by instilling a culture of stewardship and appreciation.
- 03** Recreation opportunities are adaptable to changing trends of desired recreation opportunities and increasing demands and use of the Custer Gallatin. Additional recreation facilities that accommodate growing demand provide quality recreation experiences and conserve forest resources.
- 04** Existing developed facilities, roads, and trails for both summer and winter recreation activities are adaptable for new recreation demands.

- 05** Recreational uses, including related infrastructure, have minimal impacts on resources including ecological integrity and diversity, at-risk species, heritage and cultural sites, water quality, and aquatic species.
- 06** Recreation settings retain their natural character and continue to contribute to a sense of adventure for visitors as development and populations in the region continue to grow and new forms of recreation emerge.

### Goals (FW-GO-REC)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest engages with the recreation user communities to develop solutions to emerging issues.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest encourages private and public partnerships, such as contractors, concessionaires, private sector and volunteers to provide capacity to help meet current and future recreation demands.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-REC)

- 01** Remove or relocate five existing recreation facilities, including dispersed sites, outside of riparian management zones, or undertake other means practicable if they are degrading aquatic or riparian resources over the life of the plan.

### Suitability (FW-SUIT-REC)

- 01** Recreational use of pack goats is suitable in the Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy Mountains; Ashland; and Sioux Geographic Areas, . Once occupied by bighorn sheep, recreational use of pack goats in these geographic areas would remain suitable under conditions outlined in FW-SUIT-REC-02.
- 02** Recreational use of pack goats is suitable without special authorization in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains; Absaroka Beartooth Mountains; or Pryor Mountains Geographic Areas under the following conditions:
  - a. Pack goat users will take reasonable measures to avoid contact between pack goats and bighorn sheep when encountered on the trail or in camp. Any observed contact between pack goats and bighorn sheep will be reported within 24 hours to Montana Fish Wildlife and Parks or the Forest Service
  - b. Pack goats are individually identifiable (such as collar/tag with owner information, micro-chips, tattoos)
  - c. Pack goats shall always be under direct human supervision; on leads or with leads attached
  - d. In camp and at night pack goats shall be in direct sight or tethered/picketed with bells on
  - e. Packers will make every effort will be made to find lost pack goats; if unsuccessful, the packer shall contact Montana Fish Wildlife and Parks or the Forest Service within 24 hours
  - f. Pack goats will only be allowed between June 20 and October 31 each year
  - g. Packers must carry a certificate of health for all pack goats
  - h. Pack goats are limited to no more than 6 goats per person or 12 goats per party

## Recreation Settings and Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

### Introduction

Recreation settings are the social, managerial, and physical attributes of a place that, when combined, provide a distinct set of recreation opportunities and access options. These settings provide the framework where specific recreation opportunities, activities, and expected experiences are integrated to ensure compatibility with the landscape's natural, social, and cultural resource values. By identifying recreation settings, the national forest can ensure a sustainable set of recreation opportunities for future generations and visitors can select where they recreate based on what they want to do, what equipment they want to bring, and the type of experience they want.

The recreation opportunity spectrum (ROS) is a classification tool used by Forest Service managers to provide visitors with varying challenges and outdoor experiences. Recreation opportunity spectrum classifies national forest lands into six management class categories defined by setting and the probable recreation experiences and activities it affords including: urban; rural; roaded natural; semi-primitive motorized; semi-primitive nonmotorized; and primitive. The urban classification is not found on the Custer Gallatin National Forest.

Sustainable recreation is the set of recreation settings and opportunities on national forests that is ecologically, economically, and socially sustainable for present and future generations. The recreation opportunity spectrum in summer and winter is used in each phase of planning to assess, integrate, convey, and monitor the plan area's social, managerial, and physical settings, including seasonal variations and associated benefits. Recreation opportunity spectrum suitability does not confer a travel management designation; site-specific travel planning in compliance with the Travel Management Rule is required to designate routes and areas for motorized use.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-ROS)

Table 18 displays the summer and winter recreation opportunity spectrum acreages.

**Table 18. Forestwide recreation opportunity spectrum winter and summer acres and percentage of the national forest**

| Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Class | Summer Acres | Summer Percentage of National Forest | Winter Acres | Winter Percentage of National Forest |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| Primitive                             | 1,050,448    | 34                                   | 1,050,448    | 34                                   |
| Semi-primitive Nonmotorized           | 712,815      | 23                                   | 618,339      | 20                                   |
| Semi-primitive Motorized              | 863,628      | 28                                   | 998,368      | 33                                   |
| Roaded Natural                        | 322,221      | 11                                   | 288,627      | 9                                    |
| Rural                                 | 96,852       | 3                                    | 90,183       | 3                                    |

- 01 Recreation opportunity spectrum settings (All):** Outdoor recreation opportunities and experiences are provided year-round in a range of settings as described by the desired recreation opportunity spectrum. These settings reflect the integration of other resource values, in a sustainable manner, with the desired recreation opportunities, access, facilities, and infrastructure provided within those settings.

- 02 Recreation opportunity spectrum settings (All):** The type and level of infrastructure, visitor services, and information are sustainable and consistent with the desired recreation opportunity spectrum settings.
- 03 Primitive recreation opportunity spectrum settings (summer)** encompass large, wild, remote, and predominately unmodified landscapes. Primitive settings often provide secure wildlife habitat, naturally appearing vegetation, clean water, may contain the unit's most intact ecosystems and often coincide with designated wilderness. Primitive recreation opportunity spectrum settings contain no motorized recreation. They provide quiet solitude away from roads and people, are generally free of human development, and facilitate self-reliance and discovery. Historic structures such as administrative ranger stations are occasionally present. Signing and other infrastructure are not prevalent and constructed of rustic, native materials.
- 04 Primitive recreation opportunity spectrum settings (winter)** are large, remote, wild, and predominately unmodified. Winter primitive recreation opportunity spectrum settings provide quiet solitude away from roads and people. There is no motorized activity and little probability of seeing other people. Constructed trails that are evident in the summer months are covered by snow, making these settings appear even more natural and untouched by human management.
- 05 Semi-primitive nonmotorized settings (summer)** provide opportunities for exploration, challenge, and self-reliance in a naturally appearing landscape. Rustic structures such as signs and footbridges are occasionally present to direct use and protect the setting's natural and cultural resources. These rustic constructed features are built from native materials or those that mimic native materials. These settings are free of motorized transport, but mechanized transport may be present on appropriately designed and constructed routes.
- 06 Semi-primitive nonmotorized settings (winter)** provide backcountry and Nordic skiing, snowboarding, and snowshoeing opportunities. Trails are generally un-groomed and not marked for winter travel. Some areas that have enough compaction may see fat tire bike use. Rustic facilities, such as historic cabins and yurts may exist but are rare. These settings are free of motorized transport, but mechanized transport may be present on appropriately designed and constructed routes.
- 07 Semi-primitive motorized recreation opportunity spectrum settings (summer)** provide motorized recreation opportunities in backcountry settings. Routes are designed for off-highway vehicles and high-clearance vehicles, including motorcycles, that connect to local communities, access key destinations and vantage points, provide short day trips on scenic loops or facilitate longer and even overnight, expeditions. Visitors challenge themselves as they explore vast, rugged landscapes. Mountain bikes and other mechanized equipment may also be present. Facilities are rustic and are used to protect the setting's natural and cultural resources. Bridges are sometimes present to accommodate foot, horse, and all-terrain vehicle traffic, but are built from native or natural appearing materials that blend with the surrounding landscape and maintain the semi-primitive character of the setting. There may also be nodes that function as portals for visitors to park their all-terrain vehicles and explore adjacent semi-primitive nonmotorized and primitive settings on foot. Vegetation management may be present, but does not dominate the landscape or detract from the experience of visitors traveling throughout the semi-primitive motorized setting.



- 08 Semi-primitive motorized settings (winter)** provide backcountry skiing and snowmobiling opportunities. Routes are typically un-groomed, but are often signed and marked. There are vast areas to travel cross-country, offering visitors an opportunity for exploration and challenge. Occasionally, historic cabins or warming huts are available for short breaks or overnight use.
- 09 Roaded natural recreation opportunity spectrum settings (summer)** are often referred to as front-country recreation areas. This setting is managed as natural appearing with nodes and corridors of development that support higher concentrations of use, user comfort, and social interaction. The road system is well defined and can typically accommodate sedan travel. Sanitation, potable water, interpretive signing, and other amenities are strategically placed to serve as destination points and portals to adjacent backcountry settings. Signing, facilities, bridges and other infrastructure are constructed of native materials or natural appearing materials that blend with and complement the surrounding natural setting.
- 10 Roaded natural recreation opportunity spectrum settings (winter)** support higher concentrations of use, user comfort, and social interaction. The road system is plowed and accommodates sedan travel. Winter trails are routinely groomed and may have ancillary facilities such as warming huts and restrooms. System roads and trails often provide staging to adjacent backcountry settings (primitive, semi-primitive nonmotorized and semi-primitive motorized). Examples include snowmobiling, fat-tire bikes, dog sledding, skiing, and snowshoeing.
- 11 Rural recreation opportunity spectrum settings (summer)** often serve as a recreation destination and sometimes provide access to adjacent roaded natural and semi-primitive settings and opportunities. These areas are accessed from paved roads and are generally close to communities. Developed recreation facilities are designed for large groups and provide opportunities to socialize in both day use and overnight sites.
- 12 Rural recreation opportunity spectrum settings (winter)** provide staging to adjacent winter settings and opportunities. These areas are accessed from paved and plowed roads and are generally close to population centers. Warming huts or other shelters, sanitation, and information and education are commonly present. Parking areas are large and plowed. Entry points and routes are signed and lead snowmobiles to adjacent roaded natural and semi-primitive motorized settings. Non-motorized trails are also typically groomed for skate skiing and cross-country skiing. Rural winter settings provide quick and convenient access for communities and families to celebrate holidays, conduct racing events, walk their dogs, or simply get some exercise.
- 13 Rural recreation opportunity spectrum settings (summer and winter)** support use of alternative transportation and new technologies.

### Standards (FW-STD-ROS)

- 01** In rural, roaded natural, semi-primitive motorized recreation opportunity spectrum settings, new motorized routes and areas shall be located so the new route does not change the setting of an adjacent semi-primitive nonmotorized and primitive recreation opportunity spectrum class.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-ROS)

- 01** To maintain the setting appropriate to the assigned recreation opportunity spectrum class, new recreation facilities should be designed to meet required direction for materials, development scale, on-site regulation signage, and density of sites, as well as consistent with the principles of the Forest

Service Built Environment Image Guide, in terms of architectural character. Exemptions may occur on a case-by-case basis to reflect environmental conditions such as meeting snow loads.

## **Primitive Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSP)**

### **Objectives (FW-OBJ-ROSP)**

- 01** Sign five areas of wilderness boundaries near adjacent motorized settings per decade to better inform visitors of motorized restrictions within this quiet non-motorized primitive setting.
- 02** Eliminate five identified unauthorized motorized travel incursions per decade to maintain the primitive setting.

### **Standards (FW-STD-ROSP)**

- 01** Permanent or temporary motorized routes shall not be allowed in primitive settings.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-ROSP)**

- 01** To retain the unmodified character of these landscapes, new permanent facilities should not be allowed in primitive recreation opportunity spectrum settings.
- 02** To retain the desired primitive recreation opportunity spectrum settings, routes should be managed as a trail class 1 or 2.

### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-ROSP)**

- 01** Motorized transport is not suitable in primitive settings.
- 02** Groomed trails are not suitable in winter primitive settings.
- 03** Non-motorized trails and cross-country nonmotorized travel are suitable in winter primitive settings.

## **Semi-Primitive Non-Motorized Settings (ROSSPNM)**

### **Objectives (FW-OBJ-ROSSPNM)**

- 01** Eliminate five identified unauthorized motorized travel incursions per decade to maintain the semi-primitive non-motorized setting.

### **Standards (FW-STD-ROSSPNM)**

- 01** New permanent motorized routes shall not be constructed, and no routes or areas shall be designated for motorized transport in semi-primitive nonmotorized settings. Temporary roads for vegetation management projects, where otherwise not prohibited, may occur.
- 02** New developmental levels 2-5 recreation facilities, such as rental cabins, shall not be constructed in semi-primitive nonmotorized settings, except as necessary for sanitation or resource protection. Existing cabins may be considered for recreation use in semi-primitive nonmotorized settings.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-ROSSPNM)**

- 01** To retain the semi-primitive non-motorized character, trail development and maintenance should not exceed trail class 1 to 2, or level 3 in more highly developed areas.

- 02 To retain the semi-primitive non-motorized character, the development scale of recreation facilities should be 0 to 1.
- 03 To retain the quiet recreation character, roads should not be plowed for recreation access in winter semi-primitive nonmotorized settings.

#### Suitability (FW-SUIT-ROSSPNM)

- 01 Motorized transport is not suitable in semi-primitive non-motorized settings.

### **Semi-Primitive Motorized Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSSPM)**

#### Standards (FW-STD-ROSSPM)

- 01 New roads in semi-primitive motorized settings shall not be allowed for user comfort and convenience and maintenance level shall not exceed an operational maintenance level of 2.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL-ROSSPM)

- 01 To retain protect the semi-primitive motorized character, the development scale of new recreation facilities should be 0 to 2.
- 02 New developmental levels 3-5 recreation facilities, such as rental cabins, should not be constructed in semi-primitive motorized settings, except as necessary for sanitation or resource protection. Existing cabins may be considered for recreation use in semi-primitive motorized settings.
- 03 To retain the semi-primitive motorized character, road maintenance should not exceed an operational maintenance level 2.
- 04 To retain the semi-primitive motorized character, trail development and maintenance should not exceed trail class 2.

#### Suitability (FW-SUIT-ROSSPM)

- 01 Motorized transport is suitable on designated routes and areas in semi-primitive motorized settings.
- 02 Motorized vehicles that are not designed for over-snow use, are not suitable in winter semi-primitive motorized settings.

### **Roaded-Natural Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSRN)**

#### Goals (FW-GO-ROSRN)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships for winter recreation grooming and plowing.

#### Objectives (FW-OBJ-ROSRN)

- 01 Per decade, improve accessible design at three sites, such as toilets at trailheads or interpretive opportunities to support high concentrations of use and user comfort.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-ROSRN)

- 01** To retain the roaded natural character, trail development and maintenance should typically meet trail class 3 and 4.
- 02** To retain the roaded natural character, the development scale of new recreation facilities should be levels 0 to 3, with levels 4-5 recreation facilities, such as rental cabins, occurring occasionally.

### Suitability (FW-SUIT-ROSRN)

- 01** Motorized transport is suitable on designated routes and areas within roaded natural settings.
- 02** Motorized vehicles that are not designed for over-snow use, are not suitable in winter roaded natural settings.

## Rural Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Settings (ROSR)

### Goals (FW-GO-ROSR)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships for winter recreation grooming and plowing.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-ROSR)

- 01** To retain the rural recreation opportunity spectrum setting, road maintenance should meet maintenance level 3 to 5.
- 02** To retain the roaded natural character, the development scale of new recreation facilities should meet development scale 4 to 5.

### Suitability (FW-SUIT-ROSR)

- 01** Motorized transport is suitable on designated routes and areas within rural settings.
- 02** Motorized vehicles that are not designed for over-snow use, are not suitable in winter rural settings.

## Recreation Opportunities—Developed Recreation Sites (RECDEV)

### Introduction

This direction applies to Forest Service owned developed recreation sites include, but are not limited to, developed campgrounds, picnic areas, interpretive sites, cabin and lookout rentals, trailheads, and visitor centers. This direction also applies to other Forest Service permitted privately owned developed recreation sites managed for public use and benefits on public lands, such as resorts, ski areas, organizational camps and shooting ranges.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECDEV)

- 01** Developed recreation reflects the unified Custer Gallatin's recreation niche.
- 02** Quality, well-maintained recreation facilities at key locations accommodate concentrations of use, enhance the visitor's experience, provide for a range of opportunities in various settings, public health and safety, and protect the natural resources of the area. Developed recreation sites accommodate current and appropriate new levels of recreation use and integrate accessibility for users who have disabilities.

- 03** Developed recreation facilities are consistent with the recreation opportunity spectrum.
- 04** Additional recreational development is provided within the context of opportunities and facilities provided by off-forest private and public recreation providers.
- 05** Hazard trees are not present within developed recreation sites providing for the safety of the public.
- 06** Developed recreation corridors containing multiple facilities keep visitor use concentrated rather than shifting development to other areas.
- 07** New developed recreation sites provide sustainable recreation access in place of current dispersed uses such as dispersed camping, river access or other unconstrained recreation activities that degrade riparian or soil or other resources.
- 08** Existing developed recreation facilities are adapted to emerging goals for access, resource protection or changing visitor demands.
- 09** Developed recreation site locations and seasons of use respond to or anticipate potential climate changes that may affect the timing, quantity, and duration of water flows, snow levels and snow elevation changes, impacts to fish and wildlife habitats, changes in vegetative conditions, and the extension of seasonal recreation use.

#### Standards (FW-STD-RECDEV)

- 01** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed within developed recreation sites.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL-RECDEV)

- 01** To limit risks and provide pleasing surroundings in a developed recreation setting, vegetation management activities in developed recreating sites should protect public safety, scenic values, wildlife needs, and vegetation health.
- 02** To protect wildlife, hazard tree removal should not remove trees with obvious wildlife nests or cavities that are more than 200 feet away from developed site infrastructure.
- 03** To protect the recreation experience and facilities within developed recreation sites, any conflicts that result from permitted livestock grazing should be addressed through strategies such as timing, fencing, pasture rotations, herding, etc.

#### Suitability (FW-SUIT-RECDEV)

- 01** Developed recreation sites are not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable for purposes such as public safety, fuels reduction, restoration, or wildlife habitat enhancement.
- 02** Gathering of home use firewood, post and poles, teepee poles, and biomass and wood fiber for solely commercial purposes is not suitable within developed recreation sites.

## **Recreation Opportunities–Dispersed Recreation (RECDISP)**

### **Introduction**

Dispersed activities generally occur outside of facilities provided by the Custer Gallatin. Seven activities (hiking, biking, hunting, general relaxing, fishing, skiing, and snowmobiling) account for over 80 percent of the Custer Gallatin's total visitation for dispersed recreation activities. Dispersed recreation provides opportunities for self-directed exploration encompassing multiple activities from rock and ice climbing, fishing, camping, target shooting, caving and birding, etc. Much of the discussion and direction for dispersed recreation occurs in this plan under the recreation opportunity spectrum heading.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECDISP)**

- 01** Dispersed opportunities are available across the Custer Gallatin for a wide variety of users where compatible with environmental resources, cultural resources, recreation settings, and social interactions such as user conflicts and crowding.

## **Recreation Opportunities–Recreation Special Uses (RECSUP)**

### **Introduction**

The national forest provides opportunities for a wide variety of recreation special uses that include commercial ski areas, outfitter and guiding services, resorts and lodging, recreational events, organizational camps, and recreation residences. Recreation facilities and opportunities are owned and provided by private individuals, businesses, institutions, and other organizations permitted to be located on the Custer Gallatin.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECSUP)**

- 01** Recreation special uses provide unique opportunities, services, and experiences for the recreating public on national forest lands and respond to a demonstrated demand for a specific recreation opportunity.
- 02** Services provided by recreation special uses enhance the recreation experiences of national forest visitors, enhance public health and safety, and protect natural resources.
- 03** Recreation special uses contribute to economic sustainability and are compatible with ecological and social experience thresholds.
- 04** The vegetation within recreation special use facilities is healthy, resilient, and provides for the safety of the public.

### **Goals (FW-GO-RECSUP)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with special use permit holders to deliver interpretation and education messages that instill an appreciation for the natural and cultural resources of the Custer Gallatin, and promotes conservation and stewardship.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-RECSUP)**

- 01** To protect aquatic and riparian resources, new recreation special use authorizations or reauthorization of existing uses should include conditions to avoid or minimize adverse effects to

fish, water, and riparian resources. If adverse effects to inland native fish or desirable non-native species, at risk species, impaired water bodies, or stream habitat conditions are unavoidable, authorizations should require actions that result in re-establishment, restoration, mitigation, or improvement of conditions and processes to ensure that projects that degrade conditions also include measures to incrementally improve conditions.

## **Recreation Opportunities–Outfitter Guides (RECOG)**

### **Introduction**

Outfitter and guide permittees provide a wide range of year-round services, including horseback trail rides, rafting, boating, environmental education, fishing, hunting, hiking, backpacking, and snowmobile guiding. Thousands of visitors experience the Custer Gallatin using outfitter and guide services. Pack goats are considered recreational livestock and therefore restrictions on recreational livestock apply to pack goats (for example, areas closed to recreational livestock in designated wilderness areas).

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECOG)**

- 01** Outfitters and guides offer services that the agency and public need, in order to offer opportunities that otherwise would not be obtainable therefore increasing the diversity of recreation opportunities available.
- 02** Outfitter and guide services promote the roles, contributions, and sense of the place, and are appropriate for the recreation opportunity spectrum class.

### **Goals (FW-GO-RECOG)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with outfitters and guides, partners, and other permittees to deliver interpretation and education messages that instill an appreciation for the natural and cultural resources of the Custer Gallatin, and promotes conservation and stewardship.

### **Standards (FW-STD-RECOG)**

- 01** Use of pack goats under new special use permits may be authorized in the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains; Ashland; and Sioux Geographic Areas only if a risk assessment indicates that spatial or temporal separation, or other mitigation can effectively minimize risk of disease transmission between livestock and bighorn sheep. Once occupied by bighorn sheep, new special use permits in these geographic areas would follow the conditions outlined in FW-STD-RECOG-02.
- 02** Special use permits including the use of pack goats in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains; Absaroka Beartooth Mountains; or Pryor Mountains Geographic Areas must include the following conditions in the permit:
  - a. Permittees will take reasonable measures to avoid contact between pack goats and bighorn sheep when encountered on the trail or in camp. Any observed contact between pack goats and bighorn sheep will be reported to Montana Fish Wildlife and Parks or the Forest Service within 24 hours
  - b. All pack goats must be individually identifiable (such as collar/tag with owner information, micro-chips, tattoos)
  - c. Pack goats shall always be under direct human supervision; on leads or with leads attached

- d. In camp and at night pack goats shall be in direct sight or tethered/picketed with bells on
- e. Permittees will make every effort to find lost pack goats; if unsuccessful, the permittee shall contact Montana Fish Wildlife and Parks or the Forest Service within 24 hours
- f. Pack goat use will only be allowed between June 20 and October 31 each year
- g. Permittees must carry a certificate of health for all pack goats
- h. Permittees may have no more than 6 goats per person or 12 goats per party

## **Recreation Opportunities–Recreation Residences (RECRES)**

### **Introduction**

Recreation residences are privately owned cabins located on national forest land, authorized by special use permits. Permit holders pay an annual fee for their use. On the Custer Gallatin, there are 293 recreation residences. Recreation residences are administered to ensure compliance with direction in the special use permit Forest Service Manual and Forest Service Handbook. Permits are terminated only in those rare circumstances according to conditions and protocols specified in the permit, Forest Service Handbook and Forest Service Manual, regulations, and law.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECRES)**

- 01** Existing recreation residences continue to provide rustic, vacation-style facilities that are visually appropriate in and subordinate to their natural-appearing forest settings, and allow cabin owners, their families and guests to be able to enjoy the Custer Gallatin and its recreation opportunities.

### **Standards (FW-STD- RECRES)**

- 01** Except for in-lieu lots, which have limited application for existing cabin owners pursuant to national policy and the permit itself, no new recreation residence lots shall be made available or assigned.
- 02** Modification of existing recreation residence cabins shall not be authorized to exceed 1,500 square feet of roofed or enclosed space except to correct unusual health or safety problems where there are no other options, as determined by the authorized Forest Service officer.

### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-RECRES)**

- 01** Recreation residence tracts are not suitable for livestock allotments.

## **Recreation Opportunities–Ski Resorts (RECSKI)**

### **Introduction**

Four ski resorts currently operate under permit on the Custer Gallatin, two alpine ski areas and two Nordic ski areas. Bridger Bowl is located about 15 miles north of Bozeman in the Bridger Mountains. The base operations are on private property and access an array of ski terrain on the Custer Gallatin. Red Lodge Mountain Resort is located on the eastern front of the Beartooth Mountains about 6 miles west of Red Lodge, with a based located on private land.

Crosscut Mountain Sports Center is located approximately 18 miles north of Bozeman in the Bridger Mountains. Two trails and approximately 8 kilometers are located on the Custer Gallatin and the remaining operation and all the base facilities are on private property. Lone Mountain Ranch Nordic Area



is in Big Sky. Approximately 10 kilometers of Forest Service Roads 166B and 166D and Forest Service Trail #16 are operated as groomed routes under special use permit. All the base area and the remaining operation is on private property.

A fifth area, operating under a cost share agreement, is Rendezvous Cross-Country Ski Area. Located near West Yellowstone, the system offers trails for skiers of all abilities, as well as a biathlon course. This area is included within the Hebgen Winter Recreation Emphasis Area and is further described in that heading.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECSKI)**

- 01** Ski resorts provide a range of winter and summer activities to meet a range of public recreation desires.
- 02** Activities such as zip lines, alpine slides, and downhill mountain bike trails with infrastructure are available at existing downhill ski permit areas.

### **Standards (FW-STD-RECSKI)**

- 01** New downhill ski areas shall be considered only when existing ski areas cannot be expanded to accommodate additional use.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-RECSKI)**

- 01** To minimize the footprint of non-natural resource based intensive recreation development, new activities such as zip lines, alpine slides, and downhill mountain bike trails with infrastructure should be located at existing downhill ski areas unless existing ski areas cannot be expanded to accommodate additional use.

### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-RECSKI)**

- 01** Ski resorts are not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable for purposes such as expansion of ski areas, public safety, fuels reduction, restoration or wildlife habitat enhancement.

## **Recreation Opportunities–Recreation Events (RECEVENTS)**

### **Introduction**

The Custer Gallatin has many recreation special use permittees including those hosting recreation events that help provide opportunity for the public to engage in group activities on the Custer Gallatin. These permits are issued for activities such as summer and winter races, organized rides, and winter festivals.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECEVENT)**

- 01** Recreation events provide opportunities to participate in competitions or highlight special occasions.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-RECEVENT)**

- 01** To retain general public access to the Custer Gallatin's facilities and programs, the volume and number of recreation event permits should still allow for the use and enjoyment by the recreating public.

- 02 To minimize potential conflicts between grizzly bears and humans, special use permits should not be authorized for recreation events that involve people traveling by foot, horse or nonmotorized vehicle inside the recovery zone and primary conservation area, during the hours between sunset and sunrise. This guideline only applies during the grizzly bear non-denning season of March 1 through November 30.

## **Recreation Opportunities—Organizational Camps (RECORG CAMP)**

### **Introduction**

Seven organizational camps currently operate on the Custer Gallatin under the most recent authority of the National Forest Organizational Camp Fee Improvement Act of 2003, which authorizes the use and occupancy of national forest lands.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECORG CAMP)**

- 01 Organizational camps, as authorized by the Organizational Camp Fee Improvement Act, provide valuable services to young people such as Boy Scouts, Girl Scouts, community-based organizations, youths-at-risk, individuals with disabilities, and their families by promoting physical, mental, and spiritual health through activities conducted in a natural environment.

### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-RECORG CAMP)**

- 01 Organizational camps are not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable for purposes such as public safety, fuels reduction, restoration, or wildlife habitat enhancement.

## **Recreation Opportunities—Non-Commercial Group Use (RECGROUP)**

### **Introduction**

The Forest Service issues permits to groups, per Forest Service direction, policy, and law, to use the Custer Gallatin for non-commercial organized group activities such as weddings, family reunions, special interest groups or clubs, where those activities would not unreasonably conflict or preclude other public uses, result in negative effects to forest resources or create unsafe situations.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECGROUP)**

- 01 Group use permits allow the Custer Gallatin to work with groups to address and mitigate possible impacts and to protect forest resources and improvements, address public health and safety problems, and avoid conflicting land uses.

### **Guideline (FW-GDL-RECGROUP)**

- 01 To contain potential impacts from large parties to already established recreation areas, new permits for non-commercial group use over 75 people should be first referred to developed recreation sites designed to accommodate that use.

## Visitor Education and Interpretation (RECED)

### Introduction

Opportunities for connecting people to their environment and to the natural and cultural history of the area are offered by the Custer Gallatin. These connections provide opportunities for the development of strong stewardship ethics in the form of personally delivered talks and programs, brochures and booklets, and interpretive wayside exhibits using digital and other formats. These all contribute to offering an appreciation for the natural and cultural history across these landscapes. There are opportunities for other organizations and partners to join the Custer Gallatin in achieving mutual goals for education and interpretation. A variety of opportunities are also offered for the public to learn about how to enjoy the national forest safely and be good stewards, winter and summer, such as the programs offered by the Gallatin National Forest Avalanche Center since 1990, the Fishing Derbies and other programs offered about grizzly bear and fire safety.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECED)

- 01** Interpretation and education products enhance visitors' understanding and appreciation for the rich natural and cultural resources of the Custer Gallatin, and builds support for public lands.
- 02** Visitor information is readily available for pre-visit information gathering in a variety of forums and kept up to date so that the public may be informed and educated through modern technology about current Forest Service related policies, activities, services, and issues.
- 03** As backcountry use increases, the services provided by the Gallatin National Forest Avalanche Center support public health and safety, and the development of future good winter stewards.
- 04** Education, in a variety of mediums about forest stewardship and responsible use leads to better visitor compliance with regulations.
- 05** The Main Boulder Station continues to interpret the history of the Custer Gallatin in the Boulder Valley as a living history museum.
- 06** The Gallatin Petrified Forest offers the structured opportunity to learn about and gather small pieces of petrified wood samples.

### Goals (FW-GO-RECED)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest seek partners and volunteers to assist in the delivery of public information, natural and historic interpretation, conservation education, and stewardship services.
- 02** The Avalanche Center seeks partners to aid its successful operation for its full season.

## Emerging Recreational Technologies (RECTECH)

### Introduction

Recreational products are likely to emerge over the lifetime of the plan. Some will be prohibited under existing regulations, other new uses may be unspoken to by current direction, while others may fit within existing definitions and be manageable under current direction or with minimal adaptations.

## Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RECTECH)

- 01** New recreational technologies contribute to visitor enjoyment and experiences, consistent with recreation settings.

## Goals (FW-GO-RECTECH)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest involves of a community of interests to support and guide the integration of new recreational technologies into the Custer Gallatin National Forest.

## Scenery (SCENERY)

### Introduction

Scenery is a resource that is valued by visitors to the national forest and by neighbors in adjacent communities, from where the views of national forest land, especially in the Greater Yellowstone Area, provide an important sense-of-place backdrop that defines the scenic character, drives tourism, recreation and the economy. The term *scenic character* refers to the *visual* combination of “the physical, biological, and cultural images that give an area its scenic identity” (2012 Planning Rule and 36 CFR 219.19). Scenic character incorporates visible results of natural landscape dynamics, such as fire patterns and stream meanders, and may also incorporate historic/cultural features such as cabins and fence rows in a context where they have been broadly accepted over time as contributing to the sense of place and scenic identity of an area. Plan appendix A, management approaches, contains a broad scenic character description for each Custer Gallatin geographic area.

Changes to the scenic character resulting from management actions on national forest land are described and measured in terms of deviations from or disruptions to the scenic character. A landscape with minimal visual disruptions to its scenic character is considered to have higher scenic integrity. A landscape with visual elements that are discordant with its scenic character has a lowered scenic integrity. Management actions may result in increasing, lowering, or not changing the integrity of the scenic character.

There are five levels of scenic integrity described by the Forest Service Scenery Management System (table 19). These levels, when used for management, are referred to as scenic integrity objectives (SIOs) and describe the lowest allowable integrity levels of the scenic character that the visible results of all new management actions must meet. All land within the Custer Gallatin National Forest has been assigned scenic integrity objectives that were developed and mapped through a process that incorporated: 1) publicly generated lists of critical viewing platforms; 2) determination of inherent scenic attractiveness of the landscape based upon the Forest Service Scenery Management System; 3) visibility (distance/magnitude/angle/context) of the landscape from the critical viewing platforms; and 4) inter-resource contexts for management (scenery management maps in plan appendix B).

**Table 19. Scenic integrity objectives and definitions**

| Scenic Integrity Objective | Definition   |
|----------------------------|--|
| Very High                  | Landscapes in which the scenic character is intact with minute, if any, deviations or disruptions.   |
| High                       | Landscapes in which the scenic character appears intact. Deviations from or disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions are not evident. |

| Scenic Integrity Objective | Definition   |
|----------------------------|--|
| Moderate                   | Landscapes in which the scenic character appears slightly altered. Noticeable deviations from or disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions are discernible but must remain visually subordinate to the scenic character.           |
| Low                        | Landscapes in which the scenic character appears altered. Deviations from and disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions are recognizable and may be visually dominant but borrow some visual attributes from the scenic character. |
| Very Low                   | Landscapes in which the scenic character appears heavily altered. Deviations from and disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions may be strongly dominant and do not borrow any visual attributes from the scenic character.        |

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-SCENERY)

- 01** The forest's scenery provides for public enjoyment of the forest's varied geographic regions, relative to the spectrum of viewing contexts and expectations for valued viewsheds.
- 02** The forest's scenery, as directed by the scenic integrity objectives (table 20), contributes positively to visitors' experiences as well as the quality of life in neighboring communities while reflecting a range of allowable management actions that balance social and economic values, ecological integrity, landscape dynamics and sustainability.

**Table 20. Scenic integrity objectives (lowest allowable scenic integrity levels)**

| Scenic Integrity Objective | Acres     | Percentage of the National Forest |
|----------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|
| Very High                  | 1,189,882 | 39                                |
| High                       | 64,716    | 2                                 |
| Moderate                   | 1,371,720 | 45                                |
| Low                        | 419,633   | 14                                |
| Very Low                   | 0         | 0                                 |

Percentages are rounded to nearest whole number

### Standards (FW-STD-SCENERY)

- 01** Timber harvest units shall be shaped and blended with the natural terrain to the extent practicable (Timber Standard FW-STD-TIM-05), regardless of visibility from any listed critical viewing platforms or the assigned scenic integrity objectives.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-SCENERY)

- 01** To recognize the value of the forest's scenery for visitors and local communities, the visible results of new project actions on national forest land should meet, at a minimum, the assigned scenic integrity objectives based upon visibility described in table 21. For projects or portions of new project work that are not visible from any critical viewing platforms, no design measures are needed to meet the areas' assigned scenic integrity objectives.

**Table 21. Visibility for meeting scenic integrity objectives**

| Scenic Integrity Objectives | Applicable Visibility<br>(based upon blocking by landforms, not vegetation)  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Very High                   | To be met as viewed from anywhere, at all viewing distances.   |
| High, Moderate, Low         | To be met as viewed from Critical Viewing platforms (listed and mapped in plan appendix B) at all viewing distances. |
| Very Low                    | Not applicable (not assigned to any areas)   |

- 02** To meet national direction for permitted livestock activities inside designated wilderness and to be consistent with that direction in recommended wilderness, livestock, and associated allotment infrastructure, as viewed from anywhere within those areas may be discernible and may deviate from an assigned scenic integrity objective of very high. Within those areas, allotment infrastructure should be designed and sited to blend as much as possible with the landscape character and sense of place.
- 03** To manage for appearance as well as safety and function, all new or reconstructed facilities (Forest Service and permitted privately-owned) should follow design principles related to location, scale, color, form, style, and materials as explained in the *“Forest Service Built Environment Image Guide.”* In addition, new recreation facilities should follow the principles in the National Forest Landscape Management *“Recreation”* Handbook No. 666 (volume 2, chapter 8) and also be consistent with the *“Physical: Infrastructure”* indicators and visual descriptors for the appropriate recreation opportunity spectrum class.
- 04** To provide an adequate time for regrowth after vegetation management projects and to meet the intent of scenery management, projects should be designed and implemented to achieve the assigned scenic *integrity* objective within five years after completion of all project activities, as viewed from applicable critical viewing platforms. This applies to the results of project work, including operational remnants, such as temporary roads or landings, slash, stumps, tree markings, but does not apply to remnants of prescribed fire that appear to be a natural occurrence when viewed by the casual observer.
- 05** New mining actions associated with statutory rights may deviate from the assigned scenic integrity objective only after all reasonable mitigations have been applied, in consideration of the economic or technical feasibility of the scenery mitigation measures. Design criteria or mitigations that are applied should be based upon project duration and potential impacts.
- 06** To meet research natural area designation direction to facilitate research, infrastructure or landscape alterations associated with research activities in areas outside of designated wilderness, with a scenic integrity objective of very high may deviate from that assigned scenic integrity objective and may be discernible as seen from anywhere, but should be designed and sited to blend as much as possible with the scenic character and sense of place. Research natural areas located within areas assigned scenic integrity objectives other than very high, research-related infrastructure or landscape alterations should meet the assigned scenic integrity objective as viewed from the listed critical viewing platforms.

## Land Status and Ownership, Access, and Land Uses

### Introduction

Land ownership is the basic pattern of public and private ownership of surface and subsurface estates. In the plan, landownership refers to the public land and interests in land. Land status is defined as the ownership record of title to lands, including withdrawals, rights, and privileges affecting or influencing the use and management of National Forest System lands. Land ownership status on National Forest System lands can change over time through land adjustments.

Land adjustment methods include exchange, conveyances, purchase, donation, right-of-way and conservation easement acquisition. Under land adjustment programs, the Forest Service acquires and consolidates key tracts of non-Federal land to conserve valuable natural habitat, reduce the risk of permanent development in sensitive areas, and enhance public access and recreational opportunities. The Forest Service also conveys lands, or interest in lands through specific authority. These lands or interests are typically no longer National Forest in character.

In this section, access refers to easements held by the United States and administered by the Forest Service across non-National Forest System land. This may include access by the public across these lands. Land adjustments are used to secure permanent road and trail rights-of-way (easements) to assure the protection, administration and use of National Forest System lands and resources. With the increasing demands for use of public lands, population growth and increased residential development, there will be more challenges to historic access and a greater need to perfect access to National Forest System lands.

## Land Status and Ownership, Access (LAND)

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-LAND)

- 01** Consolidated ownership reduces wildlife-human conflicts, provides for connectivity, and improves access to public lands.
- 02** Consolidated surface and mineral ownership meets resource and communities needs and facilitates efficient land management.
- 03** Road and trail easements provide adequate administrative access and reasonable public access to National Forest System lands.
- 04** Existing access rights are protected and historical rights are perfected.
- 05** Posted boundaries of National Forest System lands and interests in lands (including roads, trailheads, and trails) reduces the potential for trespass and encroachment.
- 06** All Forest Service interests in lands, including conservation easements and water rights, are not devalued or lost, subject to valid existing or statutory rights.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-LAND)

- 01** Every decade acquire between one and five new roads or trail rights-of-way that are needed as high-priority access or would fill a gap in existing access to public lands.

## Land Uses (LAND USE)

### Introduction

Special use authorizations allow for the occupancy and use of National Forest System lands by private individuals, companies, or government agencies for a wide variety of uses such as roads, utilities, communication sites, research, and other private or commercial uses that cannot reasonably be accommodated on non-National Forest System lands.

All authorized uses on public lands are required, by law, to meet applicable environmental protection measures. For proposed activities that have the potential for disturbance to lands and resources, a project design is required and is subject to public environmental analysis, review, and monitoring.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-LAND USE)

- 01** Opportunities are available for a variety of land special uses that include energy transmission rights-of-way, communication uses, access roads, research activities, and other public services, on lands that are suitable for these activities.
- 02** Energy corridors throughout the planning area improve the delivery of electricity, oil, and gas, and enhance the western electric transmission grid by improving reliability, reducing congestion, and contributing to the national electrical grid.

### Goals (FW-GO-LAND USE)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with local county road authorities to grant public road easements (under the Forest Road and Trails Act) for routes that serve predominantly non-National Forest System purposes.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates with project proponents to co-locate emerging technology, communication sites, energy corridors, and other permitted infrastructure to minimize environmental and visual impacts.

### Standards (FW-STD-LAND USE)

- 01** Vegetation treatment within utility corridors and along linear transmission facilities shall meet facility safety requirements.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-LAND USE)

- 01** To provide public and administrative access to National Forest System lands, the Forest Service should grant qualified applicants reasonable access across the Forest, contingent upon receiving reciprocal access across the non-National Forest System land when the Forest Service determines access is needed.
- 02** To reduce long-term surface disturbance and impacts to scenic resources, new energy distribution lines and communication lines should be located underground. They should be co-located within or adjacent to existing road corridors. Exceptions may be made where it is not technically feasible or where installing the line overhead would reduce resource impacts.
- 03** To protect aquatic and riparian resources, special use authorizations should include conditions to avoid or minimize adverse effects to fish, water, and riparian resources. If adverse effects to inland



native fish or desirable non-native species, species of conservation concern, impaired water bodies, or stream habitat conditions are unavoidable, authorizations should require actions that result in re-establishment, restoration, mitigation, or improvement of conditions and processes to ensure that projects that degrade conditions also include measures to incrementally improve conditions.

- 04** To reduce effects to fish, water, and riparian resources, new hydropower support facilities should be located outside of riparian management zones. Support facilities include improvements (such as staging areas and transmission lines) not directly integral to its operation.

## Designated Areas and Plan Land Allocations

### Introduction

A designated area is defined as an area or feature identified and managed to maintain its unique special character or purpose. Some categories of designated areas may be designated by statute and some may be established administratively. Examples of statutorily designated areas include, but are not limited to, designated wilderness areas, designated wild and scenic rivers, inventoried roadless area, national scenic trails, and wilderness study areas. Examples of administratively designated areas include, but are not limited to, research natural areas, scenic byways, special areas with unique values, and wild horse territories.

Plan land allocations are essentially management areas developed in the planning process. In this plan, these include recommended wilderness areas, eligible wild and scenic rivers, recreation emphasis areas, backcountry areas, and the Stillwater Complex. More than one designation or allocation may be assigned to a particular place. For example, a backcountry area and inventoried roadless area may coincide. Where allocations overlap, the more restrictive guidance applies.

Plan components for some designated areas are listed in the plan under the Geographic Area headings where they are located, including Cabin Creek Wildlife and Recreation Management Area, Continental Divide National Scenic Trail, Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory, Beartooth National Forest Scenic Byway, Earthquake Lake Geologic Area, and the Hyalite-Porcupine-Buffalo Horn Wilderness Study Area.

## Designated Wilderness (DWA)

### Introduction

The Wilderness Act of 1964 established a system of wilderness areas across the United States. These areas are to be administered for the use and enjoyment of the American people and for the preservation of their wilderness character. In addition to the Wilderness Act, the Forest Service provides direction for the management of wilderness through Forest Service Manual 2320.

Two designated wilderness areas are located in part within the Custer Gallatin, the Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness with 916,599 acres located on national forest lands and the 133,848 acres of the Lee Metcalf Wilderness. These designated wilderness areas comprise about 1,050,448 national forest acres, which is nearly 35 percent of the Custer Gallatin.

Management actions are required to meet minimum requirements for the administration of the areas as wilderness and to have the least impact to wilderness character. The use of a minimum requirement analysis is required for any action that includes a prohibited use as described in section 4(C) of the Wilderness Act, or for other actions that may impair wilderness character. Ecosystem restoration projects

may be allowed if they preserve wilderness character. This includes compliance with a minimum requirement analysis in conjunction with the Framework for Evaluating Ecological Intervention to determine the project is the minimum necessary for the administration of the area as wilderness.

Table 22 displays each of these wilderness areas, the geographic area(s) each is located within, and the approximate number of acres of each wilderness within the Custer Gallatin.

**Table 22. Designated wilderness areas acres by geographic area**

| <b>Wilderness</b>                | <b>Geographic Area</b>                       | <b>Wilderness Acres</b> |
|----------------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| Lee Metcalf                      | Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains | 133,848                 |
| Absaroka-Beartooth               | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                 | 916,599                 |
| <i>Total Acres of Wilderness</i> | <i>Forestwide</i>                            | <i>1,050,448</i>        |

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-DWA)

- 01** The untrammeled quality of wilderness is essentially unhindered and free from modern human control or manipulation.
- 02** Natural ecological processes and disturbances (such as succession, wildfire, avalanches, insects, and disease) are the primary forces affecting the composition, structure, and pattern of vegetation. Wilderness areas provide opportunities for visitors to experience natural ecological processes and disturbances with a limited amount of human influence
- 03** Wilderness exhibits an undeveloped quality and is without nonconforming or unnecessary facilities, installations or human-caused surface disturbances.
- 04** Outstanding opportunities for solitude or primitive and unconfined recreation are available, where impacts to wilderness character are not degraded.
- 05** Each wilderness area accommodates levels of recreation use that are ecologically sustainable while maintaining or enhancing wilderness character.
- 06** National Forest System trails contribute to a high-quality wilderness experience, meet national quality standards, with minimal deferred maintenance and adhere to the national trail classification system.
- 07** Human impacted areas and associated resource impacts do not expand into nearby unimpaired areas.
- 08** User-created trails are not dominant on the landscape.
- 09** Wilderness areas are available for conducting, inventorying, monitoring, and research that is deemed wilderness dependent. Findings from research projects will help improve the management of wilderness or preservation of wilderness character.
- 10** Non-infested areas remain free of invasive species. Where invasive species occur, their range is reduced where possible, or at a minimum, they do not expand and they do not disrupt ecological functions. Weeds are not introduced through recreational use of stock.

- 11** Outfitter and guiding opportunities meet an identified public need, the agencies' wilderness objectives and provide benefits to the wilderness resource.
- 12** Lands degraded prior to wilderness designation, such old gravel quarries, mineral exploratory sites, and weed infested areas, trend towards their natural ecological state.

### Goals (FW-GO-DWA)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates stewardship and management of the Lee Metcalf and Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness with the Beaverhead-Deerlodge National Forest, Shoshone National Forest and the Bureau of Land Management Dillon Resource Area).
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with private interest landowners regarding mineral management activities on private land inholdings which may affect surroundings designated wilderness.
- 03** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates with Montana Fish, Wildlife, and Parks on fish and wildlife management in wilderness.
- 04** The Custer Gallatin National Forest continues existing partnerships and seeks new partnerships and individual volunteers to foster wilderness stewardship and encourage volunteerism in the Absaroka-Beartooth and Lee Metcalf Wilderness Areas.

### Objectives (FW-OBJ-DWA)

- 01** Per decade, remove three facilities, improvements or uses that are not suitable for wilderness.

### Standards (FW-STD-DWA)

- 01** Areas as displayed on the map in plan appendix B "Recreational Livestock Closures" shall not be authorized for recreational livestock grazing.
- 02** Areas and trails as displayed on the map in plan appendix B "Recreational Livestock Closures" shall not be authorized for entry by recreational livestock.
- 03** Tethering and grazing of recreational livestock shall not be authorized within 100 feet from streams and 200 feet from lakeshores.
- 04** Building a campfire shall not be authorized in areas displayed in plan appendix B map titled "Wilderness Campfire Restricted Areas."
- 05** Recreational livestock per party (other than pack goats) in excess of 15 head within the east unit and 25 head within the west unit of the Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness shall not be authorized. See FW-SUIT-REC-02 and FW-STD-RECOG-02 for pack goat restrictions.
- 06** Recreational livestock per party (other than pack goats) in excess of 15 in the Spanish Peaks and 20 in the Monument Mountain and Taylor Hilgard units of the Lee Metcalf Wilderness shall not be authorized. See FW-SUIT-REC-02 and FW-STD-RECOG-02 for pack goat restrictions.
- 07** Group sizes in excess of 15 people the Absaroka-Beartooth and Lee Metcalf Wilderness Areas shall not be authorized.
- 08** New administrative facilities shall not be allowed in designated wilderness.

- 09** New or reconstructed trails shall not be designed above trail class 3 within the wilderness.
- 10** Within wilderness zones 2 and 3, designation of campsites for public use or outfitter guide camps shall only occur for the purposes of preventing degradation of the wilderness resource.
- 11** Within wilderness zones 1 there shall be no designated campsites for public use or assigned Outfitter Guide camps.
- 12** New special use authorizations shall only be authorized as consistent with the wilderness act, and maintains the state of existing wilderness zones.
- 13** New range improvements associated with existing allotments shall be authorized only for the purpose of enhancing wilderness character or for resource protection.
- 14** Administrative authorizations for use of motor vehicles, motorized equipment, or mechanical transport shall be limited to the minimum necessary for the purpose of wilderness or human health and safety.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL-DWA)

- 01** To maintain wilderness character, there should be no net increase in miles of system trails within wilderness, unless trail re-routes are necessary for resource protection or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Trail re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes with minimal trail infrastructure.
- 02** To enhance wilderness character, new or reconstructed allotment infrastructure should use natural (native) materials unless costs are prohibitive or they do not complement wilderness character.
- 03** To preserve wilderness character, research proposals should contribute to the stewardship of the area as wilderness and share results with the agency. They should not be authorized if they can be accomplished outside of wilderness, or cannot be conducted in a manner compatible with wilderness character.
- 04** To minimize the impacts to the untrammeled quality of wilderness, treatment of nonnative invasive plant species should utilize pulling or hand tool use prior to herbicide treatments.
- 05** To protect social and ecological conditions, new Outfitter Guide service days should only be authorized for the purpose of enhancing wilderness character.

#### Suitability (FW-SUIT-DWA)

- 01** Designated wilderness areas are not suitable for timber production or timber harvest.
- 02** Designated wilderness areas are not suitable for mechanical transport or motorized equipment.
- 03** Designated wilderness areas are not suitable for the removal of the following special forest products for personal use: firewood, post and poles, Christmas trees, boughs. Removal of other special products for personal use (such as mushrooms and botanical products) is suitable.
- 04** Permitted livestock use is suitable only in those portions of wilderness where grazing had been established prior to the area's wilderness designation.

- 05** Overnight camping is not suitable in areas where it is demonstrated to cause unacceptable resource impacts (such as water quality degradation).

## Absaroka-Beartooth and Lee Metcalf Wilderness by Zone

### Introduction

Wilderness areas on the Custer Gallatin are further delineated into three zones with more refined management purposes. Zoning is the practice of delineating particular areas in a wilderness where different biophysical or social resources call for the application of varying management policies, actions, or visitor management techniques. Zoning in this context is useful as a means of guarding against the incremental degradation of conditions in the more remote and pristine portions of wilderness. It also identifies those conditions in areas such as Transition where managers face challenges to preserve wilderness character. While zoning is not mentioned in the Wilderness Act, it is a concept that can be essential to managing the complex realities of wilderness in the 21st century. Biophysically and socially, wilderness areas are not homogeneous. Some ecological areas may be more sensitive, or particular areas may be more attractive or accessible to visitors. The three zones are a subset of the “primitive” recreation opportunity spectrum classification applied to all designated wilderness on Custer Gallatin National Forest. Table 23 illustrates the proportion of each wilderness by zone (plan appendix B provides a map of these zones). While the three zones represent a way of defining a range of diverse conditions with the wilderness it must also be stated that management of wilderness in its entirety must be consistent with the intent of the Wilderness Act.

**Table 23. Percentage of land by wilderness zone**

| Wilderness Area    | Zone I (Pristine) | Zone II (Primitive) | Zone III (Transition) |
|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| Lee Metcalf        | 68%               | 22%                 | 10%                   |
| Absaroka-Beartooth | 79%               | 14%                 | 7%                    |

### A. Desired Condition: Zone I (PRISTINE)

- 01 Natural Quality:** The essentially unmodified natural environment exhibits the highest degree of natural integrity. Ecological conditions are minimally affected by the actions of users, and ecological processes operate naturally. Environmental impacts are minimal, restricted to very minor loss of soil and vegetation disturbance from human or livestock use. These impacts are subtle in nature and are not apparent to most visitors. Vegetation composition or soil damage affected by human disturbance is recovering naturally. Riparian, lakeshore, and stream channel conditions show no measurable degradation due to human uses. This trail-less zone includes areas where there is the least amount of human disturbance and the highest degree of natural integrity.
- 02 Opportunities for Solitude and Primitive or Unconfined Recreation:** This area provides the highest opportunity to experience solitude and isolation from others. Evidence of human activities is predominantly absent. Traveling in this area provides a high degree of challenge/risk and primitive recreation opportunities. Encounters with other visitors are very infrequent. Very few inter-party contacts occur while traveling and are nonexistent at the campsite. Campsites are at a very low density and show only very minor impacts that rarely persist year to year. The area is generally trail-less, with no system trails. User created routes do not dominate the landscape. Site-specific regulations may be in place in unusual cases where resources require higher levels of protection.

Contact between visitors and management personnel during the normal use season is infrequent and mostly by invitation, or to correct apparent problems.

- 03 Undeveloped:** There are no administrative structures. There are no other permanent structures in this class, except those associated with valid existing uses and rights that pre-date designation. Visitor education located outside of wilderness contributes to the understanding of rules and regulations. Regulatory signs may be necessary to protect the resource or protect public safety, but signing is a rare exception and temporary in nature.
- 04 Untrammeled:** The zone reflects an unconstrained ecosystem, where natural processes dominate.

## B. Desired Condition: Zone II (PRIMITIVE)

- 01 Natural Quality:** This zone is predominantly unmodified natural environments. Ecological processes operate naturally with limited to light evidence of human impact in areas where use is concentrated. Riparian, lakeshore, and stream channel conditions show only temporary change, which may persist from year to year. The area functions as a wild place and these are largely unmodified landscapes. Environmental impacts are minimal, restricted to minor loss of soil and vegetation where camping or livestock use occurs and along travel routes. These impacts are not typically apparent to most visitors.
- 02 Opportunities for Solitude and Primitive or Unconfined Recreation:** This area provides a high-to-moderate opportunity to experience solitude and isolation from others. Generally, encounters with others are low to moderate. Traveling in this area on existing trails provides a moderate degree of challenge and risk. Inter-party contacts while traveling are low to moderate and low at the campsite. Concentrations of campsites may exist at trail junctions and popular destinations. No new sites are forming over time. Barren core areas may exist on some sites and persist from year to year. Outside of these concentrated use areas, campsite density is low and impacts are light. Visitor education located inside of wilderness, where necessary, contributes to the understanding of rules and regulations. Contact between visitors by management personnel during the normal use season are minimal.
- 03 Undeveloped:** Generally, no administrative structures are present, except for a limited number of food storage poles within key occupied grizzly bear areas. No other permanent structures are present, except pre-existing permitted structures such as water improvements, and drift fence, etc.
- 04 Untrammeled:** The zone reflects the natural ecosystem, where natural processes predominate.

## C. Desired Condition: Zone III (TRANSITION)

- 01 Natural Quality:** This zone is characterized by a predominantly unmodified, natural environment. Visitor impacts to ecological conditions may be discerned, but are not dominant, at certain popular destinations within this zone.
- 02 Opportunities for Solitude and Primitive or Unconfined Recreation:** Primitive and unconfined recreation opportunities are available in the zone. Opportunities for isolation and solitude are moderate to low during peak use seasons, and are more abundant other times of the year. Encounters with other visitors are moderate to high during the peak use season. Traveling on existing system trails provide a lower degree of challenge and risk. Inter-party contacts while traveling may be frequent and moderately frequent at campsites. Concentrations of campsites in heavily traveled

areas and at destinations is moderately high. Moderate soil compaction and loss of vegetation, litter and duff occurs on many user-created routes, campsites and livestock use areas. Impacts likely persist from year to year. Minimal erosion occurs on disturbed sites. Visitor education located inside of wilderness contributes to the understanding of rules and regulations. Users may find designated campsites and camping related regulations. Signs used for resource protection are present in these areas. Trails accommodate moderate to heavy use levels. Trail structures provide for resource protection. There may be moderate density of social trails within this zone, typically associated with camping areas or popular destinations.

- 03 Undeveloped:** Administrative structures may be present in order to protect wilderness resource values (such as hitch rails at heavy use stock destination, food storage poles, and corrals at assigned outfitter sites). No other permanent structures are present, except pre-existing permitted structures such as water features, corrals, fence, and existing administrative work sites. Administrative facilities in the Absaroka-Beartooth are present only at the currently existing administrative sites which pre-date designation (Hellroaring, Buffalo Fork, and Slough Creek Cabins). In the Lee Metcalf, the only administrative facility is the McAtee Cabin. Management presence, to minimize impacts from visitors, is more noticeable.
- 04 Untrammeled:** The zone reflects the natural ecosystem and natural processes generally predominate.

## Designated Wild and Scenic Rivers (DWSR)

### Introduction

On August 2, 2018 Public Law 115-229 was signed by the President designating 20 miles of East Rosebud Creek as part of the National Wild and Scenic River System. The creek is classified as a wild segment for 13 miles in the Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness and as a recreational segment for seven miles downstream of the wilderness. The outstandingly remarkable values are for scenery, recreational, and geologic resources. Until the final wild and scenic river boundary is established, plan direction applies to the area within the wild and scenic river interim boundary (1/4 mile from the ordinary high-water mark on each side of the designated river segments, unless otherwise specified in statute). Once the final boundary is established in accordance with Section 3(b) of the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act, this management direction will apply within the final established boundary of the wild and scenic river. The management direction only applies to National Forest System lands. Section 3(d)(1) of the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act requires a comprehensive river management plan be completed for wild and scenic rivers. Plan direction would also apply to any additional rivers designated by Congress.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-DWSR)

- 01** Designated rivers retain their free-flowing condition, classification, and the outstandingly remarkable values, which provide the basis for their inclusion in the system.
- 02** Public information contributes to the understanding and appreciation of the Custer Gallatin's designated rivers.

### Goals (FW-GO-DWSR)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest pursues partnerships with other agencies, organizations, and volunteers, to maintain and enhance the outstandingly remarkable values of designated rivers.

### Standards (FW-STD-DWSR)

- 01** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-DWSR)

- 01** To protect the classification of a designated river, fish barriers may be constructed on any designated river only if access and shoreline development of the barrier would not lower the classification and the free-flowing status is maintained.

### Suitability (FW-SUIT-DWSR)

- 02** Designated river corridors are not suitable for timber production. Timber harvest is not suitable in designated wild river corridors. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable in designated scenic and recreational river corridors for purposes such as fuels reduction, restoration, or wildlife habitat enhancement if the classification and the outstandingly remarkable values of the river segment are protected.

## Inventoried Roadless Areas (IRA)

### Introduction

The 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule (roadless rule) established prohibitions and permissions on road construction, road reconstruction, and timber harvesting on 58.5 million acres of national forest lands across the United States. This includes approximately 844,041 acres of inventoried roadless areas on the Custer Gallatin National Forest, about 28 percent of the Custer Gallatin. The intent of the roadless rule is to provide lasting protection for inventoried roadless areas within the National Forest System in the context of multiple-use management. Specifically, the roadless rule prohibits activities that have the greatest likelihood of altering and fragmenting landscapes, resulting in immediate, long-term loss of roadless area values and characteristics; eliminates permanent road construction and reconstruction, thereby reducing fiscal demands and responsibilities; and reduces controversy over management of roadless areas. Inventoried roadless areas are identified in a set of inventoried roadless area maps in Forest Service Roadless Area Conservation, Volume 2 (November 2000), which are held at the national headquarters office of the Forest Service, or any subsequent update or revisions of those maps (36 CFR 294 subpart B, published at 66 Federal Register 3244-3273). Maps of the inventoried roadless areas can be found in plan appendix B. Management activities follows direction found in the 2001 Roadless Rule (36 CFR 294 subpart B, published at 66 Federal Register 3244-3273). Table 24 identifies acres of inventoried roadless area in each geographic area.

**Table 24. Inventoried roadless area acres by geographic area on the Custer Gallatin national Forest**

| Geographic Area                              | Acres   |
|--|---------|
| Sioux  | 0       |
| Ashland                                      | 39,332  |
| Pryor Mountains                              | 10,422  |
| Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                 | 272,373 |
| Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains       | 127,554 |
| Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains | 394,359 |
| Total  | 844,041 |



### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-IRA)

- 01** Inventoried roadless areas provide semi-primitive non-motorized and motorized settings. A diversity of recreation opportunities are available, including both motorized and nonmotorized trail opportunities.

### Standards (FW-STD-IRA)

- 01** New road construction or road reconstruction shall not be allowed, except for the exceptions listed in the 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule.

### Suitability (FW-SUIT-IRA)

- 01** Inventoried roadless areas are not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable consistent with the 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule.
- 02** Inventoried roadless areas are suitable for restoration activities that can be accomplished consistent with the 2001 Roadless Area Conservation Rule.

## Research Natural Areas (RNA)

### Introduction

The Custer Gallatin National Forest has ten existing research natural areas (table 25). These research natural areas are part of a national network of ecological areas designated in perpetuity for research, education, and to maintain plant and animal diversity of national forest lands. They serve as baseline areas for non-manipulative research, observation, and study. Additional plan components for the Line Creek Research Natural Areas are found in chapter 3 of the plan.

Forest Service Manual 4063 and applicable National Environmental Policy Act decisions and research natural areas establishment records provide additional management guidance for these areas. Research natural areas are cooperatively managed with the Rocky Mountain Research Station. All proposals for research or management activities in research natural areas need to follow direction outlined in Forest Service Manual 4063 and must be approved by the Rocky Mountain Research Station Director (Forest Service Manual 4063.33). All proposals for research in research natural areas in wilderness areas need to also follow direction outlined in Forest Service Manual 2323 (Forest Service Manual 4063.32).

There are currently no proposed research natural areas. Other additions to the network may be identified in the future.

**Table 25. Currently designated research natural areas by geographic area, purpose and acreage**

| Name          | Geographic Area<br>(Ranger District)                                      | Purpose for Establishment   | Acres |
|---------------|---|---|-------|
| Palace Butte  | Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains<br>(Bozeman Ranger District) | Subalpine wetlands, waterfalls, geologic features, subalpine forest and meadows | 1,280 |
| Wheeler Ridge | Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains<br>(Bozeman Ranger District) | Old-growth whitebark pine   | 640   |

| Name                    | Geographic Area<br>(Ranger District)  | Purpose for Establishment   | Acres   |
|-------------------------|---|---|---|
| Black Butte             | Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains (Hebgen Lake Ranger District)  | Large, sometimes multiple-stemmed whitebark pine, dry subalpine forest habitat types  | 510   |
| Obsidian Sands          | Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains (Hebgen Lake Ranger District)  | Excellent example of the lodgepole pine/bitterbrush habitat type on obsidian sand benchland   | 390   |
| East Fork of Mill Creek | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains (Yellowstone Ranger District)  | Engelmann spruce and Douglas-fir with whitebark pine understory   | 882   |
| Passage Creek           | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains (Yellowstone Ranger District)  | Engelmann spruce, Douglas-fir, and subalpine fir upland and riparian forests  | 1,097   |
| Sliding Mountain        | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains (Yellowstone Ranger District)  | Spruce, subalpine fir, lodgepole pine, and Douglas-fir occurs. A sizable shrubland and grassland is present. Dominant species include mountain big sagebrush, Idaho fescue, and bluebunch wheatgrass. Several avalanche chutes occur on the north face of Sliding Mountain. | 1,459   |
| Line Creek Plateau      | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains (Beartooth Ranger District of the Custer Gallatin National Forest, Montana; and Clark's Fork Ranger District of the Shoshone National Forest, Wyoming) | Extensive areas of alpine tundra vegetation, a cirque basin with alpine lakes and ponds, and many unique plant species. Nine alpine, seven coniferous, and one shrubland vegetation types fulfill requirements for the Northern Region Research Natural Area network.       | 22,422<br>(19,369 Custer Gallatin National Forest;<br>3,053 Shoshone National Forest) |
| Lost Water Canyon       | Pryor Mountains (Beartooth Ranger District)   | Encompasses nearly an entire watershed in pristine condition. Includes Douglas-fir near its eastern most extent and interrupted stream system in karst topography.  | 2,809   |
| Poker Jim               | Ashland (Ashland Ranger District)   | Eastern ponderosa pine forest; native grassland and shrubland communities dominated by big sagebrush, silver sagebrush and wheatgrasses.  | 363   |

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RNA)

- 01** Ecological processes that support the functional and structural patterns of research natural area ecosystems are present and functioning to sustain the species and ecological conditions for which the research natural area was established.

### Goals (FW-GO-RNA)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest will continue to coordinate and consult with Rocky Mountain Research Station to protect and manage the ecological features and values for which each research natural area was established in accordance with the establishment records.

### Standards (FW-STD-RNA)

- 01** New energy or utility structures shall not be allowed.
- 02** New recreation events shall not be authorized.

- 03** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.
- 04** New special uses shall not be permitted except those issued for approved research projects or that are educational in nature.
- 05** New special use occupancy that requires constructed facilities shall not be permitted. In rare instances, temporary gauging stations and instrument shelters may be allowed for approved research projects.
- 06** Special forest product collection shall not be permitted for commercial or personal use in research natural areas.
- 07** New wildlife or fish habitat improvement projects shall not be allowed in research natural areas, except to meet the needs of approved research projects associated with the management of the research natural area.

#### Guidelines (FW-GDL- RNA)

- 01** To minimize potential impacts to high valued resources for which the area was designated, ground-disturbing fire suppression machinery and fire retardant should be avoided.

#### Suitability (FW-SUIT-RNA)

- 01** Research natural areas are not suitable for timber production or firewood collection. Vegetation management, including timber harvest and prescribed fire is suitable only for reasons specifically designed to maintain or achieve the desired conditions and purpose for the research natural area.
- 02** Research natural areas are not suitable for recreational and commercial drone launching and landings.

### Special Areas (SA)

#### Introduction

Designated special areas are those that have been formally established by a decision signed by the regional forester (less than 100,000 acres) or the Secretary of Agriculture (greater than 100,000 acres). The Custer Gallatin National Forest has two designated special areas, which total approximately 3,773 acres. These special areas are designated for research and education of botanical and paleontological resources. Additional plan components for the two designated special areas are found in chapter 3 of the plan.

Forest Supervisors may propose special areas and develop management direction for the areas (either in revision or by amendment), but they would require approval by the regional forester. There are currently no proposed special areas.

Other special areas may be identified in the future. A potential botanical special area in the Pryor Mountains is pending further review by the national forest and regional staff (undetermined location and acreage). See related plan components in chapter 3 of the plan for additional information.

Each special area is managed as an integral part of the National Forest System with emphasis on its unique values. Other values or resources in the area are managed to a level compatible with the area's primary values and overall national forest management objectives. Forest Service Manual 2370 and

applicable National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) decisions and designation orders provide additional management guidance for these areas. Table 26 displays administratively designated special areas.

**Table 26. Designated special areas by geographic area, purpose and acreage**

| <b>Name</b>   | <b>Geographic Area<br/>(Ranger District)</b>                               | <b>Purpose for Establishment</b>  | <b>Acres</b> |
|---|--|---|--------------|
| Bangtail Botanical and Paleontological Special Area | Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains (Bozeman Ranger District)           | Provides an excellent opportunity for research and interpretation of important botanical features and paleontological finds.  | 3,366        |
| Black Sand Spring Botanical Special Area            | Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains (Hebgen Lake Ranger District) | Black Sand Spring Botanical Special Area is adjacent to the Madison Fork Ranch Conservation Easement (The Nature Conservancy) and provides added value to the overall conservation of the ecological integrity around the South Fork of the Madison River. This area features spring creek riparian vegetation. | 407          |

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-SA)

- 01** Administratively designated special areas contribute identified unique values that are worthy of preserving.
- 02** Administratively designated special areas contribute opportunities for research, study, observation, and monitoring of natural features and unique values.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-SA)

- 01** New improvements should be allowed only when they are necessary to maintain, restore or enhance the values for which the special area was designated.
- 02** Activities such as prescribed fire, forest vegetation management, and invasive species treatment should be only allowed when they perpetuate the natural diversity of plant communities or when needed to address substantial concerns for human safety or infrastructure that is essential to community welfare (such as utilities and communications).

## National Natural Landmarks (NNL)

### Introduction

The National Natural Landmarks Program was established in 1962 to encourage the preservation of sites illustrating the geological and ecological character of the United States, to enhance the scientific and educational value of sites thus preserved, to strengthen public appreciation of natural history, and to foster a greater concern for the conservation of the nation's natural heritage.

Three national natural landmarks are located on the Custer Gallatin: Capital Rock and the Castles National Natural Landmarks in the Sioux Geographic Area, and Middle Fork Canyon National Natural Landmark in the Bridger Mountains. More detail about each national natural landmark is found in table 27.

**Table 27. National natural landmarks by geographic area, acres and purpose for establishment**

| Name               | Geographic Area                    | Purpose for Establishment   | Acres |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|---|-------|
| Middle Fork Canyon | Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy Mountains | Illustrates rocks deformed by the Earth's tectonic movement. Outstanding example of a canyon cut across the grain of the geologic structure by a superposed stream. Few places more clearly illustrate the effects of erosion and stream superposition. Eighty acres of the 960-acre landmark is national forest land.  | 80    |
| Capital Rock       | Sioux                              | Uniqueness of geologic formation due to uplift and erosion within the surrounding prairie environment. Remnant of the once continuous blanket of Tertiary deposits that covered much of the Great Plains. Late Cretaceous, Paleocene, Oligocene, and Miocene strata are well displayed.   | 244   |
| The Castles        | Sioux                              | Uniqueness of geologic formation due to uplift and erosion within the surrounding prairie environment. Steep-walled, flat-topped buttes standing 200 to 400 feet above the surrounding prairie, the Castles contains exposed rock of Upper Cretaceous, Paleocene, Oligocene, and Miocene Ages. Cretaceous and Tertiary beds contain a variety of flora and fauna fossils. | 940   |

**Desired Conditions (FW-DC-NNL)**

- 01** National natural landmarks contribute unique geological and scenic features and offer a recreation opportunity.

**Goals (FW-GO-NNL)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates new development and management activities with the National Park Service.

**Standard (FW-STD-NNL)**

- 01** New energy or utility structures shall not be allowed.
- 02** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.

**Suitability (FW-SUIT-NNL)**

- 01** National natural landmarks are not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable for purposes such as fuels reduction, restoration, or wildlife habitat enhancement.

**Nez Perce National Historic Trail (NPNHT)****Introduction**

The Nez Perce (Nimípuu or Nee-Me-Poo) National Historic Trail stretches from Wallowa Lake, Oregon, to the Bear Paw Battlefield near Chinook, Montana. The trail commemorates the 1877 flight of the non-treaty Nez Perce from their homelands in eastern Oregon, Idaho, and Washington across what are now the states of Idaho, Montana, and Wyoming.

The Nez Perce National Historic Trail (NPNHT) Autotour Route passes through the Custer Gallatin National Forest. The Nez Perce Trail is interpreted along the Autotour route, but is not necessarily the physical location of the Nez Perce Trail. On the west end of the Custer Gallatin, the Autotour route is along Highway 20, east from Targhee Pass to the west boundary of Yellowstone National Park. A segment

of the Nez Perce National Historic Trail Autotour Route follows State Highway 212, from the northeast entrance of Yellowstone National Park, for approximately eight miles, through Cooke City, to the State line, where it leaves the national forest. This section of the actual trail leaves the east side of Yellowstone National Park further to the south and does not enter the Custer Gallatin.

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-NPNHT)

- 01 Interpretive materials and identification signage are available for the Nez Perce (Nee-Me-Poo) National Historic Trail.

### Goals (MG-GO-NPNHT)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates management, signage and interpretive materials of the Autotour route with the Montana Department of Transportation and the Nez Perce National Historic Trail Administration.

## National Recreation Trails (NRT)

### Introduction

The Custer Gallatin National Forest has twelve national recreation trails designated by the regional forester as part of the national system of trails authorized by the National Trails Systems Act. There are a total of about 127 miles of existing national recreation trails on the Custer Gallatin National Forest (table 28).

**Table 28. National Recreation Trails and mileage**

| Trail Name                   | Rounded Miles |
|------------------------------|---------------|
| Basin Lakes                  | 4             |
| Big Sky Snowmobile Trail     | 55            |
| Boulder River Natural Bridge | 0.25          |
| Gallatin Riverside           | 2.50          |
| Garnet Mountain              | 4             |
| Palisade Falls               | 0.60          |
| Parkside Ski Touring         | 2.5           |
| Refuge Point X-C Ski         | 5             |
| Silver Run Ski Touring       | 5             |
| Two Top Snowmobile           | 28            |
| Wild Bill's Lake             | 0.50          |
| Bridger Foothills Trail      | 20            |
| Grand Total                  | 127.35        |

Note: A small piece of the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service-managed Drinking Horse Trail crosses the national forest for less than 100 feet.

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-NRT)

- 01 National recreation trails provide for public opportunities such as interpretation and education, which do not impair the feature(s) or values for which the individual trail was established.

## **Eligible Wild and Scenic Rivers (EWSR)**

Plan direction for eligible rivers applies to national forest lands in a 0.25-mile-wide (on either bank) corridor. Table 29 summarizes the eligible wild, scenic and recreational rivers. Detailed information about the eligible rivers, including maps, is found in plan appendix E.

### **Desired Conditions (FW-DC-EWSR)**

- 01** Eligible rivers retain their free-flowing condition, preliminary classification, and the outstandingly remarkable values that provide the basis for their inclusion in the system.
- 02** Public information contributes to the understanding and appreciation of the Custer Gallatin's eligible rivers.

### **Goals (FW-GO-EWSR)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest pursues partnerships with other agencies, organizations, and volunteers, to maintain and enhance the outstandingly remarkable values of eligible rivers.

### **Standards (FW-STD-EWSR)**

- 01** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.

### **Guidelines (FW-GDL-EWSR)**

- 01** To protect the preliminary classification of eligible rivers, fish barriers may be constructed on any eligible river only if access and shoreline development of the barrier would not lower the classification, and the free-flowing status is maintained.

### **Suitability (FW-SUIT-EWSR)**

- 01** Eligible river corridors are not suitable for timber production. Timber harvest is not suitable in eligible wild river corridors. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable in eligible scenic and recreational river corridors for purposes such as fuels reduction, restoration, or wildlife habitat enhancement if the current preliminary classification and the outstandingly remarkable values of the river segment are protected.

**Table 29. Eligible wild and scenic rivers by geographic area, outstandingly remarkable values(ORVs) and preliminary classification**

| River Name                         | Location  | ORVs          | Preliminary Classifications |
|------------------------------------|---|---------------|-----------------------------|
| Bark Cabin Creek                   | Gallatin Mountains                              | F             | Wild                        |
| Bear Creek                         | Pryor Mountains                                 | W             | Scenic                      |
| Big Creek                          | Gallatin Mountains                              | F             | Wild                        |
| Big Timber Creek                   | Crazy Mountains                                 | R, S          | Recreational                |
| Boulder River                      | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | R, S, G, H    | Recreational                |
| Cabin Creek                        | Madison Mountains                               | F, S          | Scenic                      |
| Cave Creek                         | Pryor Mountains                                 | G, S          | Wild                        |
| Clarks Fork Yellowstone River      | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | S             | Wild, Recreational          |
| Crooked Creek                      | Pryor Mountains                                 | G, S, H, F    | Wild, Scenic                |
| Gallatin River                     | Gallatin/Madison Mountains                      | R, S, H       | Recreational                |
| Hyalite Creek                      | Gallatin Mountains                              | R, S          | Scenic                      |
| Lake Abundance Creek               | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | F             | Wild                        |
| Lake Fork of Rock Creek            | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | R, S          | Wild, Recreational          |
| Lost Water Creek                   | Pryor Mountains                                 | S, G, H       | Wild                        |
| Madison River                      | Madison Mountains                               | R, G, S, H, W | Recreational                |
| Maid of the Mist Creek             | Gallatin Mountains                              | R, S          | Scenic                      |
| Middle Fork Cabin Creek            | Madison Mountains                               | F             | Scenic                      |
| Pine Creek                         | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | R, S          | Wild, Recreational          |
| Rock Creek                         | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | R, H, S       | Recreational                |
| Rock Creek                         | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | F             | Wild                        |
| Shower Creek                       | Gallatin Mountains                              | R, S          | Scenic                      |
| Slough Creek & unnamed tributaries | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | F             | Wild, Scenic                |
| Stillwater River                   | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | R, S          | Wild, Recreational          |
| West Boulder River                 | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | R             | Wild                        |
| West Fork Rock Creek               | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | H, S          | Wild, Recreational          |
| West Fork Stillwater River         | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | S             | Wild                        |
| West Rosebud Creek                 | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | S, R          | Wild                        |
| Woodbine Creek                     | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | R, S          | Wild, Recreational          |
| Wounded Man Creek                  | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                    | F             | Wild                        |
| Yellowstone River                  | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains/Gallatin Mountains | R, S, H       | Recreational                |

ORV = Outstandingly remarkable values: F = Fisheries, R = Recreation, S = Scenery, G = Geology, H = Heritage; W = Wildlife.

## Recommended Wilderness Areas (RWA)

### Introduction

Recommended wilderness areas are lands that have the potential to become designated as official wilderness through future legislation. The Forest Service only recommends these lands to the U.S. Congress for consideration. Congress, and ultimately the president, must establish legislation thorough a wilderness bill. Table 30 displays recommended wilderness area acres.



**Table 30. Recommended wilderness areas by geographic area and acreage**

| Name                  | Geographic Area                          | Acres   |
|-----------------------|--|---------|
| Bear Canyon           | Pryor Mountains                          | 10,662  |
| Lost Water Canyon     | Pryor Mountains                          | 8,168   |
| Timberline            | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains             | 802     |
| South Crazy Mountains | Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy Mountains       | 9,619   |
| Cowboy Heaven         | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 13,176  |
| Gallatin Crest        | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 78,071  |
| Sawtooth Mountain     | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 14,461  |
| Taylor Hilgard        | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 4,466   |
| Total Acres           | No data                                  | 139,425 |

**Desired Conditions (FW-DC-RWA)**

- 01** Recommended wilderness areas maintain their existing wilderness characteristics, to preserve opportunities for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System.
- 02** Recommended wilderness areas provide outstanding opportunities for solitude or primitive and unconfined recreation. Impacts from visitor use do not detract from the natural setting.
- 03** Recommended wilderness areas are characterized by a natural environment where ecological processes such as natural succession, wildfire, avalanches, insects and disease function as the primary forces affecting the environment.
- 04** System trails support wilderness experiences and preserve wilderness characteristics.
- 05** Outfitter and guide recreation special uses support identified public need and provide service for realizing the recreational purposes of the recommended wilderness areas.

**Standards (FW-STD-RWA)**

- 01** New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.
- 02** New energy or utility structures shall not be allowed.
- 03** New commercial communication sites shall not be allowed.
- 04** New developed recreation sites shall not be allowed.
- 05** New recreation events shall not be authorized.
- 06** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed. This standard does not apply to permitted collection of petrified wood in the Gallatin Petrified Forest Special Management Zone.

**Guidelines (FW-GDL-RWA)**

- 01** To maintain limits on structures in recommended wilderness, new range improvements associated with existing allotments should be authorized only for the purpose of enhancing wilderness characteristics or for resource protection.

## Suitability (FW-SUIT-RWA)

- 01** Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for timber production or timber harvest.
- 02** Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for motorized or mechanized transport.
- 03** Recommended wilderness areas are suitable for low impact restoration activities that move toward desired conditions (such as prescribed fires, active weed management, planting) and that protect and enhance the wilderness characteristics of these areas.
- 04** Permitted livestock use is suitable in those portions of recommended wilderness areas where grazing had been established prior to the area being identified as recommended wilderness.
- 05** Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for developed recreation sites, such as recreation rental cabins.
- 06** Administrative facilities are suitable only for the purposes of administration of the recommended wilderness areas.
- 07** Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for commercial communication facilities. Continued use of the existing Sheep Mountain and Twin Peaks passive reflector sites is suitable within their current footprints and with existing types of equipment. If a permittee determines an existing passive reflector site is no longer needed, the site will not be suitable for a new user or for a new use.
- 08** Recommended wilderness areas are not suitable for recreational and commercial drone launching and landings.

## Backcountry Areas (BCA)

### Introduction

Backcountry areas are generally undeveloped or lightly developed. They are either unroaded, or have few, primitive roads. Some are both unroaded and untrailed. Backcountry areas provide for more remote, semi-primitive recreation opportunities, both motorized and nonmotorized, depending on the area. Backcountry areas are listed in table 31 and are depicted in plan appendix B. Additional direction for each backcountry area is found in chapter 3 of the plan.

**Table 31. Backcountry areas by geographic area and acreage**

| Name                | Geographic Area                          | Acres  |
|---------------------|--|--------|
| Chalk Buttes        | Sioux                                    | 5,937  |
| Cook Mountain       | Ashland                                  | 9,794  |
| King Mountain       | Ashland                                  | 12,189 |
| Tongue River Breaks | Ashland                                  | 16,899 |
| Big Pryor           | Pryor Mountains                          | 12,610 |
| Punch Bowl          | Pryor Mountains                          | 6,097  |
| Bad Canyon          | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains             | 18,712 |
| Blacktail Peak      | Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy Mountains       | 4,640  |
| Crazy Mountains     | Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy Mountains       | 30,642 |
| Buffalo Horn        | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 26,496 |

| Name             | Geographic Area                          | Acres   |
|------------------|--|---------|
| Lionhead         | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 27,266  |
| South Cottonwood | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 13,763  |
| West Pine        | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 22,632  |
| Total Acres      | No data                                  | 207,677 |

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-BCA)

- 01 Natural processes play their role and human use leaves little permanent or long-lasting evidence.

### Standards (FW-STD-BCA)

- 01 New energy or utility structures shall not be allowed.
- 02 New commercial communication sites shall not be allowed.
- 03 New developed recreation sites shall not be allowed.
- 04 Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.
- 05 New special uses shall be compatible with management of the backcountry area character.
- 06 Exceptions to the backcountry area standards in chapter 2 and chapter 3 shall be allowed to provide for reasonable access and mining activities pursuant to the 1872 Mining Law. New access to and development of minerals shall minimize impacts to backcountry areas.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-BCA)

- 01 To maintain the predominantly unroaded and nonmotorized character, new structural range improvements should be located in areas that avoid the need to permit motorized access to areas with no permitted motorized access.

### Suitability (FW-SUIT-BCA)

- 01 The backcountry areas are not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable for purposes such as fuels reduction, restoration, or wildlife habitat enhancement.

## Recreation Emphasis Areas (REA)

### Introduction

Recreation emphasis areas typically offer a variety of quality recreation opportunities, including motorized and nonmotorized uses. The recreation opportunities are accessible to a wide range of users, in several seasons, and typically offer challenges to a wide range of skills. The areas may be regional, national, or international destinations, or may be close to higher population centers. Recreation emphasis areas close to population centers may offer opportunities for trail connections to communities.

Recreation emphasis areas may have a high density of human activities and associated structures. There may be roads, utilities, and trails as well as signs of past and ongoing activities of managed forest vegetation. Opportunities for solitude and a primitive experience may be limited near roads or trails due

to frequent contact with other users. Recreation emphasis areas are listed in table 32 and are depicted in plan appendix B. Additional direction for each recreation emphasis area is found in chapter 3 of the plan.

**Table 32. Recreation emphasis areas by geographic area and acreage**

| <b>Name</b>          | <b>Geographic Area</b>  | <b>Acres</b> |
|----------------------|---|--------------|
| Main Fork Rock Creek | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                                    | 8,803        |
| Cooke City Winter    | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                                    | 24,130       |
| Boulder River        | Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                                    | 7,367        |
| Yellowstone River    | Absaroka Beartooth and Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains | 2,166        |
| Bridger              | Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy Mountains                              | 12,969       |
| Hyalite              | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains                        | 36,246       |
| Storm Castle         | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains                        | 36,516       |
| Gallatin River       | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains                        | 16,474       |
| Hebgen Winter        | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains                        | 70,924       |
| Hebgen Lakeshore     | Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains                        | 13,886       |
| Total Acres          | No data   | 229,482      |

### Desired Conditions (FW-DC-REA)

- 01** Recreation emphasis areas provide sustainable recreational opportunities and settings that respond to changing recreation desires. Local communities can readily access these areas for a variety of motorized and nonmotorized experiences.
- 02** Trail systems connect communities to recreation emphasis areas.
- 03** Loop trail opportunities are available.
- 04** Educational programs are available for recreation users to learn about topics such as the prevention of spread of invasive species, wildlife-human conflicts, safe fire use, and sharing trails.
- 05** Vegetation management complements the recreational setting over the long term.
- 06** Developed recreation sites in recreation emphasis areas are accessible to all national forest users.

### Goals (FW-GO-REA)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest continues existing partnerships and seeks new partnerships to increase capacity to maintain and enhance the recreation opportunities in recreation emphasis areas.

### Guidelines (FW-GDL-REA)

- 01** To reduce the likelihood of establishing unplanned new visitor use patterns, temporary roads, skid trails, and landings should be constructed and rehabilitated to discourage new visitor use of that structure.

### Suitability (FW-SUIT-REA)

- 01** Recreation emphasis areas are suitable for a high density of recreation development.

## Chapter 3. Geographic Area Direction

### Introduction

Individual places across the Custer Gallatin National Forest have their own unique characteristics and conditions. These places, referred to as “geographic areas” (GAs), define a landscape that people associate with on the national forest. The Custer Gallatin National Forest geographic areas were determined using the distinct land masses of the national forest coupled with a sense of place meaningful to the public. While Ashland and the Pryor Mountains are separate geographic areas, the eight individual land units of the Sioux District are grouped into one geographic area. Because the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains are in proximity, they are grouped into one geographic area. The remaining lands were divided into two geographic areas at the Yellowstone River, because one geographic area would be such a large area it begins to lose a distinctive sense of place. Identifying direction for geographic areas provides a means for describing conditions and trends at a more local scale than forestwide, if appropriate. Six geographic areas have been identified and are arranged from east to west (figure 2 and table 33) and are as follows:

- Sioux (SX)
- Ashland (AL)
- Pryor Mountains (PR)
- Absaroka Beartooth Mountains (AB)
- Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains (BC)
- Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains (MG)

**Table 33. Acres within the six geographic areas (GA) on the Custer Gallatin National Forest**

| <b>Geographic Area</b>                       | <b>Total Acres<br/>(All Ownerships)</b> | <b>National Forest<br/>System Acres<br/>within GA</b> | <b>Percentage of<br/>GA in<br/>National Forest<br/>System Lands</b> |
|--|---|---|---|
| Sioux  | 176,973                                 | 164,460   | 93  |
| Ashland                                      | 501,797                                 | 436,134   | 87  |
| Pryor Mountains                              | 77,944                                  | 75,067  | 96  |
| Absaroka Beartooth Mountains                 | 1,387,707                               | 1,358,541   | 98  |
| Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains       | 314,598                                 | 205,148   | 65  |
| Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains | 953,001                                 | 806,615   | 85  |

Each geographic area section provides an overview of the area, including distinctive roles and contributions. Geographic area-specific desired conditions, and in some cases, standards and guidelines, not covered by forestwide direction, are also included. In all cases, please refer to the forestwide direction first, followed by any specific geographic area direction that may apply. Each geographic area has a set of associated maps in plan appendix B.

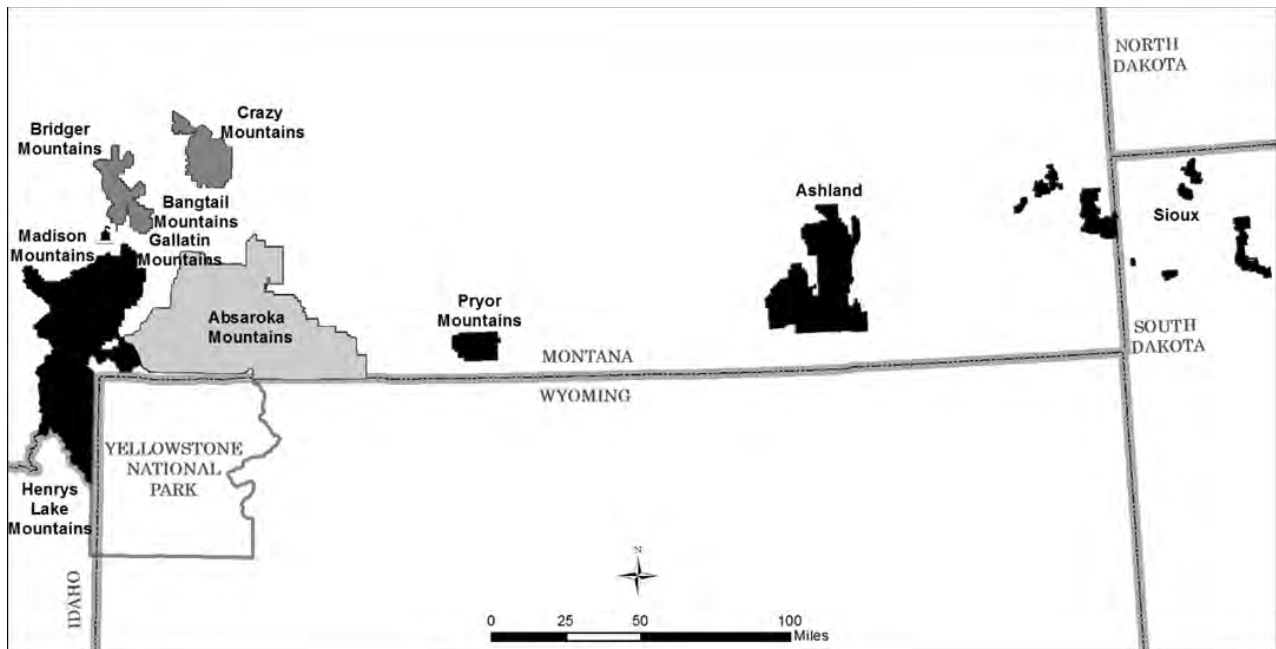


Figure 2. Custer Gallatin National Forest geographic areas

## Sioux Geographic Area

### General Overview

The Sioux District is comprised of eight geographically distinct land units in eastern Montana and western South Dakota. The national forest land in this area is surrounded by sparsely populated rangelands in Carter County, Montana, and Harding County, South Dakota. These units are separated by a mixture of State, private, and Bureau of Land Management-managed lands intersected by highways and county roads. Nearby towns include Ekalaka, Montana, and Camp Crook, and Buffalo, South Dakota. Maps found in plan appendix B provide detailed information.

### Distinctive Roles and Contributions

#### Ecological Characteristics

The Sioux Geographic Area stands out from the surrounding pine savanna because of the elevation and the ponderosa pines. Tree-covered “terrestrial islands” rise above the surrounding prairie. Most of the Sioux District drains to the Little Missouri, Grand, or Moreau Rivers.

Vegetation in this pine savanna ecosystem includes ponderosa pine, woody draws dominated by green ash, and open, grassy uplands. Sandstone cliffs provide dramatic scenery. Over 800 plant species can be found here. One globally rare species, *Botrychium gallicomontanum*, is known from the North Cave Hills.

Minor populations of paper birch (*Betula papyrifera*), a boreal species, are found on the Sioux Ranger District. These isolated, southern populations are a relic from the last ice age. The geographic area contains the eastern extent of Idaho fescue (predominantly a montane species) in Montana and northwest South Dakota and part of the western extent of big and little bluestems (predominantly tall grass prairie species). Unlike the montane units where cool season grasses dominate, there is a mix of cool season and warm season grasses found in this area. A transition zone occurs between the eastern

edge of the sagebrush distribution and the western edge of the prairie. These sagebrush communities are on the periphery of their distribution, which can be an important consideration for sage-grouse habitat management.

Several wide-ranging species that have been rare or absent from the Sioux landscape for decades have moved back into the area in recent years, including elk and mountain lion.

National Natural Landmarks identify and recognize the country's best examples of ecological and geological features. The two National Natural Landmarks in this geographic area, Capital Rock and the Castles, each feature a unique geologic formation due to uplift and erosion within the surrounding prairie environment.

The 244-acre Capital Rock National Natural Landmark in the Long Pines is a remnant of the once continuous blanket of Tertiary deposits that covered much of the Great Plains. Late Cretaceous, Paleocene, Oligocene, and Miocene strata are well displayed.

The 940-acre Castles National Natural Landmark in the Slim Buttes contains steep-walled, flat-topped buttes standing 200 to 400 feet above the surrounding prairie. The Castles expose rock of Upper Cretaceous, Paleocene, Oligocene, and Miocene Ages. Cretaceous and Tertiary beds contain a variety of flora and fauna fossils.

### Social and Economic Characteristics

Rising out of the surrounding prairie, the higher elevation pine savanna of the national forest lands provides unique scenery in eastern Montana and northwestern South Dakota. The scenery of this geographic area is markedly different from the western part of the Custer Gallatin. The two national natural landmarks, Capital Rock and the Castles, contribute particularly unique scenery.

Livestock grazing in the Sioux Geographic Area is an important contribution to the social and economic importance of surrounding rural communities and to the associated traditional cultural landscapes. Livestock grazing is an important source of income in the two-county area associated with Sioux District allotments. Local ranchers graze livestock typically during late spring, summer, and early fall. National forest grazing is an integral component of overall ranch operations for over 50 permittees.

The Sioux District manages a large national forest livestock grazing program. Primary rangelands within current allotments occur on about 90 percent of the Sioux District. Typically, the district provides forage for over 8,000 head of livestock on over 60 active grazing allotments. Some water developments (particularly constructed ponds that now have riparian characteristics) established for livestock, provide habitat for fish and wildlife populations.

Timber harvested on the district contributes to sawmill, log home, and post and pole production companies located within the supply-reach of the Custer Gallatin. Two oil wells provide energy for the nation and contribute to local economies. Twelve large uranium mines from the 1950s and 1960s are currently being cleaned up under Comprehensive Environmental Response, Compensation and Liability Act authority. In addition, there are more than 500 smaller uranium exploration pits across the district that are in the process of being reclaimed. The geographic area has campgrounds and opportunities for hunting, trapping, angling, along with opportunities for bird and wildlife watching, photography, and nature study.

## Cultural and Historical Characteristics

The Sioux Geographic Area contains the highest concentration and most varied of precontact sites in the Northern Great Plains. This is due in part to the environmental diversity, excellent natural site preservation, and complexity of the many plains cultures that occupied the area for thousands of years. The North Cave Hills have several national register sites, including Lightning Springs prehistoric site and 43 petroglyph sites.

The proposed North Cave Hills Archaeological and Traditional Use District is considered a tribal cultural landscape to the Tribes and their use of the unit showed that it qualified as a traditional cultural landscape. The proposed district contains 365 recorded archaeological sites of which 232 are either already listed or are considered contributing resources. Cultural material within the district range in age from Late Paleoindian period through the Historic Period. Traditional cultural use of the district is represented at Ludlow Cave, the petroglyph sites, several graves, and by at least two stone features.

Forty-three petroglyph sites are included in the Prehistoric Rock Art of South Dakota Multiple Listing Nomination. Within the traditional culture of the Lakota (Sioux) Indians, rock art is considered sacred; thus, rock art sites can be considered traditional cultural properties for many of the Native Americans now living in South Dakota.

The North Cave Hills, South Cave Hills, and the Slim Butte units have been formally identified as lands with religious and cultural significance under all applicable historic preservation laws and Executive Order 113007, as sacred sites by Tribal resolutions from the Lower Brule Sioux Tribes, Standing Rock Sioux Tribes, Cheyenne River Sioux Tribe, and Rosebud Sioux Tribes.

The Slim Buttes is the location of one of the last battles associated with the Great Sioux War, the 1876 Battle of the Slim Buttes where General Crook destroyed the winter camp of American Horse. The actual battle site is not on Forest Service administered lands.

The Chalk Buttes is under study as a traditional cultural landscape. The 1994 Chalk Buttes assessment was to document the cultural and continuing significance of the Chalk Buttes area for the Tribes and for the Custer Gallatin that has stewardship responsibilities for the unit. Connections were made to the Medicine Rocks State Park to the north of the Chalk Buttes, and a recommendation to nominate the two locations as a discontinuous traditional cultural property district significant to the maintenance of ongoing traditional cultural practices of the Sioux and Northern Cheyenne. The traditional cultural practices were found to be grounded in the sacred past due to the spiritual characteristics of the area, and the historic past due to the historical cultural use of the area in the 1800s.

The Civilian Conservation Corps built most of the main access roads and initial range improvements on the district, which are still maintained and in use today.

## Vision for the Sioux Geographic Area

The higher elevation, forested areas of national forest land offer distinct ecological conditions, wildlife habitat, and recreation settings from the surrounding plains. A resilient landscape supports the distinctive floristic and wildlife diversity. The land supports people economically through grazing, timber, hunting, and oil and gas production. The North Cave Hills, South Cave Hills, Chalk Buttes, and Slim Buttes are places of spiritual, ceremonial and traditional cultural importance to Tribes.



## Designated Areas

Designated areas are specific areas or features within the Custer Gallatin that have been given a permanent designation to maintain its unique character, purpose or management emphasis. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of designated areas. Table 34 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the designated areas in this geographic area.

**Table 34. Designated areas in the Sioux Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Designated Area            | Acres | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|----------------------------|-------|--|--|
| National Natural Landmarks | 1,184 | 0.7  | 94                                       |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in a designation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent.

2. Percentage of total National Forest System lands of the same designation on the Custer Gallatin, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Land Allocations

Plan land allocations are areas developed in the planning process. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of plan land allocations. Table 35 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the plan land allocations in this geographic area.

**Table 35. Plan land allocations in the Sioux Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Plan Land Allocation          | Acres | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|-------------------------------|-------|--|--|
| Chalk Buttes Backcountry Area | 5,937 | 4  | 3  |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in an allocation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands of the same allocation on the national forest, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Other Resource Emphasis Areas

### Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

The recreation opportunity spectrum influences the suitability of lands for various multiple uses or activities based on the desired conditions. Please see chapter 2 for a description of the recreation opportunity spectrum and its associated plan components. Table 36 displays the acreage of each recreation opportunity spectrum class for both summer and winter. In addition, the associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the recreation opportunity spectrum class categories in this geographic area.

**Table 36. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes for the Sioux Geographic Area in summer and winter by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| <b>Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Class</b> | <b>Summer Acres</b> | <b>Summer Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Winter Acres</b> | <b>Winter Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> |
|--|---------------------|---|---------------------|---|
| Primitive                                    | 0                   | 0%  | 0                   | 0%  |
| Semi-primitive Nonmotorized                  | 0                   | 0%  | 0                   | 0%  |
| Semi-primitive Motorized                     | 122,406             | 74%   | 122,406             | 74%   |
| Roaded Natural                               | 40,683              | 25%   | 40,683              | 25%   |
| Rural  | 1,371               | 1%  | 1,371               | 1%  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Scenic Integrity Objectives

Table 37 displays the acreages; the locations of scenic integrity objectives for the Sioux Geographic Area are displayed in the scenery management maps (plan appendix B). Refer to FW-SCENERY for desired conditions and guidelines that apply to scenery.

**Table 37. Scenic integrity objectives for the Sioux Geographic Area by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| <b>Scenic Integrity Objective</b> | <b>Acres</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--|
| Very High                         | 0            | 0%   |
| High                              | 6,555        | 4%   |
| Moderate                          | 82,187       | 50%  |
| Low                               | 75,718       | 46%  |
| Very Low                          | 0            | 0  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Lands Suitable for Timber Production

Lands suitable for timber production are areas where timber production is an appropriate management objective. Please see chapter 2 for information on timber suitability and plan components for harvest on lands identified as both suitable and unsuitable for timber production. The Sioux Geographic Area contributes a small proportion of the forestwide total area of lands suitable for timber production as displayed in table 38.

**Table 38. Lands suitable for timber production in the Sioux Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| <b>Sioux Geographic Area</b>                  | <b>Acres</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Percentage of Forestwide Total<sup>2</sup></b> |
|---|--------------|--|---|
| Forested acres suitable for timber production | 56,779       | 35   | 10  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands suitable for timber production forestwide, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## **Plan Components—Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL)**

### **Desired Conditions (SX-DC-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The North Cave Hills retains the characteristics, physical integrity, setting, cultural, archaeological and traditional resource values that qualify it as a traditional use area, National Register District, and sacred site.
- 02** The Chalk Buttes embody a tribal cultural landscape significant to ongoing traditional cultural, spiritual, ceremonial and religious practices of the Northern Cheyenne, Sioux, and Assiniboiné Tribes.

### **Goals (SX-GO-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest protects and honors ongoing traditional use and practices and the tribal cultural landscape in the North Cave Hills through continued consultation with the associated Tribes.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest protects and honors ongoing traditional use and practices and the tribal cultural landscape in the Chalk Buttes through continued consultation with the associated Tribes.

### **Guidelines (SX-GDL-TRIBAL)**

- 01** For the purpose of protecting religious or cultural sites of high importance to the Tribes where standard mitigation is not a feasible option, management activities should avoid disrupting these values within the North Cave Hills Archaeological and Traditional Use District or sites listed on the National Register of Historic Places in the Prehistoric Rock Art of the South Dakota Multiple Site Listing.
- 02** New spring development in the Chalk Buttes should avoid springs used for traditional cultural purposes to minimize conflicts with traditional cultural practices.

## **Plan Components—Chalk Buttes Backcountry Area (CBBCA)**

### **Desired Conditions (SX-DC-CBBCA)**

- 01** The backcountry area provides for less developed, semi-primitive recreation opportunities, both motorized and non-motorized in both summer and winter.

### **Standards (SX-STD-CBBCA)**

- 01** New permanent roads shall not be allowed; temporary roads may be allowed. Existing roads may be rerouted if necessary for safety, resource protection or enhancement, or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Road re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes.
- 02** New motorized trails shall not be constructed or designated.
- 03** New mountain bike trails shall not be constructed.

## Suitability (SX-SUIT-CBBCA)

- 01** The backcountry area is suitable for motorized transport on system motorized routes and areas. The backcountry area is suitable for mechanized transport. Mountain biking is suitable only on approved system routes.

# Ashland Geographic Area

## General Overview

The Ashland Geographic Area is in Rosebud and Powder River Counties, Montana. The national forest is largely bordered by private land. The Northern Cheyenne Indian Reservation is to the west of the national forest. Nearby towns include Ashland, Lame Deer, Broadus and Colstrip, Montana (maps in plan appendix B provide detailed information).

## Distinctive Roles and Contributions

### Ecological Characteristics

The Ashland Geographic Area stands out from the surrounding prairie because of its higher elevation and the ponderosa pines. The Ashland Ranger District is bordered to the east by the Powder River and to the west by the Tongue River. It is dissected by Otter Creek, a tributary to the Tongue River.

The geographic area is one of the largest unbroken blocks of forested public land in eastern Montana. Vegetation varies from dense stands of ponderosa pine, woody draws, and sagebrush to open, grassy uplands. Sandstone cliffs, ponderosa pines, grasslands, all interspersed by draws and ridges, are typical. About 50 percent of the area has the potential to be forested, but because of recent fires, forest cover is only 27 percent. The rest is a mix of shrubs, grasses, forbs and sparsely covered or non-vegetated areas. More than 600 plant species can be found here.

The geographic area contains a portion of the eastern extent of Idaho fescue (predominantly a montane species) in Montana and the western extent of big and little bluestems (predominantly tall grass prairie species). Unlike the montane units where cool season grasses dominate, there is a mix of cool season and warm season grasses found in this area.

The Ashland Ranger District has been significantly impacted by wildfires in recent years. Nearly 60 percent of the Ashland landscape has been affected by large fires since 1995. In 2012 alone, about one-third of this landscape area burned in the Ash Creek and Taylor Creek Fires. These large, recent fires have changed the amount and distribution of forest cover across the landscape, reducing the percent of land covered by forest from about 50 percent in 1995 to about 25 percent today. This change has probably changed the mix of wildlife in the area. For example, elk and woodpecker populations have increased dramatically in recent years.

### Social and Economic Characteristics

Rising out of the surrounding prairie, the higher elevation pine savanna of the national forest lands provides unique scenery in eastern Montana. The scenery of this geographic area is markedly different from the western part of the Custer Gallatin National Forest.

Livestock grazing in the Ashland geographic area is an important contribution to the social and economic importance of surrounding rural communities and to the associated traditional cultural landscapes.

Livestock grazing is an important source of income in the two-county area associated with Ashland District allotments. Local ranchers graze livestock typically during late spring, summer, and early fall. National forest grazing is generally an integral component of overall ranch operations for about 60 permittees.

The Ashland District manages one of the largest national forest livestock grazing programs. Primary rangelands within current allotments occur on about 86 percent of the Ashland District. Typically, the district provides forage for about 18,300 head of livestock (cattle and horses) on about 44 active grazing allotments. The water developments established for livestock provide habitat for some fish and wildlife populations.

Timber harvested on the district contributes to sawmill, log home, and post and pole production companies located within the supply-reach of the Custer Gallatin.

The elk herd has increased dramatically in the past 30 years, providing outstanding hunting opportunities. While hunting is one of the biggest recreational activities, this geographic area also has campgrounds, motorized trails, angling, wildlife watching, and opportunities for trapping.

### **Cultural and Historical Characteristics**

The Ashland Geographic Area lies between the northern and southern Northwestern Plains with its own unique subsistence strategies based on the environment. More than 400 sites are recorded within the geographic area, spanning at least the last 10,000 years.

The Tongue River Breaks is currently under study as a traditional cultural landscape. The 2010 Northern Cheyenne Ethnogeography of the Tongue River and Powder River Plateau studied this area to understand the nature of the Northern Cheyenne connection to and use of the national forest, and to identify culturally sensitive locations that may require special preservation and protective measures. The study confirmed the importance of the landscape to the Tribe as well as a better understanding of the Northern Cheyenne “settlement” of the breaks through Cheyenne homesteading. Along with the Northern Cheyenne Reservation, the national forest is central to the Northern Cheyenne aboriginal territory, the “heart” of their original territory, and the place that the Northern Cheyenne chose for their final stronghold.

Several Civilian Conservation Corps sites including roads, campgrounds, administrative sites, and trails were constructed by the Civilian Conservation Corps from 1933 through 1942 and due to their association, construction, and integrity qualify for nomination to the national register.

### **Vision for the Ashland Geographic Area**

The higher elevation, forested areas of national forest land offer distinct ecological conditions, wildlife habitat and recreation settings from the surrounding plains. The land supports people economically through grazing, timber production, and hunting. The Cook Mountain, King Mountain, and Tongue River Breaks areas offer a unique opportunity for nonmotorized recreation. The Tongue River Breaks area contains important spiritual, traditional use and ceremonial sites for to the Northern Cheyenne Tribe.

### **Designated Areas**

Designated areas are specific areas or features within the Custer Gallatin that have been given a permanent designation to maintain its unique character, purpose, or management emphasis. See

chapter 2 for forestwide direction of designated areas. Table 39 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the designated areas in this geographic area. These designations overlap.

**Table 39. Designated areas in the Ashland Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Designated Area            | Acres  | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|----------------------------|--------|--|--|
| Inventoried Roadless Areas | 39,332 | 9  | 5  |
| Research Natural Area      | 363    | 0.1  | 1  |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in a designation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent.

## Plan Land Allocations

Plan land allocations are areas developed in the planning process. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of plan land allocations. Table 40 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the plan land allocations in this geographic area.

**Table 40. Plan land allocations in the Ashland Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Plan Land Allocation                 | Acres  | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|--------------------------------------|--------|--|--|
| Cook Mountain Backcountry Area       | 9,794  | 2  | 5  |
| King Mountain Backcountry Area       | 12,189 | 3  | 6  |
| Tongue River Breaks Backcountry Area | 16,899 | 4  | 8  |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in an allocation National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands of the same allocation on the national forest, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Other Resource Emphasis Areas

### Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

The recreation opportunity spectrum influences the suitability of lands for various multiple uses or activities based on the desired conditions. See chapter 2 for a description of the recreation opportunity spectrum and its associated plan components. Table 41 displays the acreage of each recreation opportunity spectrum class for both summer and winter. In addition, the associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the recreation opportunity spectrum categories in this geographic area.

**Table 41. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes for the Ashland Geographic Area in summer and winter by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| <b>Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Class</b> | <b>Summer Acres</b> | <b>Summer Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Winter Acres</b> | <b>Winter Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> |
|--|---------------------|---|---------------------|---|
| Primitive                                    | 0                   | 0%  | 0                   | 0%  |
| Semi-primitive Nonmotorized                  | 33,578              | 8%  | 33,578              | 8%  |
| Semi-primitive Motorized                     | 319,673             | 73%   | 319,673             | 73%   |
| Roaded Natural                               | 82,883              | 19%   | 82,883              | 19%   |
| Rural  | 0                   | 0%  | 0                   | 0%  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Scenic Integrity Objectives

Table 42 displays the acreages; the locations of scenic integrity objectives for the Ashland Geographic Area are displayed in the scenery management maps (plan appendix B). Refer to FW-SCENERY for desired conditions and guidelines that apply to scenery.

**Table 42. Scenic integrity objectives for the Ashland Geographic Area by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| <b>Scenic Integrity Objective</b> | <b>Acres</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--|
| Very High                         | 0            | 0%   |
| High                              | 0            | 0%   |
| Moderate                          | 291,696      | 67%  |
| Low                               | 144,428      | 33%  |
| Very Low                          | 0            | 0%   |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Lands Suitable for Timber Production

Lands suitable for timber production are areas where timber production is an appropriate management objective. See chapter 2 for information on timber suitability and plan components for harvest on lands identified as both suitable and unsuitable for timber production. As displayed in table 43, roughly a third of this geographic area is identified as suitable for timber production, and this contributes a quarter of the forestwide total area of lands suitable for timber production.

**Table 43. Lands suitable for timber production in the Ashland Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| <b>Ashland Geographic Area</b>                | <b>Acres</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Percentage of Forestwide Total<sup>2</sup></b> |
|---|--------------|--|---|
| Forested acres suitable for timber production | 186,299      | 43   | 33  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands suitable for timber production Forestwide, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## **Plan Components—Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL)**

### **Desired Conditions (AL-DC-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The physical environment and visual setting of the Tongue River Breaks provide the qualities of spiritual; reflection, renewal and sanctuary important to ongoing traditional cultural practices of the Northern Cheyenne Tribe.
- 02** Northern Cheyenne tribal members have access to the Tongue River Breaks to practice spiritual, ceremonial and cultural activities.

### **Goals (AL-GO-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest protects and honors ongoing traditional use and practices and the tribal cultural landscape in the Tongue River Breaks through continued consultation with the Northern Cheyenne Tribe.

### **Guidelines (AL-GDL-TRIBAL)**

- 01** To minimize conflicts with traditional cultural practices, new spring development within the Ashland Geographic Area should avoid springs used for traditional cultural purposes.
- 02** Management activities within the Tongue River Breaks should not pose adverse effects to the traditional cultural practices and tribal cultural landscape that cannot be mitigated.

## **Plan Components—Ashland Backcountry Areas (ABCA)—Cook Mountain, King Mountain and Tongue River Breaks BCAs**

### **Desired Conditions (AL-DC-ABCA)**

- 01** Quiet, nonmotorized recreation opportunities predominate.
- 02** The physical environment and visual setting of the Tongue River Breaks provide the qualities of spiritual reflection, renewal, and sanctuary.

### **Standards (AL-STD-ABCA)**

- 01** New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.
- 02** New trails shall not be allowed.

### **Suitability (AL-SUIT-ABCA)**

- 01** The backcountry areas are not suitable for motorized transport. The backcountry areas are not suitable for mechanized transport, except use of game carts.

## **Pryor Mountains Geographic Area**

### **General Overview**

The Pryor Mountains is an island mountain range south of Billings, Montana. The national forest lands in the Pryor Mountains are in Carbon County, Montana. Several jurisdictions are associated with this relatively small landscape. The national forest lands are bordered to the north by the Crow Indian



Reservation. To the west, south and east, the national forest is bordered primarily by Bureau of Land Management lands, and some private land. Administration of the Pryor Mountains Wild Horse Range is shared between the Bureau of Land Management, the Custer Gallatin National Forest, and the Bighorn Canyon National Recreation Area (National Park Service). Closest towns include Bridger, Warren, and Pryor, Montana, and Lovell, Wyoming (maps in plan appendix B provide more detailed information).

## **Distinctive Roles and Contributions**

### **Ecological Characteristics**

The Pryor Mountains are a place of climatic, physiographic, and geologic diversity resulting in exceptional plant and animal diversity. Three floristic provinces converge here; the Northwestern Great Plains Province to the north and east, the Wyoming Basin Province to the south, and the Middle Rockies Province to the west. Each of these provinces possesses a unique climate and resulting floristic expression. The vegetation changes from the drier southern portion of Wyoming Basin desert shrubs, the drier eastern portions of the Northwestern Great Plains mid- and short-grass pine savannas, to the higher elevations of the Middle Rockies montane settings.

Pryor Mountain vegetation is largely influenced by sedimentary and limestone parent material. The setting is composed of subalpine meadows and ridges, montane coniferous forests, meadows, foothill shrublands and grasslands, and semi-desert vegetation. The area is about 60 percent forested, with the rest a mix of shrubs, grasses, forbs and sparsely vegetated areas. Within a relatively short distance of about 20 miles, one can find dramatically different vegetation types from semi-desert to subalpine areas.

The Pryor Mountains contain the eastern most extent of Douglas-fir in Montana and the northern most extent of Utah juniper (predominantly known from the Great Basin to the south). Found at the lower elevations of the national forest portion of the Pryor area, some species of desert plants reach the northern limit of their range. Many plant communities common in the Great Basin deserts reach their northern limit here.

The national forest portion of the Pryor Mountains contains a unique and diverse assemblage of botanical resources and plant associations within a relatively small area. The Pryor Mountains are important for scientific study and education. Due to the exceptional diversity in a small area, many researchers and educators in Earth sciences have recognized its scientific value. Because of a unique convergence of three floristic provinces (Northern Great Basin, Middle Rocky Mountains, and Northern Great Plains), the Pryor Mountains are considered a “botanical hotspot,” rich in species and community diversity. More than 400 plant species can be found here. Many rare plant species in the Pryor Mountains are associated with the Madison limestone geology of the area.

Black bears, bighorn sheep, and mule deer are abundant. The Pryor landscape represents a transition from the montane to the pine savanna ecosystem and contains a few notable Pine Savanna species such as eastern red bat, greater sage-grouse, and prairie vole.

The Pryor Mountains drain primarily to the Bighorn River; major waterways include the Crooked Creek, Sage Creek, and Bear Creek drainages. Sage Creek and Crooked Creek contain Yellowstone cutthroat trout. Bear Creek supports a great diversity of migratory and resident bird species. Crooked Creek and its tributaries, Cave Creek and Lost Water Creek, are dominated by karst topography.

The Pryor Mountains have the highest density of significant caves on the Custer Gallatin and within the Forest Service's Northern Region. Four known significant caves contain ice. One cave is among the largest known bat hibernacula sites in Montana.

### **Social and Economic Characteristics**

Road access is limited in the Pryor Mountains, and recreation use is relatively light compared to other parts of the Custer Gallatin. Recreation facilities include one developed campground, trails, and the Big Ice Cave and associated picnic area. The land contributes to permitted grazing. No timber harvest has occurred since the 1980s. Caves in the Pryor Mountains were mined for uranium in the past; no mineral development currently occurs in this geographic area. Visitors may view wild horses on the Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory.

The Pryor Mountains are important for scientific research and education. Due to the exceptional diversity in a small area and occurrence of karst landforms, many researchers and educators in Earth sciences have recognized its scientific value.

### **Cultural and Historical Characteristics**

The Pryor Mountains contain significant spiritual, traditional use, and ceremonial use sites for many Tribes including the Northern Cheyenne, Crow, Shoshone-Bannock, and Eastern Shoshone Tribes. It is considered a tribal cultural landscape integral to the maintenance of on-going traditional cultural practices of the Crow. The Pryor Mountains are used by the Crow Tribe on a regular basis for fasting, plant collection (medicinal), subsistence (teepee poles, fuel), and ceremonial (center pole for the sundance). Pryor Gap, just outside of Custer Gallatin lands, is significant not only in Crow history as a major travel route, but also having great spiritual significance since they believe it is the home of the Little People. Other areas of the Pryor Mountains are associated with fasting sites of individuals important to Crow history such as Plenty Coups.

Dryhead Overlook is a traditional cultural property with a series of vision quest and fasting beds, rock cairns, stone circles, and rock alignments located along the eastern scarp of East Pryor Mountain. Known to the Crow as the "Place Where They Saw the Rope" it is considered a sacred landscape to the Tribe, and is honored as a place where several Crow leaders and chiefs fasted in the difficult transition to reservation life. Recent offerings observed indicate the practice continues today.

## **Vision for the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area**

At the crossroads of three distinct ecological provinces, the Pryor Mountains offer exceptional plant and animal diversity, unique geology, and opportunities for research and education. Limited road access to high elevation areas and limestone-rimmed canyons offers visitors a sense of remoteness and discovery. The Pryor Mountain wild horse herd is valued and observed by many people. Livestock grazing supports local ranches. Tribal members continue to have access to the Pryor Mountains for the exercise of reserved treaty rights, and the practice of spiritual, ceremonial and traditional cultural activities.

### **Designated Areas**

Designated areas are specific areas or features within the Custer Gallatin that have been given a permanent designation to maintain its unique character, purpose, or management emphasis (see chapter 2 for forestwide direction of designated areas).

Table 44 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the designated areas in this geographic area. Some designated areas overlap.

**Table 44. Designated areas in the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Designated Area            | Acres  | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|----------------------------|--------|--|--|
| Inventoried Roadless Areas | 10,422 | 14   | 1  |
| Research Natural Areas     | 2,809  | 4  | 10                                       |
| Wild Horse Territory       | 4,396  | 6  | 100                                      |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in a designation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of total National Forest System lands of the same designation on the Custer Gallatin, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Land Allocations

Plan land allocations are areas developed in the planning process. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of plan land allocations. Table 45 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the plan land allocations in this geographic area.

**Table 45. Plan land allocations in the Pryor Mountain Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Plan Land Allocation                          | Acres  | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|---|--------|--|--|
| Lost Water Canyon Recommended Wilderness Area | 8,168  | 11   | 6  |
| Bear Canyon Recommended Wilderness Area       | 10,662 | 14   | 8  |
| Big Pryor Mountain Backcountry Area           | 12,610 | 17   | 6  |
| Punch Bowl Backcountry Area                   | 6,097  | 8  | 3  |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in an allocation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands of the same allocation on the national forest, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Eligible Wild and Scenic Rivers

Table 46 and associated map(s) (see plan appendix E) display the eligible wild and scenic rivers in this geographic area.

**Table 46. Eligible wild and scenic rivers in the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area, with tentative classification and outstandingly remarkable values**

| River            | Tentative Classification | Outstandingly Remarkable Value(s)     |
|------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Bear Creek       | Scenic                   | Wildlife                              |
| Cave Creek       | Wild                     | Scenery, Geology                      |
| Crooked Creek    | Wild, Scenic             | Scenery, Geology, Heritage, Fisheries |
| Lost Water Creek | Wild                     | Scenery, Geology, Heritage            |

## Other Resource Emphasis Areas

### Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

The recreation opportunity spectrum influences the suitability of lands for various multiple uses or activities based on the desired conditions. See chapter 2 for a description of the recreation opportunity spectrum and its associated plan components. Table 47 displays the acreage of each recreation opportunity spectrum class for both summer and winter. In addition, the associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the recreation opportunity spectrum categories in this geographic area.

**Table 47. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes for the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area in summer and winter by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Class | Summer Acres | Summer Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Winter Acres | Winter Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|---|--------------|---|
| Primitive                             | 0            | 0%  | 0            | 0%  |
| Semi-primitive Nonmotorized           | 27,748       | 37%   | 27,748       | 37%   |
| Semi-primitive Motorized              | 37,307       | 50%   | 37,307       | 50%   |
| Roaded Natural                        | 10,012       | 13%   | 10,012       | 13%   |
| Rural                                 | 0            | 0%  | 0            | 0%  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Scenic Integrity Objectives

Table 48 displays the acreages, and the locations of scenic integrity objectives for the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area are displayed in the scenery management maps (plan appendix B). Please refer to FW-SCENERY for desired conditions and guidelines that apply to scenery.

**Table 48. Scenic integrity objectives for the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| Scenic Integrity Objective | Acres  | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> |
|----------------------------|--------|--|
| Very High                  | 18,830 | 25%  |
| High                       | 11,084 | 15%  |
| Moderate                   | 41,038 | 55%  |
| Low                        | 4,116  | 5%   |
| Very Low                   | 0      | 0%   |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Lands Suitable for Timber Production

Lands suitable for timber production are areas where timber production is an appropriate management objective. Please see chapter 2 for information on timber suitability and plan components for harvest on lands identified as both suitable and unsuitable for timber production. As displayed in table 49 the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area contributes a small proportion of the forestwide total area of lands suitable for timber production.

**Table 49. Lands suitable for timber production in the Pryor Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Pryor Mountains Geographic Area               | Acres  | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage of Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|---|--------|--|---|
| Forested acres suitable for timber production | 12,522 | 17   | 2   |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands suitable for timber production Forestwide, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Components– Grassland, Shrubland, Woodland, Riparian, Alpine and Sparse Vegetation (VEGNF)

### Introduction

The Pryor Mountain region is ecologically diverse and a concentrated area of high plant endemism. On National Forest System lands are 42 occurrences of 12 regional endemics only found in south-central Montana, in and near the Pryor Mountains, and adjacent Bighorn Basin in Wyoming. These globally rare species are: *Pedicularis pulchella* (mountain lousewort), *Musineon vaginatum* (Rydberg's Parsley), *Penstemon laricifolius* ssp. *laricifolius* (Larch-leaf Beardtongue), *Pyrrocoma carthamoides* var. *subsquarrosa* (Beartooth goldenweed), *Symphyotrichum molle* (soft aster), *Astragalus aretioides* (Sweetwater milkvetch), *Penstemon caryi* (Cary's beardtongue), *Erigeron allocotus* (Big Horn fleabane), *Erigeron parryi* (Parry's fleabane), *Shoshonea pulvinata* (shoshonea), *Stanleya tomentosa* (woolly prince's plume), and *Sullivantia hapemanii* var. *hapemanii* (Wyoming sullivantia). Although none of these species are currently considered threatened or endangered, areas of high endemism, such as the Pryor Mountains, are often important targets for conservation to prevent trends to future extinctions. Of these regional endemics, *Shoshonea pulvinata* and *Pyrrocoma carthamoides* var. *subsquarrosa* are identified as regional forester's species of conservation concern in the plan area.

The Pryor Mountains is also an area of concentrated occurrences of peripheral plant species found at the margin or edge of the species' distribution range. Occurring on National Forest System lands are 47 occurrences of 16 peripheral plant species. These peripheral species are: *Juniperus osteosperma* (Utah juniper), *Kobresia simpliciuscula* (simple kobresia), *Asplenium trichomanes-ramosum* (limestone maidenhair spleenwort), *Cirsium pulcherrimum* (Wyoming thistle), *Tetraneuris torreyana* (Torrey bitterweed), *Pedicularis pulchella* (mountain lousewort), *Penstemon laricifolius* ssp. *laricifolius* (Larch-leaf Beardtongue), *Pyrrocoma carthamoides* var. *subsquarrosa* (Beartooth goldenweed), *Symphyotrichum molle* (soft aster), *Astragalus aretioides* (Sweetwater milkvetch), *Penstemon caryi* (Cary's beardtongue), *Erigeron allocotus* (Big Horn fleabane), *Erigeron parryi* (Parry's fleabane), *Shoshonea pulvinata* (shoshonea), *Stanleya tomentosa* (woolly prince's plume), and *Sullivantia hapemanii* var. *hapemanii* (Wyoming sullivantia). Peripheral species are geographic outliers likely to occur in ecologically marginal or stressful conditions. Many species at the edge of their range occur in unusual or atypical habitats. Distinct traits found in peripheral populations may be critical to the species, allowing adaptation in the face of environmental change. Peripheral populations can be genetically distinct because of divergent natural selection. Environments continually change; to survive, organisms must have genetic variability that allows them to evolve. Many consider the species periphery one the most active regions of speciation. Conservation of peripheral populations may be beneficial to the protection of the evolutionary process and the environmental systems that are likely to generate future evolutionary diversity.

In recognition of the botanically rich area, the Montana Native Plant Society designated close to 115,000 acres of National Forest System lands, Bureau of Land Management lands, and other lands as an Important Plant Area in the southern Pryor Mountain area. The Important Plant Area program has no regulatory authority, but important plant area recognition is a means of making land managers aware of the special value of the land they manage. A potential botanical special area in the Pryor Mountains is pending further review by the national forest and regional staff (undetermined location and acreage). A botanical special area for the National Forest System portion of the Important Plant Area, along with the remaining National Forest System lands in the Pryor Mountains will require future evaluation and collaboration with adjacent Bureau of Land Management and National Park Service prior to any designation as a proposed or established special botanical area. Existing land allocations between the Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management currently provide protection for the botanical resources in much of this important plant area. Forest Service's Lost Water Canyon Research Natural Area and Bureau of Land Management's nearby East Pryor Area of Critical Environmental Concern also recognize and highlight the importance and protection of botanical resources in the area. Similarly, the Bureau of Land Management's nearby Burnt Timber Canyon, East Pryor, and Bighorn Tack-On Wilderness Study Areas provide protection to unique plant assemblages that also offers more protection of botanical resources of the overall Pryor Mountain area.

To help maintain or restore resilient ecosystems for the plant and animal diversity and conservation values of the Pryor Mountains into the future and not to foreclose options for future special area designation, an emphasis on weed prevention, detection, and control is recognized in the Pryor Mountains. Aggressive invasive plants that potentially pose a threat to these species and ecosystems include, but are not limited to, spotted knapweed, houndstongue, Dalmatian toadflax, leafy spurge, cheatgrass, and Canada thistle. These invasive species are currently more prevalent along Forest Service system roads and motorized trails, in burned areas, and in recently acquired lands.

Forestwide plan components found in terrestrial ecosystems, invasive species, and watershed, aquatic, and riparian ecosystems also contribute to the following Pryor Mountains Geographic Area plan components.

#### Desired Conditions (PR-DC-VEGNF)

- 01** The Pryor Mountains provide resilient ecosystems and conservation values that retain the values associated with future potential designation as a proposed or established botanical special area.
- 02** The Pryor Mountains provide resilient habitat conditions for the area's regional endemic and peripheral plant species' occurrences.
- 03** Public use, education, and enjoyment of the area supports conservation of the special botanical values.

#### Goals (PR-GO-VEGNF)

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates and cooperates with Tribes, Federal, State, and County agencies; non-government organizations; permittees; and adjacent landowners to support landscape ecological diversity and conservation of recognized values.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates and cooperates with researchers and educators in Earth sciences support important scientific research, monitoring, and education in the Pryor Mountains.

### **Standards (PR-STD-VEGNF)**

- 01** Invasive species treatments in locations of regional endemic and peripheral plant occurrences shall use methods that are not detrimental to the long-term persistence of the species.
- 02** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed within regional endemic and peripheral plant occurrences.

### **Guidelines (PR-GDL-VEGNF)**

- 01** To retain conservation values, mining activities should be managed to minimize impacts to regional endemic and peripheral plant occurrences.
- 02** To retain their conservation values, new allotment infrastructure should be located to minimize livestock impacts on regional endemic and peripheral plant occurrences that are susceptible to livestock impacts.
- 03** To maintain Utah juniper habitats, live Utah juniper trees should not be cut except for purposes of human safety or research.

## **Plan Components—Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL)**

### **Desired Conditions (PR-DC-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The Pryor Mountains embody the characteristics and values of a tribal cultural landscape significant to ongoing traditional cultural practices of the Crow Tribe.
- 02** Tribal members continue to have access to the Pryor Mountains for the exercise of reserved treaty rights, and the practice of spiritual, ceremonial and traditional cultural activities.
- 03** Visitor use and management activities have minimal effect to ongoing Crow traditional cultural activities.

### **Goals (PR-GO-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest protects and honors Crow reserved treaty rights, tribal cultural landscape, and traditional use in the Pryor Mountains through continued consultation with the Crow Tribe.

### **Guidelines (PR-GDL-TRIBAL)**

- 01** New recreation opportunities should be designed and managed to not interrupt ongoing Crow traditional cultural activities.

## **Plan Components—General Recreation (REC)**

### **Desired Conditions (PR-DC-REC)**

- 01** Public access to Big Ice Cave provides a recreational and educational opportunity.

### **Goals (PR-GO-REC)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates visitor access to the Pryor Mountains with the Crow Tribe, Bureau of Land Management, Bureau of Indian Affairs and National Park Service.

## **Plan Components–Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory (WHT)**

### **Introduction**

The Wild Free-Roaming Horse and Burro Act of 1971 (P.L. 92-195), as amended by the Federal Land Policy and Management Act of 1976 and the Public Rangelands Improvement Act of 1978, established wild free-roaming horses as a part of the natural system and are to be managed along with other multiple uses.

The Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory is a designated area on National Forest System lands that adjoins other portions of the overall Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Range, which is jointly managed with the Bureau of Land Management as lead agency and National Park Service (Bighorn Canyon National Recreation Area). Of the approximate 42,000-acre range, about 10 percent is comprised of National Forest System lands. The Bureau of Land Management, Forest Service, and National Park Service work cooperatively in the long-term management of the wild horse range. Each agency has certain management and decision-making authorities related to their respective roles and jurisdictions in the management of the range.

Wild horse viewing is a primary recreation activity that most often occurs during the warmer months of the year, especially during foaling season. Wild horse photography tours and viewing tours require special use permits.

The Wild Free-Roaming Horse and Burro Act of 1971 (P.L. 92-195), as amended, 36 CFR 222, Forest Service Manual 2260, and the jointly developed Bureau of Land Management, Forest Service, National Park Service Wild Horse Range, and the Territory Herd Management Area Plan guides management of the wild horse territory.

### **Desired Conditions (PR-DC-WHT)**

- 01** Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory maintains a thriving ecological balance with other resources and activities.

### **Goals (PR-GO-WHT)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates and cooperates with Bureau of Land Management as the lead agency to achieve efficient and successful management of the entire Pryor Mountain wild horse range.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest coordinates with the Bureau of Land Management, and other Federal and State agencies to maintain or enhance wild horse habitat and appropriate management level in a manner which is compatible with wildlife habitat and population numbers.

### **Standards (PR-STD- WHT)**

- 01** New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.
- 02** New energy or utility structures shall not be allowed.
- 03** New developed recreation sites shall not be allowed.
- 04** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.



- 05 New range improvements shall not attract horses into the Lost Water Canyon Research Natural Area or Lost Water Canyon Recommended Wilderness Area.
- 06 New trails shall not be allowed.

#### Suitability (PR-SUIT-WHT)

- 01 Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory is not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest or fuels management, is suitable to achieve desired conditions such as for public safety, wild horse habitat enhancement, or ecological restoration.
- 02 Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory is not suitable for permitted livestock grazing.

### Plan Components–Big Pryor Backcountry Area

#### Desired Conditions (PR-DC-PRBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area provides for less developed, semi-primitive recreation opportunities, both motorized and nonmotorized in both summer and winter.
- 02 Traditional Tribal uses are available in a largely undeveloped setting.

#### Standards (PR-STD-PRBCA)

- 01 New permanent roads shall not be allowed; temporary roads may be allowed. Existing roads may be rerouted if necessary for safety, resource protection or enhancement, or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Road re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes.
- 02 New motorized and mountain bike trails shall not be constructed or designated, except for reroutes of existing trails necessary for safety, resource protection or enhancement, or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Trail re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes.

#### Suitability (PR-SUIT-PRBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area is suitable for motorized transport on system motorized routes and areas. The backcountry area is suitable for mechanized transport. Mountain biking is suitable only on approved system routes.

### Plan Components–Punch Bowl Backcountry Area (PBBCA)

#### Desired Conditions (PR-DC-PBBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area provides for less developed, semi-primitive recreation opportunities; nonmotorized in summer and motorized in winter.
- 02 Traditional Tribal uses are available in a largely undeveloped setting.

#### Standards (PR-STD-PBBCA)

- 01 New permanent roads shall not be allowed; temporary roads may be allowed.

### Suitability (PR-SUIT-PBBCA)

- 01** The backcountry area is not suitable for summer motorized transport. The backcountry area is suitable for winter motorized over-snow transport. The backcountry area is not suitable for mechanized transport, except use of game carts.

## Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area

### General Overview

The Absaroka Beartooth Mountains are in Park, Sweet Grass, Stillwater, and Carbon Counties, Montana. This geographic area is bordered by private land to the north, east, and west, and to the south by Yellowstone National Park and the Shoshone National Forest in Wyoming. Nearby towns include Gardiner, Cooke City, Livingston, Big Timber, Columbus, and Red Lodge. The geographic area is part of the Greater Yellowstone Area.

This landscape area is characterized by distinct mountain ranges dissected by large rivers and streams. The highlands are composed of alpine ridges, mountain peaks, cirques, moraines, tundra plateaus, coniferous forests, meadows, and foothill shrublands and grasslands. The Beartooth Mountains contain the highest peaks in Montana and the largest expanse of alpine plateaus in the lower 48 states. Through the valleys flow the Yellowstone, Boulder, and Stillwater Rivers, and creeks such as East Rosebud, West Rosebud, and Rock Creek. The Absaroka-Beartooth designated wilderness area is found here.

Public access, numerous recreation facilities, and relative proximity to some of Montana's biggest towns (Bozeman and Billings) mean this area is highly visited. The only palladium and platinum mines in the country are located here (maps in plan appendix B provide detailed information).

### Distinctive Roles and Contributions

#### Ecological Characteristics

The montane vegetation in the Absaroka and Beartooth Mountains is underlain by granitic, volcanic, and some sedimentary parent material. The setting is composed of alpine ridges, mountain peaks, cirques, moraines, tundra plateaus, coniferous forests (mainly cone-bearing trees), meadows, and foothill shrublands and grasslands. Overall, the landscape is about 70 percent forested; the rest is a mix of shrubs, grasses, forbs, and sparsely covered or non-vegetated areas. Montana Natural Heritage Program cites 188 vegetation types around the mountainous areas. The alpine areas alone contain over 400 plant species.

The Beartooth Mountains are home to the highest peaks in Montana, with over 20 peaks exceeding 12,000 feet. Some 15 percent of the glaciers in the Northern Rockies are in the Beartooth Mountains. The Beartooth Mountains feature expansive alpine plateaus with unique plant communities and one of the largest number of tundra species occurring in the lower 48 states. Roughly 50 percent of the Beartooth Mountain flora is also found in the arctic, while the flanks of Line Creek Plateau provide habitat for some of the Bighorn Basin endemic and globally rare species.

The Absaroka Mountains range about 150 miles from their northern end near Livingston, Montana, south to form the eastern boundary of Yellowstone National Park, and finally meeting the Wind River Range in Wyoming. The Absaroka Mountains are more highly dissected than the neighboring Beartooth

Plateau. Karst topography occurs in limestone areas along northern and eastern edges of range; a notable location is Natural Bridge on the Boulder River.

The land drains to the Yellowstone River, through many large drainages including the Clark's Fork of the Yellowstone, Slough Creek, the Stillwater and Boulder Rivers, and East Rosebud, West Rosebud, and Rock Creeks. Many streams contain native Yellowstone cutthroat trout; some with particularly important conservation populations.

The area is home to grizzly bears, wolverines, bison, bald eagles, gray wolves, and bighorn sheep and a diverse assemblage of native wildlife. Most of the geographic area is wilderness or inventoried roadless area. When coupled with nearby Yellowstone National Park and wilderness on the Shoshone National Forest, the area provides a large expanse of largely undeveloped wildlife habitat.

### Social and Economic Characteristics

The Absaroka Beartooth Geographic Area has a history of timber, grazing, mining, and recreation. Locatable mineral activities that take place on the Custer Gallatin contribute significant economic, social, and recreational benefits to local and regional interests. Sibanye Stillwater Mining Company operates two platinum and palladium mines within the Stillwater Complex area. The Stillwater Complex is the only geologic structure in the United States which currently produce platinum and palladium minerals as a primary product. The Stillwater Complex likely houses enough platinum and palladium resources necessary to support mining of these minerals for the next 30 to 50 years.

The high elevations are headwaters to the Yellowstone River and tributaries such as the Boulder and Stillwater Rivers. Vast snowpack contributes to downstream water use, including West Fork Rock Creek, the municipal water source for Red Lodge.

The spectacular landscape, public access, numerous recreation facilities and proximity to Yellowstone National Park make this geographic area an international destination. Coupled with relative proximity to some of Montana's biggest towns (Bozeman and Billings) means this area is highly visited in all seasons. Spectacular scenery is easily accessed, particularly from the Beartooth Highway, one of the most scenic drives in the country. Popular activities include camping, motorized and nonmotorized trail use, hunting, fishing, rafting, skiing, snowshoeing, and snowmobiling. Red Lodge Mountain provides downhill skiing, and the Cooke City area is renowned for snowmobiling.

Over 900,000 acres are within the Absaroka-Beartooth Wilderness, offering exceptional opportunities for solitude and for primitive and unconfined recreation.

### Cultural and Historical Characteristics

This geographic area was once within the boundaries of the Crow reservation and a number of precontact and contact sites are recorded along the Front Range and along the river and creek corridors, which provided travel routes from the high plateaus and mountains to the plains. These trails were used by several western Tribes now known as the Nez Perce, Shoshone-Bannock, Confederated Salish Kootenai, Eastern Shoshone, and Arapahoe as they ventured onto the plains for bison hunts. Crow occupation and use of this geographic area is reflected in many of the place names.

National register sites in the geographic area include the OTO Homestead and Dude Ranch, the Camp Senia Historic District, the Rock Creek Ranger Station, Red Lodge-Cooke City Approach Road, and Civilian Conservation Corps sites. The Main Boulder Ranger Station represents one of the earliest facilities in the

Forest Service serving as a district headquarters and home to Ranger Harry S. Kaufman and family for almost forty years. It has been restored to its original character and now houses a museum that depicts the living and working conditions at what was once remote ranger station.

The OTO Homestead and Dude Ranch, located north of Gardiner, Montana, represents one of the first dude ranches in the west (perhaps the first in Montana) and was an important early Dude Ranch in the Yellowstone Park area. The evolving dude ranch began humbly about 1898 at the homestead and grew into a business opportunity. Its hey-day was in the 1920s, and entertained America's wealthy, especially eastern bankers and businessmen, and European aristocrats. The OTO was acquired in the 1990s through a land exchange, and has been the focus of years of restoration, training several volunteers and forest service managers in historic preservation through partnerships and programs such as Passports in Time and Heritage Expeditions. The OTO Homestead and Dude ranch was listed on the National Register of Historic Places in 2004.

The Camp Senia Historic District, located near Red Lodge, Montana, consists of 20 buildings and structures associated with the operation of the dude ranch from 1919 until 1929 and 10 historic buildings constructed under Forest Service special use permits between circa 1922 and 1930. All the historic buildings represent the western rustic architectural style. The Rock Creek Ranger Station Historic District is also near Red Lodge, Montana, and is significant for its role as an administrative facility for the Rock Creek Ranger District of the Beartooth, and subsequent Custer National Forest, from 1908 to 1962.

The Red Lodge-Cooke City Approach Road (includes segment of the Beartooth National Forest Scenic Byway) was the first and most substantial road to be constructed under the Park Approaches Act, passed in 1931. Its completion in 1936, linking the town of Red lodge, Cooke City, and Yellowstone Park, opened new territory for purposes of recreational development and substantially increased tourism in Yellowstone National Park and the region. Its presence facilitated the development of outdoor recreational facilities such as campgrounds, cabin lease sites, and trailheads on adjacent Forest Service lands, and furthered the use of these areas by private individuals traveling in their own vehicles. The Beartooth National Forest Scenic Byway segment has been dubbed by Charles Kuralt as “the most beautiful roadway in America.”

Several developments including roads, campgrounds, administrative sites, and trails were constructed by the Civilian Conservation Corps from 1933 through 1942. Due to their association, construction, and integrity, many qualify for nomination to the national register.

## **Vision for the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area**

Largely wilderness and part of the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem, the Absaroka Beartooth landscape provides outstanding opportunities for solitude, primitive recreation, and a diversity of wildlife species. Front country areas are actively managed transitioning to private land beyond the national forest boundary. Visitors find varied recreation opportunities, especially along rivers and streams. One of the world's few platinum and palladium mines co-exists on this landscape.

## **Designated Areas**

Designated areas are specific areas or features within the Custer Gallatin that have been given a permanent designation to maintain its unique character, purpose or management emphasis. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of designated areas. Table 50 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the designated areas in this geographic area. Some designated areas overlap.

**Table 50. Designated areas in the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area by acreage and miles, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Designated Area  | Acres or Miles | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|--|----------------|--|--|
| Designated Wilderness - national forest acres          | 916,599        | 68   | 87                                       |
| Designated Wild and Scenic River- miles                | 20             | n/a  | 100                                      |
| Inventoried Roadless Areas - acres                     | 272,373        | 20   | 32                                       |
| Research Natural Areas - acres                         | 22,807         | 2  | 79                                       |
| National Recreation Trails - miles                     | 12             | n/a  | 10                                       |
| National Historic Trail -miles                         | 8              | n/a  | 50                                       |
| National Forest Scenic Byway/All-American Road - miles | 24/17          | n/a  | 100                                      |
| West Fork Rock Creek Municipal Watershed - acres       | 18,047         | 1  | 21                                       |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in a designation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number. Not applicable to linear features.

2. Percentage of total National Forest System lands of the same designation on the Custer Gallatin, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Land Allocations

Plan land allocations are areas developed in the planning process. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of plan land allocations. Table 51 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the designated areas in this geographic area.

**Table 51. Plan land allocations in the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Plan Land Allocation  | Acres   | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|---|---------|--|--|
| Timberline Recommended Wilderness Area  | 802     | 0.1  | 0.6                                      |
| Bad Canyon Backcountry Area   | 18,712  | 1  | 9  |
| Main Fork Rock Creek Recreation Emphasis Area   | 8,803   | 0.7  | 4  |
| Cooke City Winter Recreation Emphasis Area  | 24,130  | 2  | 11                                       |
| Main Boulder River Recreation Emphasis Area   | 7,367   | 0.5  | 3  |
| Yellowstone River Recreation Emphasis Area (also 1,271 acres in Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area) | 895     | 0.1  | 0.4                                      |
| Stillwater Complex  | 101,832 | 8  | 100                                      |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in an allocation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands of the same allocation on the national forest, rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent.

## Eligible Wild and Scenic Rivers

Table 52 and associated map(s) (see plan appendix E) display the eligible wild and scenic rivers in this geographic area.

**Table 52. Eligible wild and scenic rivers in the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area, with tentative classification and outstandingly remarkable values**

| River                              | Tentative Classification | Outstandingly Remarkable Value(s)      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Boulder River                      | Recreational             | Recreation, Scenery, Geology, Heritage |
| Clarks Fork Yellowstone River      | Wild, Recreational       | Scenery                                |
| Lake Abundance Creek               | Wild                     | Fisheries                              |
| Lake Fork of Rock Creek            | Wild, Recreational       | Recreation, Scenery                    |
| Pine Creek                         | Wild, Recreational       | Recreation, Scenery                    |
| Rock Creek #668                    | Recreational             | Recreation, Scenery, Heritage          |
| Rock Creek #665                    | Wild                     | Fisheries                              |
| Slough Creek & unnamed tributaries | Wild, Scenic             | Fisheries                              |
| Stillwater River                   | Wild, Recreational       | Recreation, Scenery                    |
| West Boulder River                 | Wild                     | Recreation                             |
| West Fork Rock Creek               | Wild, Recreational       | Heritage, Scenery                      |
| West Fork Stillwater River         | Wild                     | Scenery                                |
| West Rosebud Creek                 | Wild                     | Scenery, Recreation                    |
| Woodbine Creek                     | Wild, Recreational       | Recreation, Scenery                    |
| Wounded Man Creek                  | Wild                     | Fisheries                              |
| Yellowstone River                  | Recreational             | Recreation, Scenery, Heritage          |

## Other Resource Emphasis Areas

### Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

The recreation opportunity spectrum influences the suitability of lands for various multiple uses or activities based on the desired conditions. See chapter 2 for a description of the recreation opportunity spectrum and its associated plan components. Table 53 displays the acreage of each recreation opportunity spectrum class for both summer and winter. In addition, the associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the recreation opportunity spectrum categories in this geographic area.

**Table 53. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes for the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area in summer and winter by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Class | Summer Acres | Summer Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Winter Acres | Winter Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|---|--------------|---|
| Primitive                             | 916,599      | 68%   | 916,599      | 68%   |
| Semi-primitive Nonmotorized           | 221,081      | 16%   | 150,566      | 11%   |
| Semi-primitive Motorized              | 116,782      | 9%  | 220,206      | 16%   |
| Roaded Natural                        | 57,777       | 4%  | 29,391       | 2%  |
| Rural                                 | 46,300       | 3%  | 41,778       | 3%  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Scenic Integrity Objectives

Table 54 displays the acreages, and the locations of scenic integrity objectives for the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area are displayed in the scenery management maps (plan appendix B). Refer to FW-SCENERY for desired conditions and guidelines that apply to scenery.

**Table 54. Scenic integrity objectives for the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| Scenic Integrity Objective | Acre    | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> |
|----------------------------|---------|--|
| Very High                  | 917,398 | 67%  |
| High                       | 35,524  | 3%   |
| Moderate                   | 361,407 | 27%  |
| Low                        | 44,197  | 3%   |
| Very Low                   | 0       | 0%   |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Lands Suitable for Timber Production

Lands suitable for timber production are areas where timber production is an appropriate management objective. See chapter 2 for information on timber suitability and plan components for harvest on lands identified as both suitable and unsuitable for timber production. As displayed in table 55, the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area contributes a relatively small proportion of the forestwide total area of lands suitable for timber production.

**Table 55. Lands suitable for timber production in the Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area  | Acre   | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage of Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|---|--------|--|---|
| Forested acres suitable for timber production | 80,111 | 6  | 14  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands suitable for timber production Forestwide, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Components—Stillwater Complex (SWC)

The Stillwater Complex hosts significant base, precious, and strategic minerals and has been mined since the later portions of the 19<sup>th</sup> century. Currently, the area hosts two large underground platinum and palladium mines. Both mines are operated by the Sibanye Stillwater Mining Company. The Nye Mine was commissioned in 1986 and the East Boulder Mine was commissioned in 2003. Both operations produce platinum and palladium minerals used primarily in air pollution abatement technologies. Other uses include high speed electronic and investment metals.

The Stillwater Complex is unique in its geology and geographic exposure, its continuity of ore grade, and scale of the mineral deposits. Given the most recent geologic and mineralogical assessments, it is likely that both large underground mines could be in operation throughout the lifespan of this plan. In recognition of the above information and the fact that mining produces specific surface and sub-surface types of disturbance inherent to the production of minerals, the Custer Gallatin has determined that additional desired conditions are warranted for this area (see map, plan appendix B).

### Desired Conditions (AB-DC-SWC)

- 01 Exploration, development, and production of palladium and platinum contributes unique and globally rare minerals for a variety of societal needs, including air pollution control technology.
- 02 Palladium and platinum mineral resources provide commodities for current and future generations commensurate with conservation of other resources.

### Plan Components—Line Creek Plateau Research Natural Area

Management and protection of the Line Creek Plateau Research Natural Area is to be directed toward maintaining natural ecological processes. The Custer Gallatin National Forest portion of the Line Creek Plateau Research Natural Area predominantly exhibits a Rocky Mountain Alpine Tundra vegetation type with examples of alpine turf, alpine wetland, alpine snowbed, krumholtz, whitebark pine forest, and subalpine fir forest. In addition to the forestwide direction for research natural areas, the following direction pertains to the Custer Gallatin National Forest portion of the Line Creek Plateau Research Natural Area.

### Standards (AB-STD-RNA)

- 01 Executive Order 5949 (November 1932) established a state easement extending 250 feet from either side of the centerline on U.S. Highway 212 within the Line Creek Plateau Research Natural Area. Staging areas for material stockpiles and equipment within the 250-foot centerline easement for future highway maintenance projects on Highway 212 shall only be allowed with mitigation for at-risk plant species.

### Suitability (AB-SUIT-RNA)

- 01 Hitching, tethering, or picketing horses or other livestock is not suitable within 200 feet of a stream or other free-flowing water.
- 02 Camping (including building a fire, other than fires confined to liquid fuel stoves) is not suitable within 200 feet of any lakeshore or 100 feet of any live stream or free-flowing water.
- 03 Mountain biking is suitable only on approved system trails.
- 04 Summer motorized transport is only suitable on Highway 212 and to Line Creek Trailhead (Road #2124) parking area.
- 05 Winter motorized transport (snowmobile use) is only suitable within the Highway 212, 250-foot centerline easement.
- 06 Fish stocking by Montana Fish, Wildlife, and Parks is only suitable in Line Lake, which was stocked prior to research natural area designation.

### Plan Components—OTO Ranch (OTO)

#### Introduction

Acquired under the Northern Yellowstone Winter Range acquisition project in 1991, 31 acres of the OTO property encompassing the guest ranch complex, the lower residence and caretaker residence, and trailhead were classified as administrative sites, and the remaining 3,232 acres of OTO lands acquired were classified as grizzly habitat/big game winter range. Accordingly, management strategies are to be



applied to the OTO acquired lands as appropriate to their classified use. Since acquisition, the ranch complex has undergone several restoration and stabilization projects through the dedicated efforts of volunteers under the Passports in Time and other public stewardship programs.

### Goals (AB-GO-OTO)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships to provide a venue for conservation education, stewardship and innovative opportunities, while preserving the historic significance and use of National Registered Listed OTO Homestead and Dude Ranch property for generations to come.

### Standards (AB-STD-OTO)

- 01 Non-administrative use of the OTO facilities (such as buildings) shall be authorized by special use permit or agreement.
- 02 Use of the OTO facilities authorized by permit or agreement, shall be limited to group size of no more than 75 individuals for overnight use and no more than 100 individuals for day use.
- 03 The OTO administrative facilities shall not be used through a rental program.

### Guidelines (AB-GDL-OTO)

- 01 In order to provide for grizzly bear security and minimize risk of grizzly bear-human conflicts, use at OTO facilities authorized by permit or agreement, should be limited to no more than one week of overnight use and no more than three weeks of day use during the fall (hyperphagia) season of October 1 to December 1.
- 02 In order to provide for grizzly bear security and minimize risk of grizzly bear-human conflicts, use at OTO facilities authorized by permit or agreement, should be limited to no more than two weeks of overnight use and no more than two weeks of day use during the spring den emergence season of March 1 and June 15.

### Suitability (AB-SUIT-OTO)

- 01 The OTO administrative site is suitable for general public use for purposes that do not require access to the buildings.

## **Plan Components–Beartooth National Forest Scenic Byway and All-American Road (NSB)**

### Introduction

The 68-mile Beartooth Highway possesses scenic, natural, historical, cultural, archaeological, and recreational qualities. It is the highest elevation highway in the Northern Rockies and provides dramatic views, extensive recreation opportunities, and supreme wildlife watching. A 1989 designation of National Forest Scenic Byway covers 60 of those miles. About 9 miles of the scenic byway on the west end, and about 15 miles on the east end are within the Custer Gallatin.

About 53 miles of this route, from Colter Pass on the west end to the national forest boundary on the east end, are also recognized by the high distinction of All-American Road. Approximately 2 miles on the west end and 15 miles on the east end are within the Custer Gallatin.

The Beartooth Highway is protected by a 250-foot from centerline withdrawal on each side of the road. Under Executive Order 5949, the corridor was withdrawn from settlement, location, sale, entry, or other disposal and was reserved for park approach road purposes.

#### Desired Conditions (AB-DC-NSB)

- 01 The intrinsic scenic, natural, historical, cultural, archaeological, and recreational qualities for which the Beartooth National Forest Scenic Byway was designated are present along the Byway.

### **Plan Components–Bad Canyon Backcountry Area (BCBCA)**

#### Desired Conditions (AB-DC-BCBCA)

- 01 Quiet, nonmotorized recreation opportunities predominate.

#### Standards (AB-STD-BCBCA)

- 01 New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.

#### Suitability (AB-SUIT-BCBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area is not suitable for motorized transport. The backcountry area is not suitable for mechanized transport, except use of game carts.

### **Plan Components–Boulder River Recreation Emphasis Area (BRREA)**

#### Desired Conditions (AB-DC-BRREA)

- 01 The Boulder River Recreation Emphasis Area provides sustainable camping opportunities that balance the demand for camping amenities and the protection of the river corridor.
- 02 Outfitter guides provide opportunities for underrepresented groups, youth, seniors, and veterans and serve nearby communities.
- 03 Highly valued recreation resources, such as river access, are available for day use opportunities.

#### Goals (AB-GO-BRREA)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin Nation Forest seeks partnerships to provide sustainable recreation opportunities and ecological protection of the Boulder River corridor.

### **Plan Components–Cooke City Winter Recreation Emphasis Area (CCREA)**

#### Desired Conditions (AB-DC-CCREA)

- 01 Outfitter and guiding opportunities facilitate winter use and emphasize avalanche safety.

#### Goals (AB-GO-CCREA)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin Nation Forest works with the community of Cooke City to achieve a national and international destination for winter recreation.
- 02 The Custer Gallatin Nation Forest seeks partnerships for sustainable operation of the groomed snowmobile trail system of this recreation emphasis area.

- 03 The Custer Gallatin Nation Forest seeks partnerships and interagency cooperation to emphasize winter recreation safety.

## **Plan Components—Main Fork Rock Creek Recreation Emphasis Area (MFRCREA)**

### **Desired Conditions (AB-DC-RCREA)**

- 01 The Main Fork Rock Creek Recreation Emphasis Area provides sustainable recreational opportunities and settings that balances increasing demand for dispersed camping and the protection of the creek resource.
- 02 Highly valued recreation resources, such as creek access, are available for day use opportunities.
- 03 The transportation system provides for a range of motorized recreation opportunities that balances increasing demand commensurate with design, designated or intended use, and public safety.
- 04 Developed campgrounds provide capacity for expanded use.
- 05 Outfitter guides provide opportunities for underrepresented groups, youth, seniors, and veterans and serve nearby communities.

### **Goals (AB-GO-RCREA)**

- 01 The Custer Gallatin Nation Forest seeks partnerships to provide sustainable recreation opportunities and access in the Main Fork Rock Creek Recreation Emphasis Area.

### **Objectives (AB-OBJ-RCREA)**

- 01 Per decade, one concentrated dispersed recreation camping area will be developed or converted to a higher developed recreation site.

### **Standards (AB-STD-RCREA)**

- 01 New motorized trails shall not be constructed or designated, except for reroutes of existing trails necessary for safety, resource protection or enhancement, or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Trail re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes.

## **Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area**

### **General Overview**

The Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains are characterized by island mountain ranges in Gallatin, Park, and Meagher Counties, Montana. The national forest is largely bordered by private land. Land ownership in the Crazy Mountains is a checkerboard pattern of national forest and private sections. The northern portion of the Crazy Mountains is administered by the Helena-Lewis and Clark National Forest. Nearby towns include Bozeman, Belgrade, Livingston, and Big Timber, Montana. The geographic area is part of the Greater Yellowstone Area (maps in plan appendix B provide detailed information).

## Distinctive Roles and Contributions

### Ecological Characteristics

This geographic area consists of three mountain ranges located north and northwest of Interstate Highway 90. The mountains are composed of alpine ridges, mountain peaks, cirques, moraines, tundra plateaus, coniferous forests, meadows, and foothill grasslands. The Shields River separates the Bridger and Bangtail Mountains from the Crazy Mountains.

The Bridger Mountains rise from about 5,000 feet at their western base in the Gallatin Valley to just over 9,600 feet on Sacagawea Peak. Madison limestone and karst topography are exposed extensively in the range. Vegetation types in the Bridger Mountains include riparian woodlands and thickets, sagebrush-steppe, mountain grasslands, montane to alpine meadows, coniferous forests, rock outcrops and alpine flora at the highest elevations. Prevailing westerly winds collide with the Bridger Range to create updrafts, producing a consistent lift that facilitates flight and attracts migrating raptors as they head south in autumn. The Bridger Mountain flyway is particularly noted for large concentrations of golden eagles, but as many as 18 different species of raptors have been observed migrating along the range. The Bridger Mountains play an important role for wildlife connectivity, especially for wide-ranging dispersing species like grizzly bears.

The Bangtail Mountains are adjacent to and east of the Bridger Mountains. Bangtail Mountains are lower in elevation and do not have the alpine ridges, mountain peaks, or cirques of the Bridger and Crazy Mountains.

The Crazy Mountains are geologically unique in Montana, composed of resistant igneous intrusions and "hard baked sedimentary rocks. The Crazy Mountains, like the Bridger Mountains, were shaped by isolated mountain glaciers during the Pleistocene, and some small glaciers persist today. The Crazy Mountains are higher than the Bridger Mountains, rising to over 11,000 feet on Crazy Peak. The vegetation is mainly coniferous forests, meadows, foothill shrublands and grasslands and alpine vegetation at the highest elevations.

National natural landmarks identify and recognize the country's best examples of ecological and geological features. The 960-acre Middle Fork Canyon National Natural Landmark, located on the north end of the Bridger Mountains, features rocks that were deformed by tectonic movement. Eighty acres of the Landmark are on national forest lands. This geographic area also contains the Bangtail Botanical and Paleontological Special Area, which was designated for the area's Eocene-aged mammalian fossils and botanical values.

### Social and Economic Characteristics

With the proximity to growing towns such as Bozeman, Belgrade, and Livingston, recreation use is heavy, particularly in the Bridger and Bangtail Mountains. The most visited national forest trail in Montana, the "M" trail is in this geographic area. Both the popular Bridger Bowl Ski Area and Crosscut Mountain sports Center are in the Bridger Mountains. Campgrounds and motorized and nonmotorized trails offer recreation access.

Land ownership in the Crazy Mountains is a checkerboard pattern of national forest and private sections. Consequently, public access and public facilities such as trails are fewer in the Crazy Mountains than the nearby Bridger and Bangtail Mountains.

Lyman Creek in the Bridger Mountains contributes to Bozeman’s municipal water supply.

### Cultural and Historical Characteristics

As shared by the Crow, the Crazy Mountains are many things to the Apsaalooke nation: a sacred ceremonial range, cultural touchstone, repository of history and heritage, a living cultural landscape, a refuge, a hunting ground, a critical ecosystem, a wildlife sanctuary, a place of solitude, and an important part of both tribal and nontribal community values. The Crow Tribe call the Crazy Mountains Awaxaaippia meaning “high landscape that is jagged or rough and have a bad reputation or omen.” At least four prominent chiefs of the Crow Tribe fasted on the Crazy Mountains, and the prophetic “dreams” received affected Crow National policies towards “American” government. Vision quest and fasting bed structures have been located on three prominent peaks within the Crazies and other sites have been found along the flanks of these high peaks that may be related to this traditional cultural practice.

The Crazy Mountains are used for plant collection (medicinal, subsistence, and ceremonial), hunting, and as a place of solitude by the Crow. It is considered a living cultural landscape as these practices continue today. The Crazy Mountains are considered a traditional cultural landscape and have been proposed by the Crow Tribe for nomination to the National Register of Historic Places.

### Vision for the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area

All three mountain ranges support diverse activities on the landscape, including motorized and nonmotorized use, summer and winter recreation opportunities, grazing, timber, and hunting. Parts of the Crazy Mountains and Bridger Mountains both have large unroaded and undeveloped settings. The roaded northern Crazy Mountains is actively managed. The higher elevations of the Crazy Mountains provide for the exercise of reserved treaty rights, and the practice of spiritual, ceremonial and traditional cultural activities by the Crow Tribe. The Bridger and Bangtail Mountains are in close proximity to one of the largest towns in Montana and provide important value to the community and its economy. The Bridger Mountains also play an important role for wildlife connectivity, especially for wide-ranging dispersing species.

### Designated Areas

Designated areas are specific areas or features within the Custer Gallatin that have been given a designation to maintain its unique character, purpose or management emphasis. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of designated areas. Table 56 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the designated areas in this geographic area. Some designated areas overlap.

**Table 56. Designated areas in the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area by acreage and miles, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Designated Area                         | Acre<br>or Miles | Percentage of<br>Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage<br>Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|---|------------------|---|---|
| Inventoried Roadless Areas - acres      | 127,554          | 63  | 15  |
| Special Area - acres                    | 3,366            | 2   | 89  |
| National Natural Landmark - acres       | 80               | 0.4   | 6   |
| National Recreation Trail - miles       | 20               | n/a   | 16  |
| Lyman Creek Municipal Watershed - acres | 5,895            | 3   | 7   |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in a designation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent. Not applicable to linear features.

2. Percentage of total National Forest System lands of the same designation on the Custer Gallatin, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Land Allocations

Plan land allocations are areas developed in the planning process. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of plan land allocations. Table 57 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the plan land allocations in this geographic area.

**Table 57. Plan land allocations in the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Plan Land Allocation                              | Acres  | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|---|--------|--|--|
| South Crazy Mountains Recommended Wilderness Area | 9,619  | 5  | 7  |
| Crazy Mountains Backcountry Area                  | 30,642 | 15   | 15e                                      |
| Blacktail Peak Backcountry Area                   | 4,640  | 2  | 2  |
| Bridger Recreation Emphasis Area                  | 12,969 | 6  | 6  |
| Bridger Key Linkage area                          | 38,459 | 19   | 64                                       |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in an allocation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands of the same allocation on the national forest, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Eligible Wild and Scenic Rivers

Table 58 and associated map(s) (see plan appendix E) display the eligible wild and scenic rivers in this geographic area.

**Table 58. Eligible wild and scenic rivers in the Bridger, Bangtail and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area, with tentative classification and outstandingly remarkable values**

| River            | Tentative Classification | Outstandingly Remarkable Value(s) |
|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Big Timber Creek | Recreational             | Recreation, Scenery               |

## Other Resource Emphasis Areas

### Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

The recreation opportunity spectrum influences the suitability of lands for various multiple uses or activities based on the desired conditions. See chapter 2 for a description of the recreation opportunity and its associated plan components. Table 59 displays the acreage of each recreation opportunity spectrum class for both summer and winter. In addition, the associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the recreation opportunity spectrum categories in this geographic area.

**Table 59. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes for the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area in summer and winter by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| <b>Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Class</b> | <b>Summer Acres</b> | <b>Summer Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Winter Acres</b> | <b>Winter Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> |
|--|---------------------|---|---------------------|---|
| Primitive                                    | 0                   | 0%  | 0                   | 0%  |
| Semi-primitive Nonmotorized                  | 103,730             | 50%   | 81,521              | 40%   |
| Semi-primitive Motorized                     | 77,083              | 38%   | 99,265              | 48%   |
| Roaded Natural                               | 21,577              | 11%   | 21,599              | 11%   |
| Rural  | 2,758               | 1%  | 2,763               | 1%  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Scenic Integrity Objectives

Table 60 displays the acreages; the locations of scenic integrity objectives for the Bridger, Bangtail and Crazy Mountain Geographic Area are displayed in the scenery management maps (plan appendix B). Please refer to FW-SCENERY for desired conditions and guidelines that apply to scenery.

**Table 60. Scenic integrity objectives for the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| <b>Scenic Integrity Objective</b> | <b>Acres</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|--|
| Very High                         | 9,619        | 5%   |
| High                              | 0            | 0%   |
| Moderate                          | 155,344      | 76%  |
| Low                               | 40,184       | 20%  |
| Very Low                          | 0            | 0%   |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Lands Suitable for Timber Production

Lands suitable for timber production are areas where timber production is an appropriate management objective. See chapter 2 for information on timber suitability and plan components for harvest on lands identified as both suitable and unsuitable for timber production. As displayed in table 61 while nearly a quarter of this geographic area is identified as suitable for timber production, this contributes a small proportion of the forestwide total area of lands suitable for timber production.

**Table 61. Lands suitable for timber production in the Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| <b>Bridger, Bangtail, and Crazy Mountains Geographic Area</b> | <b>Acres</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Percentage of Forestwide Total<sup>2</sup></b> |
|---|--------------|--|---|
| Forested acres suitable for timber production                 | 50,947       | 25   | 9   |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands suitable for timber production Forestwide, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## **Plan Components–Wildlife (WL)**

### **Desired Conditions (BC-DC-WL)**

- 01** The Bridger migratory flyway provides conditions that facilitate raptor migration southward each fall.

### **Guidelines (BC-GDL-WL)**

- 01** To avoid aircraft collision with migrating raptors and minimize disturbance of raptors along this migratory route, Forest Service-authorized aircraft should not fly less than 500 feet above the Bridger Mountain Range ridgeline, or land within 500 feet of the ridgeline, during the fall raptor migration (September 1 through October 31), except for emergency purposes (such as fire suppression or search and rescue).

## **Plan Components–Areas of Tribal Importance (TRIBAL)**

### **Desired Conditions (BC-DC-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The Crazy Mountains embody a tribal cultural landscape significant to ongoing traditional cultural practices of the Crow Tribe.
- 02** Research, education, and interpretation of the Crazy Mountain tribal cultural landscape provides public benefits and enhances the understanding and appreciation of Crazy Mountain's natural environment, precontact, contact, and Crow traditional cultural values.

### **Goals (BC-GO-TRIBAL)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest protects and honors Crow treaty obligations, sacred land and traditional use in the Crazy Mountains through continued consultation with the Crow Tribe.

## **Plan Components–Land Status and Ownership (LAND)**

### **Goals (BC-GO-LAND)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with willing landowners and partners to consolidate ownership and acquire access in the Crazy Mountains.

## **Plan Components–Bangtail Special Area (BSA)**

### **Introduction**

The Bangtail Special Area predominantly exhibits a mountain meadow and subalpine vegetation type and research sites for paleontological resources. In addition to the forestwide direction for special areas, the following direction pertains to the Bangtail Special Area.

### **Desired Conditions (BC-DC-BSA)**

- 01** The Bangtail Special Area provides for scientific research opportunities on mountain meadow and subalpine ecosystems, and provides research sites for important paleontological resources.

### **Standards (BC-STD-BSA)**

- 01** Light machinery for paleontological excavation, and some prescribed fire and removal of timber to implement scientific studies of vegetation shall be allowed.



- 02** Disturbances related to paleontological research may be up to approximately 40 feet long, one foot wide and two feet deep. The number of trenches authorized is restricted to five per year although it is anticipated that trenches will not be needed each year but only on an occasional basis to map the limestone formations. Areas up to ten feet in diameter shall be allowed for fossil excavations and excavated by hand.
- 03** Removal of fossils and rock for research purposes shall be permitted subject to authorization protocols.
- 04** Activities related to scientific studies of vegetation shall limit prescribed burning to three acres over a three-year period and the manipulation of forest vegetation to three acres over a three-year period.
- 05** General forest management activities shall be scheduled and designed to not conflict with scientific studies or adversely impact paleontological resources in the Bangtail Special Area.
- 06** Scientific studies shall typically be designed to not disturb more than one acre in any one year. There may be minor amounts of excavation associated with paleontological work of less than one acre per year. Excavations will occur over short time intervals of a few weeks to up to two months.
- 07** All activities associated with scientific studies will be reviewed by the authorized officer and only authorized under the appropriate type of permit. If the authorized officer determines that proposed activities related to the Bangtail Special Area is outside of the scope what is documented in the 2007 environmental assessment, then additional environmental analysis, documentation, and disclosure to the public will be required.

#### Suitability (BC-SUIT-BSA)

- 01** Bangtail Special Area is not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest or prescribed fire, is suitable only for reasons specifically designed to maintain or achieve the desired conditions and purpose for the special area.

### **Plan Components—Blacktail Peak Backcountry Area (BPBCA)**

#### Desired Conditions (BC-DC-BPBCA)

- 01** The backcountry area provides for less developed, semi-primitive recreation opportunities; nonmotorized in summer and motorized in winter.

#### Standards (BC-STD-BPBCA)

- 01** New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.

#### Suitability (BC-SUIT-BPBCA)

- 01** The backcountry area is not suitable for summer motorized transport. The backcountry area is suitable for winter motorized over-snow transport. The backcountry area is not suitable for mechanized transport, except use of game carts.

## **Plan Components—Crazy Mountains Backcountry Area (CMBCA)**

### **Desired Conditions (BC-DC-CMBCA)**

- 01** Quiet, nonmotorized recreation opportunities predominate.

### **Standards (BC-STD-CMBCA)**

- 01** New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.

### **Suitability (BC-SUIT-CMBCA)**

- 01** The backcountry area is not suitable for motorized transport. The backcountry area is not suitable for mechanized transport, except use of game carts.

## **Plan Components—Bridger Recreation Emphasis Area (BREA)**

### **Desired Conditions (BC-DC-BREA)**

- 01** The Bridger Recreation Emphasis Area provides sustainable recreational opportunities and settings that respond to increasing summer and winter recreation demands.
- 02** Alternative transportation plays a role in providing convenient and sustainable public access.
- 03** Outfitter guides provide opportunities for underrepresented groups, youth, seniors, and veterans and serve nearby communities.
- 04** Winter outfitter and guiding opportunities facilitate safe winter use and emphasize avalanche safety.

### **Goals (BC-GO-BREA)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with partners, such as Bridger Bowl Ski Area and Crosscut Mountain Sports Center, to provide outstanding winter and summer recreation opportunities.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships to emphasize winter recreation safety.

## **Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area**

### **General Overview**

The Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area is in Madison, Gallatin, and Park Counties, Montana. The geographic area is bordered by the Beaverhead-Deerlodge National Forest to the west and private land to the north. This geographic area borders Idaho in the Henrys Lake Mountains, where the continental divide marks the boundary between the states. Yellowstone National Park borders this geographic area from the Idaho state line to the Yellowstone River. Nearby towns include West Yellowstone, Big Sky, Bozeman, Belgrade, Livingston, and Gardiner. The geographic area is part of the Greater Yellowstone Area (maps in plan appendix B provide detailed information).

### **Distinctive Roles and Contributions**

#### **Ecological Characteristics**

The Madison, Henrys, and Gallatin Mountains are underlain by granitic, volcanic, and some sedimentary parent material. Large areas are prone to mass wasting due to cretaceous sedimentary units. High

seismic hazard occurs from Earthquake Lake to Big Sky. Karst landscapes are present on the north end of Gallatin Range in Hyalite and Gallatin Canyons. The setting is composed of alpine ridges, mountain peaks, cirques, moraines, tundra plateaus, coniferous forests, meadows, and foothill shrublands and grasslands. Montana Natural Heritage Program cites 188 vegetation types around the mountainous areas (Yellowstone Highland Ecological Setting). The alpine areas alone contain over 400 plant species. This geographic area contains the Black Sand Spring Botanical Special Area.

The land is the headwaters of the Missouri River. Forest streams drain into the Madison, Gallatin, and Yellowstone Rivers; major Missouri River tributaries. Many streams contain native Yellowstone or westslope cutthroat or arctic grayling; some with particularly important conservation populations.

Much of the geographic area is wilderness, wilderness study area, or inventoried roadless area. When unroaded lands of the Custer Gallatin are coupled with nearby Yellowstone National Park and wilderness on the Beaverhead-Deerlodge National Forest, it results in a large expanse of largely undeveloped wildlife habitat. All the native animals still roam free in at least a portion of this geographic area, including grizzly bears and gray wolves. The area is also home to wolverines, bald eagles, bison, and bighorn sheep and other native wildlife. The area plays an important role for wildlife connectivity, especially for wide-ranging dispersing species like grizzly bears.

A whitebark pine seed orchard has been located on the Custer Gallatin. Whitebark pine seedlings are being grown that naturally exhibit resistance to white pine blister rust, an imported pathogen that can weaken and kill whitebark pine trees. The seedlings are grown from seeds collected in this region. The seedlings will eventually be planted throughout the Greater Yellowstone Area.

### Social and Economic Characteristics

The Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area helps support diverse economic opportunities related to timber, grazing, and recreation. The mountains are headwaters to the Yellowstone, Gallatin and Madison Rivers. Hyalite and Bozeman Creeks supply Bozeman with water, and Whiskey Spring is part of the West Yellowstone municipal water supply.

Proximity to growing towns such as Bozeman, Belgrade, Livingston and Big Sky coupled with two gateways to Yellowstone National Park (West Yellowstone and Gardiner), means this area is highly visited in all seasons. Hyalite Canyon offers easy access from Bozeman and has world-renowned ice climbing. Camping, rental cabins, motorized and nonmotorized trail use, hunting, trapping, fishing, boating, rafting, skiing, snowshoeing, and snowmobiling are all popular activities. The West Yellowstone area is a snowmobiling destination, for users of both Yellowstone National Park and national forests. Easily accessible from town the Rendezvous Ski Trails consist of over 35 kilometers of gently rolling, beautifully groomed trails that wind through tall stands of lodgepole pine and open meadows. The Gallatin Petrified Forest offers the public a rare opportunity to collect specimens of petrified wood. Spread across Gallatin Canyon, Hyalite, and the Hebgen Basin are several permitted recreation residence cabins, some of which are eligible for the National Historic Register.

Nationally designated trails include the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail, the Nez Perce National Historic Trail, and several National Recreation Trails, including the Two Top Loop Snowmobile Trail and the Big Sky Snowmobile Trail. The Custer Gallatin National Forest offers access to and camping near Hebgen Lake, one of the largest (created) lakes in southwest Montana. The Earthquake Lake Geologic Area, visitor center and interpretive corridor provide interpretation of the 1959 earthquake that formed

Earthquake Lake, in an area of national and international geologic significance for studying geology and seismicity.

Wild lands offer opportunities for solitude and primitive recreation. About 133,848 acres are within the Lee Metcalf Wilderness, and another 144,064 acres are contained in the Hyalite Porcupine Buffalo Horn Wilderness Study Area.

### **Cultural and Historical Characteristics**

A segment of the Nez Perce National Historic Trail Autotour route crosses the Custer Gallatin on Highway 20 from Targhee Pass towards Yellowstone National Park. The Nez Perce (Nimípuu or Nee-Me-Poo) National Historic Trail stretches from Wallowa Lake, Oregon, to the Bear Paw Battlefield near Chinook, Montana. The trail commemorates the 1877 flight of the non-treaty Nez Perce from their homelands in eastern Oregon, Idaho, and Washington across what are now the states of Idaho, Montana, and Wyoming. The auto-tour route is not always located on the actual Nez Perce National Historic Trail.

While now identified as the Nez Perce trail, the trail itself was one of many aboriginal trails leading from the western mountains to the plains, followed by precontact and contact Tribes for annual bison hunts, a tradition integral to these cultures. Today, bison migrating out of Yellowstone Park are hunted within this geographic area by several Tribes, a right reserved in their treaties, and maintain this traditional practice.

Two Civilian Conservation Corps (CCC) camps are located within this geographic area, Basin and Shenango (formerly Squaw Creek). Young Civilian Conservation Corps members, supervised by the Forest Service, built the Shenango Ranger Station and bridge that provides access to several campgrounds, roads and hiking trails along Storm Castle Creek. These facilities were also built by the Civilian Conservation Corps and are still in use today.

### **Vision for the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area**

The land is part of the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem, where grizzly bears, wolves, and bison roam. High elevations provide wilderness and non-wilderness type opportunities. Lower elevations are actively managed and provide a wide range of both summer and winter motorized and nonmotorized recreation opportunities, especially near the communities of Bozeman, Big Sky, and West Yellowstone.

### **Designated Areas**

Designated areas are specific areas or features within the Custer Gallatin that have been given a designation to maintain its unique character, purpose, or management emphasis. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of designated areas. Table 62 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the designated areas in this geographic area. Some designated areas overlap.

**Table 62. Designated areas in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area by acreage and miles, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| <b>Designated Area</b>                           | <b>Acres or Miles</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Percentage Forestwide Total<sup>2</sup></b> |
|--|-----------------------|--|--|
| Designated Wilderness - acres                    | 133,848               | 17   | 13   |
| Wilderness Study Area - acres                    | 144,064               | 18   | 100  |
| Cabin Creek Wildlife and Recreation Area - acres | 36,752                | 5  | 100  |
| Earthquake Lake Geologic Area - acres            | 37,800                | 5  | 100  |
| Inventoried Roadless Areas - acres               | 394,359               | 49   | 46   |
| Research Natural Areas - acres                   | 2,820                 | 0.4  | 10   |
| Special Area - acres                             | 407                   | <1/10  | 11   |
| National Recreation Trails - miles               | 95                    | n/a  | 75   |
| National Scenic Trail - miles                    | 28                    | n/a  | 100  |
| National Historic Trail - miles                  | 8                     | n/a  | 50   |
| Bozeman Creek Municipal Watershed - acres        | 14,926                | 2  | 17   |
| Hyalite Creek Municipal Watershed - acres        | 31,045                | 4  | 36   |
| Whiskey Spring Municipal Water Source - acres    | 15,365                | 2  | 18   |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in a designation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent. Not applicable to linear features.

2. Percentage of total National Forest System lands of the same designation on the Custer Gallatin, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Land Allocations

Plan land allocations are areas developed in the planning process. See chapter 2 for forestwide direction of plan land allocations. Table 63 and associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the plan land allocations in this geographic area.

**Table 63. Plan land allocations in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| <b>Plan Land Allocation</b>  | <b>Acres</b> | <b>Percentage of Geographic Area<sup>1</sup></b> | <b>Percentage Forestwide Total<sup>2</sup></b> |
|--|--------------|--|--|
| Cowboy Heaven Recommended Wilderness Area  | 13,176       | 2  | 9  |
| Gallatin Crest Recommended Wilderness Area   | 78,071       | 10   | 56   |
| Sawtooth Mountain Recommended Wilderness Area  | 14,461       | 2  | 10   |
| Taylor Hilgard Recommended Wilderness Area   | 4,466        | 0.6  | 3  |
| Buffalo Horn Backcountry Area  | 26,496       | 3  | 13   |
| Lionhead Backcountry Area  | 27,266       | 3  | 13   |
| South Cottonwood Backcountry Area  | 13,763       | 2  | 7  |
| West Pine Backcountry Area   | 22,632       | 3  | 11   |
| Hyalite Recreation Emphasis Area   | 36,246       | 4  | 16   |
| Storm Castle Recreation Emphasis Area  | 36,516       | 5  | 16   |
| Gallatin Canyon Recreation Emphasis Area   | 16,474       | 2  | 7  |
| Hebgen Winter Recreation Emphasis Area   | 70,924       | 9  | 31   |
| Hebgen Lakeshore Recreation Emphasis Area  | 13,866       | 2  | 6  |
| Yellowstone River Corridor Recreation Emphasis Area (also 895 acres in Absaroka Beartooth Mountains Geographic Area) | 1,271        | 0.2  | 0.6  |
| Gallatin Key Linkage Area  | 22,064       | 3  | 36   |

1. Percentage of the geographic area included in an allocation (National Forest System lands), rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands of the same allocation on the national forest, rounded to the nearest whole number, or nearest one-tenth of a percent if less than 1 percent.

## Eligible Wild and Scenic Rivers

Table 64 and associated map(s) (see plan appendix E) display the eligible wild and scenic rivers in this geographic area.

**Table 64. Eligible wild and scenic rivers in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area, with tentative classification and outstandingly remarkable values**

| River                   | Tentative Classification | Outstandingly Remarkable Value(s)                |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|--|
| Bark Cabin Creek        | Wild                     | Fisheries  |
| Big Creek               | Wild                     | Fisheries  |
| Hyalite Creek           | Scenic                   | Recreation, Scenery                              |
| Maid of the Mist Creek  | Scenic                   | Recreation, Scenery                              |
| Shower Creek            | Scenic                   | Recreation, Scenery                              |
| Gallatin River          | Recreational             | Recreation, Scenery, Heritage                    |
| Cabin Creek             | Scenic                   | Scenery, Fisheries                               |
| Madison River           | Recreational             | Recreation, Geology, Scenery, Heritage, Wildlife |
| Middle Fork Cabin Creek | Scenic                   | Fisheries  |
| Yellowstone River       | Recreational             | Recreation, Scenery, Heritage                    |

## Other Resource Emphasis Areas

### Recreation Opportunity Spectrum

The recreation opportunity spectrum influences the suitability of lands for various multiple uses or activities based on the desired conditions. Please see chapter 2 for a description of the recreation opportunity spectrum and its associated plan components. Table 65 displays the acreage of each recreation opportunity spectrum class for both summer and winter. In addition, the associated map(s) (plan appendix B) display the recreation opportunity spectrum categories in this geographic area.

**Table 65. Recreation opportunity spectrum classes for the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area in summer and winter by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Class | Summer Acres | Summer Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Winter Acres | Winter Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> |
|---------------------------------------|--------------|---|--------------|---|
| Primitive                             | 133,848      | 17%   | 133,848      | 17%   |
| Semi-primitive Nonmotorized           | 326,671      | 40%   | 324,926      | 40%   |
| Semi-primitive Motorized              | 190,377      | 24%   | 199,511      | 25%   |
| Roaded Natural                        | 109,295      | 13%   | 104,059      | 13%   |
| Rural                                 | 46,423       | 6%  | 44,270       | 5%  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

### Scenic Integrity Objectives

Table 66 displays the acreages, and the locations of scenic integrity objectives for the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area are displayed in the scenery management maps (plan appendix B). Refer to FW-SCENERY for desired conditions and guidelines that apply to scenery.

**Table 66. Scenic integrity objectives for the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area by acreage and percentage of geographic area**

| Scenic Integrity Objective | Acres   | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> |
|----------------------------|---------|--|
| Very High                  | 244,036 | 30%  |
| High                       | 11,554  | 1%   |
| Moderate                   | 440,048 | 55%  |
| Low                        | 110,991 | 14%  |
| Very Low                   | 0       | 0%   |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Lands Suitable for Timber Production

Lands suitable for timber production are areas where timber production is an appropriate management objective. See chapter 2 for information on timber suitability and plan components for harvest on lands identified as both suitable and unsuitable for timber production. As displayed in table 67, a relatively large amount of this productive, forested geographic area is identified as suitable for timber production, and contributes a third of the forestwide total area of lands suitable for timber production.

**Table 67. Lands suitable for timber production in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area by acreage, percentage of geographic area, and percentage forestwide**

| Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Mountains Geographic Area | Acres   | Percentage of Geographic Area <sup>1</sup> | Percentage of Forestwide Total <sup>2</sup> |
|--|---------|--|---|
| Forested acres suitable for timber production                | 173,412 | 22   | 31  |

1. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands found in the geographic area, rounded to the nearest whole number.

2. Percentage of the total National Forest System lands suitable for timber production Forestwide, rounded to the nearest whole number.

## Plan Components—Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area (CCRW)

### Introduction

The Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area was designated by the Lee Metcalf Wilderness Act in 1983. Public Law 98-140, October 31, 1983, established the Cabin Creek area for the purpose of wildlife and recreation. The 36,752-acre area encompasses Upper Wapiti Creek, Carrot Basin, and Cabin Creek. It is entirely within the recovery zone/primary conservation area for grizzly bears and contains important big game habitat.

The legislation placed emphasis on the recreation and wildlife values of the area. At the same time, the bill recognized the historical uses of the area. It was decided that the travel direction for the area was key, especially the use of motorized vehicles. The 2006 Gallatin Travel Plan decision allows broad use of the Cabin Creek area by several different types of recreation users. It allows uses such as retrieving animals harvested during hunting season by motor bikes on designated routes or snowmobiles. Winter recreational use of snowmobiles and the Big Sky Snowmobile Trail continues as stated in the enabling legislation.



### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-CCRW)**

- 01** Big game and grizzly bear habitat provide foraging and security to allow wildlife to coexist with human use of the area.
- 02** Wilderness character is present in concert with the recreation opportunities provided for in the legislation.

### **Standards (MG-STD-CCRW)**

- 01** New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.
- 02** New energy or utility structures shall not be allowed.
- 03** New commercial communication sites shall not be allowed.
- 04** New developed recreation sites shall not be allowed.
- 05** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.

### **Guidelines (MG-GDL-CCRW)**

- 01** To be consistent with the enabling legislation, new recreation special uses should not detract from wildlife protection and wilderness character.

### **Suitability (MG-SUIT-CCRW)**

- 01** The Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area is not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management is suitable consistent with Public law 98-140.
- 02** The Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area is not suitable for recreational and commercial drone launching and landings.
- 03** The Cabin Creek Recreation and Wildlife Management Area is not suitable for new permitted livestock grazing allotments.

## **Plan Components—Wilderness Study Area (WSA)**

### **Introduction**

The Custer Gallatin National Forest manages one congressionally designated wilderness study area, the 155,000-acre Hyalite-Porcupine-Buffalo Horn Wilderness Study Area in the core of the Gallatin Range. The entire wilderness study area is inventoried roadless area. About 144,000 acres of the wilderness study area are national forest system land. The 1,280-acre Palace Butte Research Natural Area is located within the wilderness study area.

Direction for the Hyalite-Porcupine-Buffalo Horn Wilderness Study Area states the need to manage the area consistent with the Montana Wilderness Study Act of 1977, which specified that, “subject to existing private rights, the wilderness study areas designated by this Act shall, until Congress determines otherwise, be administered by the Secretary of Agriculture so as to maintain their presently existing wilderness character and potential for inclusion in the National Wilderness Preservation System” (Public Law 95-150).

Per the Wilderness Study Act of 1977, the use of motor vehicles, aircraft and mechanical means of transport are allowed at levels in existence prior to the enactment of the act; as long as the uses maintain the presently existing wilderness character and potential for inclusion into the National Wilderness Preservation System. Permitted livestock use is allowed in those portions of wilderness study area where grazing had been established prior to the area's designation.

Until Congress makes a final decision on designation, the wilderness study area will be managed per the plan direction identified for the wilderness study area in this section. If Congress acts to release the wilderness study area, the wilderness study area direction would no longer apply and management of the area would continue under forestwide, applicable geographic area, and applicable plan land allocation direction. The plan applies allocations of recommended wilderness area, backcountry area and recreation emphasis area for most of the wilderness study area if it were to be released by Congress. The Forest Service can apply more restrictive guidance (for example recommended wilderness area guidance) than the wilderness study area act. The Forest Service cannot apply less restrictive guidance, unless the wilderness study area were to be released by Congress. If the wilderness study area were to be released by Congress, the research natural area and inventoried roadless area designations would remain. Where these designations overlap plan land allocations, the most restrictive guidance would apply.

#### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-WSA)**

- 01** The wilderness study area is characterized by a natural environment where ecological processes such as natural succession, wildfire, avalanches, insects and disease function as the primary forces affecting the environment.

#### **Goals (MG-GO-WSA)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with Montana Fish, Wildlife, and Parks to consolidate ownership at the southern end of the Gallatin Range.

#### **Standards (MG-STD-WSA)**

- 01** New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.
- 02** New energy or utility structures shall not be allowed.
- 03** New commercial communication sites shall not be allowed.
- 04** New developed recreation sites shall not be allowed.
- 05** New recreation events shall not be authorized.
- 06** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed. This standard does not apply to permitted collection of petrified wood in the Gallatin Petrified Forest Special Management Zone.

#### **Suitability (MG-SUIT-WSA)**

- 01** The wilderness study area is not suitable for timber production or timber harvest. The area is suitable for limited hazard tree removal.

- 02** The wilderness study area is suitable for low impact restoration activities that move toward desired conditions (such as prescribed fires, active weed management, planting) and that protect and enhance the wilderness study area as when established.
- 03** Permitted livestock use and infrastructure maintenance is suitable in those portions of the wilderness study area where grazing had been established prior to the area's wilderness study area designation.
- 04** The wilderness study area is not suitable for recreational and commercial drone launching and landings.

## **Plan Components—Black Sand Spring Special Area (BSSSA)**

### **Introduction**

Forest Service Manual 2370 and the 1998 Black Sand Spring Botanical Special Area applicable National Environmental Policy Act decision and designation order provides management guidance for this area and specifies that other values or resources in the area are managed to a level compatible with the area's primary values and overall national forest management objectives. In addition to the forestwide direction for special areas, the following direction pertains to the Black Sand Spring Special Area.

### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-BSSSA)**

- 01** The Black Sand Spring Special Area provides conditions that support long-term protection to an area for scientific research opportunities on high quality wetlands, riparian, associated upland communities and aquatic ecosystems and its geologically unique spring source origin.

### **Goals (MG-GO-BSSSA)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest pursues instream water rights for Black Sand Springs.

### **Standards (MG-STD-BSSSA)**

- 01** Motorized vehicle and motorized over-snow transport shall be restricted to the existing road.
- 02** Use of heavy equipment to suppress fire shall be avoided and shall only be used as a last resort.
- 03** No measures for control of insects or diseases shall be undertaken unless the area and adjacent lands are endangered.
- 04** Wildlife and fisheries habitat management shall be compatible with maintaining the distinguishing natural features for which the Special Area has been designated.
- 05** New special use permits that withdraw water, reduce water quantity or adversely impact water quality of the spring shall not be authorized.

### **Suitability (MG-SUIT-BSSSA)**

- 01** Black Sand Spring Special Area is not suitable for timber production or firewood collection. Vegetation management, including timber harvest or prescribed fire, is suitable only for reasons specifically designed to maintain or achieve the desired conditions and purpose for the special area.
- 02** Black Sand Spring Special Area is not suitable for permitted or recreational livestock grazing.

- 03** Black Sand Spring Special Area is not suitable for collection and harvest of special forest products.

## **Plan Components—Continental Divide National Scenic Trail (CDNST)**

### **Introduction**

The Continental Divide National Scenic Trail was designated by Congress in 1978. This 3,100-mile-long trail follows the Continental Divide and traverses nationally significant scenic terrain and areas rich in the heritage and life of the Rocky Mountain west. In entirety, the trail passes through portions of Montana, Idaho, Wyoming, Colorado, and New Mexico and is administered by the Forest Service in cooperation with the National Park Service, Bureau of Land Management, and Tribal, State, and local governments, and numerous partner groups. The vision for the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail is a primitive and challenging backcountry trail for the hiker and equestrian on or near the Continental Divide to provide people with the opportunity to experience the unique and incredibly scenic qualities of the area. A small segment on the Custer Gallatin National Forest is also open to mountain bikes. Management for the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail is outlined in the 2009 Continental Divide National Scenic Trail Comprehensive Management Plan and national policy. See scenery management maps in plan appendix B.

The 2009 Comprehensive plan provides this statement “The nature and purposes of the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail Care to provide for high-quality scenic, primitive hiking and horseback riding opportunities and to conserve natural, historic, and cultural resources along the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail corridor.”

Approximately 28 miles of the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail are located on the Custer Gallatin National Forest, all in the Madison, Henrys Lake, and Gallatin Geographic Area. The plan components outlined below apply one half mile each side of the trail, when that boundary remains on the Custer Gallatin.

### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-CDNST)**

- 01** The Continental Divide National Scenic Trail is a well-defined trail that provides for high-quality, primitive hiking and horseback riding opportunities, and other compatible trail activities, in a highly scenic setting along the Continental Divide. The significant scenic, natural, historic, and cultural resources along the trail’s corridor are present. Where possible, the trail provides visitors with expansive views of a naturally appearing landscape along the divide.
- 02** Viewsheds from the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail have high scenic values. The foreground as viewed from the trail is predominately naturally appearing. The potential to view wildlife is high, and evidence of ecological processes such as fire, insects, and diseases exist.
- 03** The trail is accessible from access points that provide various opportunities to select the type of terrain, scenery and trail length, ranging from long-distance to day use, that best provide for the compatible outdoor recreation experiences being sought. Wild and remote, backcountry segments of the route provide opportunities for solitude, immersion in natural landscapes and primitive outdoor recreation. Front-country and more easily accessible trail segments complement local community interests and needs and help contribute to their sense of place.
- 04** Use conflicts amongst trail users are infrequent.

- 05** The trail is well maintained, signed, and passable. Alternate routes provide access to the trail in the case of temporary closures resulting from natural events, such as fire or flood, or land management activities.
- 06** Short side trails to the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail that encompass adjacent attractions enhance the experience along the main trail.
- 07** Trailhead facilities support the uses of the trail (such as stock use).

#### Standards (MG-STD-CDNST)

- 01** New motorized recreation events shall not be permitted on the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail.
- 02** New constructed, permanent overnight shelters shall not be allowed.
- 03** Extraction of saleable mineral materials shall not be allowed.

#### Guidelines (MG-GDL-CDNST)

- 01** To retain or promote the character for which the trail was designated, road and motorized trail crossings and other signs of modern development should be avoided to the extent practicable.
- 02** To promote a nonmotorized setting, the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail should not be permanently relocated onto routes open to motor vehicle use.
- 03** To preserve or promote a naturally appearing setting, the minimum trail facilities necessary to accommodate the amount and types of use anticipated on any given segment should be provided in order to protect resource values and for health and safety, not for the purpose of promoting user comfort.
- 04** To retain the character for which the trail was designated, new linear utilities and rights-of-way should be limited to a single crossing of the trail unless additional crossings are documented as the only prudent and feasible alternative.
- 05** To provide for a naturally appearing setting and to avoid visual, aural, and resource impacts, use of the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail for landings or as a temporary road for any purpose should not be allowed.
- 06** To provide for a naturally appearing setting and to avoid visual, aural, and resource impacts, hauling or skidding along the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail itself should be allowed only (1) where the Continental Divide National Scenic Trail is currently located on an open road or to address hazard tree removal, or (2) no other haul route or skid trail options are practicable. Design criteria should minimize impacts to the trail infrastructure, and any necessary post-activity trail restoration should be a priority for the project's rehabilitation plan.

#### Suitability (MG-SUIT-CDNST)

- 01** The Continental Divide National Scenic Trail corridor is not suitable for timber production. Vegetation management, including timber harvest, is suitable for purposes such as fuels reduction, restoration, or wildlife habitat enhancement.

- 02** The Continental Divide National Scenic Trail is suitable for summer motorized transport only as necessary to meet emergencies, to provide for landowner access, or as allowed by administrative regulations at the time of designation, as long as such use does not substantially interfere with the nature and purpose of the trail. National Trail System Act (section 7c).
- 03** The Continental Divide National Scenic Trail is suitable for winter motorized over-snow vehicle transport over and around the trail, as long as such use does not substantially interfere with the nature and purpose of the trail.
- 04** The Continental Divide National Scenic Trail is suitable for mountain biking, as long as such use does not substantially interfere with the nature and purpose of the trail.

## **Plan Components—Earthquake Lake Geologic Area (ELGA)**

### **Introduction**

The Madison River Canyon Earthquake Area is a 37,800-acre geological area, designated under the authority of the Secretary of Agriculture as a special geological area in 1960. The area was intended to allow the natural processes in this area to continue while providing for its use in conjunction with the safety and enjoyment of visitors. The Earthquake Lake Visitor Center, constructed in 1967 is principal in meeting the purposes of the designation to interpret and provide education about the 1959 earthquake, related events, and national forest resource management. The interpretive corridor offers drivers along Highway 287 a variety of perspectives of the historic events and the geologic and context of human drama.

### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-ELGA)**

- 01** The Earthquake Lake Visitor Center, natural attractions, and the easily seen effects of the strongest earthquake in the Rocky Mountains provide unique geologic interpretive opportunities pertaining to the 1959 earthquake.
- 02** Earthquake Lake Visitor Center provides interpretation and education of the geologic and human story of the earthquake, surrounding geologic area, and its context in the Greater Yellowstone Area and plate tectonics of the world.

### **Goals (MG-GO-ELGA)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest and partners operate the visitor center complex to host exhibits, films, presentations and interpretive trails focused on earthquakes, plate tectonics, and seismicity of the area and the world, .

## **Plan Components—Municipal Watershed (WTR)**

### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-WTR)**

- 01** Forest structure in the municipal watersheds does not support watershed scale high intensity, stand-replacing fire and is resilient to forest insect and disease through maintenance of age, size class diversity, and species diversity.

### Goals (MG-GO-WTR)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest cooperates with the City of Bozeman in sustainable land management of the Hyalite and Bozeman Creek municipal watersheds.

## Plan Components–Buffalo Horn Backcountry Area (BHBCA)

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-BHBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area provides for less developed, semi-primitive recreation opportunities, both motorized and nonmotorized, in both summer and winter.

### Standards (MG-STD-BHBCA)

- 01 New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.
- 02 New recreation events shall not be authorized.
- 03 New motorized trails shall not be constructed or designated, except for reroutes of existing trails necessary for safety, resource protection or enhancement, or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Trail re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes.

### Suitability (MG-SUIT-BHBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area is suitable for motorized transport on existing system motorized routes and areas. The backcountry area is suitable for mechanized transport. Mountain biking is suitable only on approved system mountain biking routes.

## Plan Components–Lionhead Backcountry Area (LHBCA)

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-LHPBCA)

- 01 Quiet, nonmotorized recreation opportunities predominate.

### Standards (MG-STD-LHBCA)

- 01 New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed.
- 02 New mountain bike trails shall not be constructed or designated, except for reroutes of existing trails necessary for safety, resource protection or enhancement, or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Trail re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes.

### Suitability (MG-SUIT-LHBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area is not suitable for motorized transport. The backcountry area is suitable for mechanized transport. Mountain biking is suitable only on approved system routes.

## Plan Components–South Cottonwood Backcountry Area (SCBCA)

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-SCBCA)

- 01 Quiet, nonmotorized recreation opportunities predominate.

### Standards (MG-STD-SCBCA)

- 01 New permanent roads shall not be allowed; temporary roads may be allowed.

### Suitability (MG-SUIT-SCBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area is not suitable for motorized transport. The backcountry area is suitable for mechanized transport. Mountain biking is suitable only on approved system routes.

## Plan Components–West Pine Backcountry Area (WPBCA)

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-WPBCA)

- 01 Quiet, nonmotorized recreation opportunities predominate.

### Objectives (MG-OBJ-WPBCA)

- 01 Over the life of the plan, create at least one opportunity to enhance non-motorized trail connectivity by connecting existing trails to create loop rides or to connect to other parts of the trail network.

### Standards (MG-STD-WPBCA)

- 01 New permanent or temporary roads shall not be allowed. Existing roads may be rerouted if necessary for safety, resource protection or enhancement, or after natural occurrences such as fire, floods, windstorms, and avalanches. Road re-routes should utilize the best long-term sustainable routes.
- 02 New recreation events shall not be authorized.

### Suitability (MG-SUIT-WPBCA)

- 01 The backcountry area is not suitable for motorized transport. The backcountry area is suitable for mechanized transport. Mountain biking is suitable only on approved system mountain biking routes.

## Plan Components–Gallatin River Recreation Emphasis Area (GRREA)

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-GRREA)

- 01 The Gallatin River Recreation Emphasis Area provides sustainable recreational opportunities and settings that balances increasing demand for river access in concert with the protection of the river resource.
- 02 Water based outfitting and guiding opportunities are available commensurate with the capacity of river.
- 03 Highly valued recreation resources, such as river access, is available for day use opportunities.

### Goals (MG-GO-GRREA)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships to provide sustainable recreation opportunities and ecological protection of the river corridor.



## **Plan Components–Hebgen Lakeshore Recreation Emphasis Area (HLREA)**

### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-HLREA)**

- 01** Alternative transportation plays a role in providing convenient and sustainable public access.
- 02** Water based guiding and associated infrastructure on NFS lands are commensurate with the capacity of lake.
- 03** Outfitter and guiding opportunities are adaptable to new and changing uses in character with the lake setting.
- 04** Existing developed campgrounds and permitted summer resorts provide capacity for expanded use.
- 05** Highly valued recreation resources, such as lake access, are available for day use opportunities.

### **Goals (MG-GO-HLREA)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest continues the current partnerships with Northwest Energy to manage opportunities and impacts to fisheries, wildlife, and recreation.

### **Objectives (MG-OBJ-HLREA)**

- 01** Per decade, convert at least one unsustainable dispersed lakeshore camping areas or sites into higher development scale campgrounds in compliance with the grizzly bear plan components, creating sustainable opportunities on Hebgen Lake.

## **Plan Components–Hebgen Winter Recreation Emphasis Area (HWREA)**

### **Desired Conditions (MG-DC-HWREA)**

- 01** The integrity, character and quality of the groomed snowmobile and cross-country ski trails are provided at a high level with an engineered level of design.
- 02** Outfitter and guiding opportunities facilitate winter use and emphasize avalanche safety.
- 03** Infrastructure integral to the Rendezvous Ski Trail Area is present.

### **Goals (MG-GO-HWREA)**

- 01** The Custer Gallatin National Forest works with the community of West Yellowstone to achieve a national and international destination for winter recreation.
- 02** The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships for sustainable operation of the Rendezvous Ski Area and the groomed snowmobile trail system of this recreation emphasis area.
- 03** The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships and interagency cooperation to emphasize winter recreation safety.

### **Standards (MG-STD-HWREA)**

- 01** Recreation uses shall not be authorized that are not compatible with the opportunities provided by a groomed surface of the Rendezvous Ski trail.

### Guidelines (MG-GDL-HWREA)

- 01 To retain the integrity of the groomed Rendezvous ski trail system in meeting United States Ski and Snowboard Association and International Federation of Skiing standards, management activities should not alter the groomer-ready native surface of the designated trails.

## Plan Components–Hyalite Recreation Emphasis Area (HREA)

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-HREA)

- 01 The Hyalite Recreation Emphasis Area provides sustainable recreational opportunities and settings that respond to increasing recreation demand in concert with the demands on the municipal watershed.
- 02 Alternative transportation plays a role in providing convenient and sustainable public access.
- 03 Outfitter guides provide opportunities for underrepresented groups, youth, seniors, and veterans and serve nearby communities.
- 04 Developed campgrounds provide capacity for expanded use.
- 05 Highly valued recreation resources, such as lake access, are available for day use opportunities.

### Goals (MG-GO-HREA)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships to provide sustainable recreation opportunities and winter access in the Hyalite Recreation Emphasis Area.

### Objectives (MG-OBJ-HREA)

- 01 Per decade, one additional shoreline access day use area will be developed or converted from other developed recreation sites, such as campsites on the reservoir lakeshore.
- 02 Over the life of the plan, create two loop trail opportunities by developing additional trail connections and converting non-system trails.

### Standards (MG-STD-HREA)

- 01 New trail construction shall not be allowed that provides access to Flanders, Mt. Bole, Divide Peak, and Maid of the Mist peaks.

## Plan Components–Storm Castle Recreation Emphasis Area (SCREA)

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-SCREA)

- 01 The Storm Castle Recreation Emphasis Area provides sustainable recreational opportunities and settings that respond to increasing motorized recreation demand in concert with other recreational uses.
- 02 Outfitter and guides provide a wide range of opportunities including motorized uses, with an emphasis on safety and resource protection.

### Goals (MG-GO-SCREA)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships for sustainable operation of the motorized trail system of this recreation emphasis area.

## **Plan Components–Yellowstone River Recreation Emphasis Area (YRREA)**

### Desired Conditions (MG-DC-YRREA)

- 01 The Yellowstone River Recreation Emphasis Area provides sustainable recreational opportunities and settings that balances increasing demand for river access and the protection of the river resource.
- 02 Water based outfitting and guiding opportunities are available commensurate with the capacity of river.
- 03 Highly valued recreation resources, such as river access, is available for day use opportunities.

### Goals (MG-GO-YRREA)

- 01 The Custer Gallatin National Forest seeks partnerships to provide sustainable recreation opportunities and ecological protection of the Yellowstone River corridor.

# Chapter 4. Monitoring Program

## Introduction

The monitoring program includes monitoring, or the collection of data and information, followed by the evaluation of that information. Monitoring and evaluation are separate, sequential activities required by the National Forest Management Act to determine how well objectives have been met and how closely management standards and guidelines have been applied. Effective land management plan monitoring fosters adaptive management and more informed decisions.

Monitoring and evaluation are conducted at several scales and for many purposes, each of which has different objectives and requirements. Monitoring occurs at the scale of the national forest, the region, and even larger geographic areas. Monitoring may be the responsibility of the Forest Service, another agency, or may involve multiple agencies and organizations.

Monitoring provides the feedback for the planning cycle by testing assumptions, tracking relevant conditions over time, measuring management effectiveness, and evaluating effects of management practices. Monitoring information should enable the national forest staff to determine if a change in plan components or other plan management guidance may be needed, forming a basis for continual improvement and adaptive management. Direction for the monitoring and evaluation of plans is found under the 2012 planning rule at 36 Code of Federal Regulations 219.12 and in the directives at 1909.12 chapter 30.

The plan monitoring program addresses the most critical components for informed management of the Custer Gallatin's resources within the financial and technical capability of the agency. Every monitoring question links to one or more desired conditions, objectives, standards, or guidelines. However, not every plan component has a corresponding monitoring question.

The monitoring program is not intended to depict all monitoring, inventorying, and data gathering activities undertaken on the Custer Gallatin. Consideration and coordination with broad-scale monitoring strategies, multi-party monitoring collaboration, and cooperation with state agencies where practicable will increase efficiencies and help track changing conditions beyond the national forest boundaries to improve the effectiveness of the plan monitoring program. In addition, project and activity monitoring may be used to gather information for the plan monitoring program if it will provide relevant information to inform adaptive management. Monitoring also provides feedback to prioritize and improve the plan monitoring program and broader-scale monitoring strategy.

The monitoring plan sets out the plan monitoring questions and associated indicators and measures. The forest used the best available scientific information in the development of the monitoring plan, giving consideration to expected budgets, and agency protocols.

The monitoring program will include a biennial monitoring evaluation report. A monitoring guide is not required plan content, and if developed, would provide detailed information on the monitoring questions, indicators, frequency and reliability, priority, data sources and storage, and cost. Data sources and frequency of updates may change, so the specifics would be included in a monitoring guide. It is important to note that not all monitoring questions are expected to be evaluated biennially.

The biennial monitoring evaluation report will summarize the results of monitoring, evaluate the data, consider relevant information from broad-scale or other monitoring efforts, and make recommendations to the responsible official. The monitoring evaluation report will indicate whether a change to the plan, management activities, or the monitoring program, or a new assessment, may be warranted based on the new information. The monitoring evaluation report is used to inform adaptive management of the plan area and will be made available to the public.

Some kinds of monitoring indicators will require longer time frames for thorough evaluation of results, but a biennial review of what information has been collected will ensure timely evaluation to inform planning. The biennial monitoring evaluation does not need to evaluate all questions or indicators on a biennial basis but must focus on new data and results that provide new information regarding management effectiveness, progress towards meeting desired conditions or objectives, changing conditions, or validation (or invalidation) of assumptions.

Modifying a plan's monitoring program does not require any other change to the plan; that is, a plan need not be amended nor revised simply to facilitate monitoring pursuant to the 2012 Planning Rule.

A change to a monitoring question or an indicator may be made administratively, but only after the public has had an opportunity to comment. A change to a monitoring guide or annual monitoring work plan does not require public notification. In addition, because the broader-scale monitoring strategy is comprised of questions and indicators from plan monitoring programs, a change of the broader-scale monitoring strategy questions and indicators would require a change of the relevant plan monitoring programs.

## Required 2012 Planning Rule Monitoring Items

The Forest Service has discretion to set the scope, scale, and priorities for plan monitoring within the financial and technical capabilities of the administrative unit. However, they are required to include one or more monitoring question(s) and associated indicator(s) for the eight items set out in the Planning Rule at 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) as follows:

- a. The status of select watershed conditions.

The status of select ecological conditions including key characteristics of terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems.

The status of focal species to assess the ecological conditions required under 36 CFR 219.9.

The status of a select set of the ecological conditions required under 36 CFR 219.9 to contribute to the recovery of federally listed threatened and endangered species, conserve proposed and candidate species, and maintain a viable population of each species of conservation concern.

The status of visitor use, visitor satisfaction, and progress toward meeting recreation objectives.

Measurable changes on the plan area related to climate change and other stressors that may be affecting the plan area.

Progress toward meeting the desired conditions and objectives in the plan, including providing for multiple use opportunities.

The effects of each management system to determine that they do not substantially and permanently impair the productivity of the land (16 U.S.C. 1604(g)(3)(C)). (36 CFR 219.12(a).

Social, economic, and cultural sustainability must also be addressed in the monitoring program (FSH 1909.12 section 32.13f).

The Custer Gallatin National Forest reviewed each plan component to consider the above questions for inclusion into the monitoring program. The following was considered to help determine the need to track information related to the plan components:

- a. **Required by law** - collection of information is required through Biological Opinion Terms and Conditions, court orders, settlement agreements, etc.

**Magnitude of departure** from desired condition (if of concern) – Is there a high degree of disparity between existing and desired conditions? Examples: (1) a particular habitat component is at a much lower level than desired; (2) the amount of use of a particular resource or use at a particular location is much higher than desired.

**Degree of uncertainty** regarding the available data or uncertainty due to lack of data (FSH 1909.12 section 32.1, 32.11). Is available information incomplete or inconclusive?

Long standing **management assumptions** that need to be verified or re-verified? (FSH 1909.12 section 32.1, 32.11). Is there a high degree of uncertainty associated with management assumptions? Examples: (1) a new way of doing something where there is limited experience with the new technique; (2) actions taken in response to an unprecedented situation; (3) a lack of information or outdated information on the effects of a management action on specific habitat needs

The **risk and consequences** to the resource for not having information to reduce the uncertainty and knowledge gap and assumption:

- a. Risk of action or event occurring – Are management activities and/or other drivers and stressors (climate change, invasive species, insect diseases, flooding events, etc.) likely to occur that would have discernable outcomes to the resource? Is the parameter responsive to changed conditions (climate, insect and disease, invasive species, management activities, and other factors)?
- b. Consequences to resource – What are consequences to resource for not having this information (for example, collection of this information will make a difference in how we manage for sustainability of the resource)?

Distinctive roles and contributions within the broader landscape (FSH 1909.12 section 32.1). Will monitoring respond to a key public issue? Key issues identified through scoping may warrant monitoring even if they are (1) well understood, (2) the existing condition is good and (3) management activities will have little impacts. Monitoring may be necessary for educations and accountability purposes.

## Focal Species

The following focal species have been identified. Monitoring for these species is indicated in the applicable resource monitoring sections.

### **Aquatic invertebrates**

Aquatic invertebrates are an indicator of the ecological condition of waterbodies and overall watershed integrity. They can be indicators of water quality as they have a wide range of pollution tolerances amongst many different species that can be found in all but the most polluted of waterbodies. The distribution of functional feeding groups (i.e. shredders, scrapers, collector-gatherers, predators, etc.) are an indicator of the ecological condition (such as organic matter processing, nutrient cycling, anthropogenic impacts, etc.) of the waterbody and overall watershed integrity.

### **Land bird species and assemblages**

Land bird species and assemblages are an indicator of the ecological condition of a variety of habitat types. The presence, habitat affiliation, and population trend (status of) avian species can be indicative of the health of habitat types.

## Monitoring Elements by Resource Area

The following is based on the 2012 Planning Rule required questions element 1-8 [36 Code of Federal Regulations 219.12(a)(5)] or Forest Service Handbook 1909.12 section 32.13f. Acronyms used in this table include:

- DENR: Department of Environment and Natural Resources (South Dakota)
- DEQ: Department of Environmental Quality (Montana)
- FACTS: Forest Service Activity Tracking System
- FIA: Forest Inventory and Analysis
- FTEM: Fuels Treatment Effectiveness Monitoring System
- GIS: Geographic Information Systems
- GRYN: Greater Yellowstone Inventory and Monitoring Program
- GYE: Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem
- I&E: Implementation and Effectiveness
- IMBCR: Integrated Monitoring in Bird Conservation Regions
- InFORM: Interagency Fire Occurrence Reporting Modules
- INFRA: Infrastructure
- MFISH: Montana Fisheries Information
- MNHP: Montana Natural Heritage Program
- MT: Montana
- MTBS: Monitoring Trends in Burn Severity
- MTFWP: Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks
- NRM: Natural Resource Manager
- NVUM: National Visitor Use Monitoring
- PIBO: PACFISH, INFISH Biological Opinion
- PILT: Payment in Lieu of Taxes
- RMRS: Rocky Mountain Research Station
- SD: South Dakota
- SDGFP: South Dakota Department of Game, Fish and Parks
- SUDS: Special Uses Data System
- TESP/IS: Threatened, Endangered, and Sensitive Plants, and Invasive Species
- TIM: Timber Information Manager
- USFWS: US Fish and Wildlife Service
- VMAP: Vegetation Mapping Program
- WCF: Watershed Condition Framework
- WFDSS: Wildland Fire Decision Support System



## Ecosystems

Table 68. Soils selected plan components

| Soils<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data<br>Source/Storage<br>(Interval of data<br>collection) |
|-----------------------------------|---|--|--|
| FW-DC-SOIL-01<br>FW-STD-SOIL-01   | <b>MON-SOIL-01</b><br>To what extent do vegetation management activity areas meet detrimental soil disturbance (DSD) standards?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - viii | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Detrimental Soil Disturbance (DSD)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pre and post-implementation percent DSD of activity area monitored           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of activity areas meeting the DSD standard</li> <li>Number of activity areas not meeting the DSD standard</li> </ul> </li> </ul>                               | Project decisions<br>(2-year interval)                     |
| FW-DC-SOIL-02<br>FW-GDL-SOIL-07   | <b>MON-SOIL-02</b><br>To what extent do vegetation management project areas meet coarse woody debris (CWD) guidelines?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - viii          | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Coarse Woody Debris (CWD)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Post-implementation CWD levels in forested vegetation management units           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of vegetation treatment units meeting the CWD minimum levels</li> <li>Number of vegetation treatment units not meeting the CWD minimum level</li> </ul> </li> </ul> | Project decisions<br>(2-year interval)                     |

Table 69. Watershed, Aquatic, Riparian Management Zone (RMZ), and Conservation Watershed Network (CWN) Selected Plan Components

| Watershed, Aquatic, Riparian Management Zone (RMZ), and Conservation Watershed Network (CWN)<br>Selected Plan Components  | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> )   |
|---|---|--|--|
| <b>FW-DC-WTR-01</b><br><b>FW-DC-WTR-02</b><br><b>FW-DC-WTR-03</b><br><b>FW-DC-WTR-04</b><br><b>FW-DC-WTR-05</b><br><b>FW-DC-WTR-11</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-WTR-01</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-WTR-02</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-WTR-03</b><br><b>FW-DC-RMZ-01</b><br><b>FW-DC-RMZ-02</b><br><b>FW-DC-CWN-01</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-CWN-01</b> | <b>MON-WTR-01</b><br>Are 1) management and 2) conditions of watersheds features demonstrating characteristics that contribute to physical and biological integrity of aquatic systems and riparian habitats and connectivity?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - i, ii, iii, iv | <b>Outcome indicators:</b><br><b>Stream and habitat conditions (reported by managed vs. unmanaged sites)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pools</li> <li>• Woody debris</li> <li>• Bank angle</li> <li>• Channel substrate</li> <li>• D50</li> <li>• Bank stability</li> <li>• Riparian management zone riparian vegetation composition and structure</li> </ul> <b>Aquatic invertebrates (focal species)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Water quality</li> <li>• Organic matter processing</li> <li>• Nutrient cycling</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators:</b><br><b>Watershed improvement actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number, types, miles/acres of stream and headwater restoration (list actions) in lakes, pond, wetlands</li> <li>• Number and locations of Aquatic Organism Passages (AOP)</li> <li>• Number and locations of at-risk species project that restore habitat or population</li> <li>• Number of road miles with enhanced roadway drainage erosion control mechanisms</li> </ul> | PIBO<br><i>(5-year interval)</i><br>MT and SD<br>Heritage Programs<br><i>(2-year interval)</i><br>MT DEQ, SD<br>DENR<br><i>(2-year interval)</i><br>FACTS, WIT,<br>INFRA<br><i>(2-year interval)</i> |

Table 70. At -Risk Plant Species (PRISK) Selected Plan Components

| At-Risk Plant Species (PRISK)<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question  | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> )                                      |
|---|--|--|---|
| FW-DC-PRISK-01<br>FW-OBJ-PRISK-01                         | <b>MON-PRISK-01</b><br><b>At-risk plants</b><br>Are management actions and habitat conditions contributing to long-term persistence of at-risk plant species?<br><i>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv</i> | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Terrestrial invasive encroachment</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change in percent acres of terrestrial invasive species infestations near and at at-risk species occurrences</li> <li>Heritage risk status</li> <li>MT Native Plant Society threat category</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>At-risk plant species actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number, types, and locations of actions restoring habitat or populations of at-risk plant species</li> </ul> | TESP-IS<br>FACTS<br>Project Records<br>Online Heritage and MT NPS Resources<br><i>(2-year interval)</i> |
| FW-DC-PRISK-02<br>FW-OBJ-PRISK-02                         | <b>MON-PRISK-02</b><br><b>Whitebark Pine</b><br>To what extent have activities designed to sustain and restore whitebark pine been implemented?<br><i>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv</i>               | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Whitebark pine actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number, types, extent of actions restoring habitat or populations of whitebark pine</li> </ul>  | FACTS<br><i>(2-year interval)</i>   |

Table 71. Forested Vegetation (VEGF)

| Forested Vegetation (VEGF)<br>Selected Plan Components   | Monitoring Question  | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> )               |
|--|--|--|--|
| <b>FW-DC-VEGF-01</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGF-02</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGF-03</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGF-04</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGF-05</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGF-07</b><br><b>FW-DC-SOIL-03</b> | <b>MON-VEGF-01</b><br>What is the status of key characteristics contributing to ecological integrity?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iii, iv, vi | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Forested vegetation key characteristics (reported as percent of area for each R1 Broad Potential Vegetation Type)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Dominance type</li> <li>• Species presence</li> <li>• Tree size class</li> <li>• Tree canopy cover (By density class: 0-39%; 40-59%; &gt;60%)</li> <li>• Old-growth forest; proportion of area forestwide and by potential vegetation type</li> <li>• Large tree structure</li> <li>• Snag density, snags per acre for &gt;15-inch d.b.h.</li> <li>• Coarse woody debris (tons per acre)</li> </ul> <b>Land bird species/assemblages associated with forested vegetation (focal species)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Presence, habitat affiliation, and population trend (status of) avian species associated with forested vegetation at a forest wide scale</li> </ul> | FIA and/or VMAP<br><i>(5-year interval)</i><br>IMBCR<br><i>(5-year interval)</i> |
| <b>FW-OBJ-VEGF-01</b>  | <b>MON-VEGF-02</b><br>To what extent have vegetation management projects occurred?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv                             | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Vegetation Actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Number of total annual vegetation projects planned and accomplished benefiting wildlife, whitebark pine and other at-risk species habitat, pollinator habitat, non-commercial vegetation, and/or general terrestrial ecosystem conditions</li> <li>• Number of total annual vegetation acres planned and accomplished benefiting wildlife, whitebark pine and other at-risk species habitat, pollinator habitat, non-commercial vegetation, and/or general terrestrial ecosystem conditions</li> </ul>  | FACTS<br><i>(2-year interval)</i>  |
| <b>FW-STD-TIM-10</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGF-03</b>   | <b>MON-VEGF-03</b><br>To what extent are planting activities for reforestation successful?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv                     | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Planting Success</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Planting survival rates</li> <li>• Percent survival, by species, of planted stock in first and third years after planting</li> </ul>   | FACTS<br><i>(2-year interval)</i>  |

Table 72. Grassland, Shrubland, Woodland, Riparian, and Alpine Vegetation (VEGNF)

| Grassland, Shrubland, Woodland, Riparian, and Alpine Vegetation (VEGNF)<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> )  |
|---|---|---|---|
| <b>FW-DC-VEGNF-01</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGNF-03</b>  | <b>MON-VEGNF-01</b><br>What is the status of key ecological conditions of non-forested vegetation types?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iii, iv, vi | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Non-forested vegetation key characteristics (reported by forest and by Broad Potential Vegetation Type - PVT)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Percent bare ground</li> <li>Percent ground cover</li> <li>Abundance of key species (percent cover)</li> <li>Structural functional group</li> <li>Acres of invasive species infestations</li> <li>Number of new locations of invasive species of concern (acres and locations)</li> <li>Absolute cover of key species</li> <li>Acres of non-forested dominance type groups</li> </ul> <b>Land bird species/assemblage associated with non-forested vegetation (focal species)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Presence, habitat affiliation, and population trend (status of) avian species associated with non-forested vegetation at a forest wide scale</li> </ul> | FIA<br>(5-year interval)<br>IMBCR Program<br>(5-year interval)<br>PIBO<br>FACTS<br>TESP-IS<br>(2-year interval) |

Table 73. Fire and Fuels (FIRE) Selected Plan Components

| Fire and Fuels (FIRE)<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> ) |
|---|---|---|--|
| <b>FW-OBJ-FIRE-01</b>                             | <b>MON-FIRE-01</b><br>To what extent have fuel treatments occurred?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv | <b>Implementation indicator</b><br><b>Fuel treatment actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Accomplished acres of fuel treatments, by wildland urban interface and non-wildland urban interface.</li> </ul> | FACTS<br>(2-year interval)                                     |

| <b>Fire and Fuels (FIRE)<br/>Selected Plan Components</b> | <b>Monitoring Question</b>   | <b>Indicator(s) and Measure(s)</b>   | <b>Data Source/<br/>Storage (Interval<br/>of data collection)</b> |
|---|--|--|---|
| <b>FW-DC-FIRE-02</b>                                      | <b>MON-FIRE-02</b><br>To what extent are fuels treatments reducing threats to highly valued resource and assets (HVRAs)?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Fuel treatment effectiveness</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of wildland fire and fuels treatments intersections</li> <li>Number and type of fuel treatments helping control or manage fire</li> <li>Number and type of fuel treatments that changed fire behavior</li> <li>Number and type of treatments strategically located to facilitate control and/or management of the fire</li> </ul> | FTEM<br>(2-year interval)   |
| <b>FW-OBJ-FIRE-02</b><br><b>FW-GDL-FIRE-01</b>            | <b>MON-FIRE-03</b><br>To what extent have natural unplanned wildfires occurred?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv  | <b>Outcome indicator</b><br><b>Fire management actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Acres of natural unplanned wildfire</li> </ul>   | InFORM<br>(2-year interval)                                       |
| <b>FW-DC-FIRE-01</b>                                      | <b>MON-FIRE-04</b><br>Is the amount and severity of fire within desired ranges?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv, vi                                      | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Fire amount and severity</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fire severity (reported by GA and fire regime)</li> <li>Percent area of wildland fires in high, moderate, low severity</li> </ul>  | MTBS -Monitoring Trends in Burn Severity<br>(2-year interval)     |

Table 74. Invasive Species (INV) Selected Plan Components

| <b>Invasive Species (INV)<br/>Selected Plan Components</b> | <b>Monitoring Question</b>  | <b>Indicator(s) and Measure(s)</b>   | <b>Data Source/<br/>Storage (Interval<br/>of data collection)</b>       |
|--|---|--|---|
| <b>FW-DC-INV-01</b><br><b>FW-DC-VEGNF-02</b>               | <b>MON-INV-01</b><br>What is the extent of invasive plant species?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii            | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Invasive plant extent</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Invasive plant presence</li> <li>Acres of invasive species infestations</li> <li>Number of new locations of invasive species of concern (acres and locations)</li> </ul>  | FACTS<br>TESP-IS<br>(2-year interval)                                   |
| <b>FW-OBJ-INV-01</b>                                       | <b>MON-INV-02</b><br>What is the status of invasive plant species management?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Invasive species treatment effectiveness</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sample of projects monitored for treatment effectiveness and outcome of those surveys</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Invasive species actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Acres treated</li> </ul> | FACTS<br>TESP-IS<br>Project Implementation Records<br>(2-year interval) |

Table 75. Wildlife (WL) Selected Plan Components

| Wildlife (WL)<br>Selected Plan Components   | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> )                                |
|---|---|---|---|
| General Wildlife<br>FW-DC-WL-03<br>FW-OBJ-WL-01<br>FW-OBJ-WL-02   | <b>MON-WL-01</b><br>Are 1) management and 2) habitat conditions demonstrating characteristics that contribute to desired wildlife life cycle needs?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Vegetation key characteristics</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use indicators from MON-VEGF-01 (forested vegetation)</li> <li>Use indicators from MON-VEGNF-01 (non-forested vegetation)</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Wildlife actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number, types, and locations of actions contributing to maintenance or improvement of habitat or populations of at-risk wildlife species</li> <li>Number, types, and locations of actions contributing to maintenance or improvement of habitat or populations of any terrestrial wildlife species</li> </ul> | FACTS, WIT, INFRA<br>(2-year interval)  |
| General Wildlife<br>FW-DC-WL-05<br>FW-DC-WL-06<br>FW-DC-WL-07<br>FW-GDL-WL-02<br>FW-GDL-WL-03<br>FW-GDL-WL-04<br>FW-GDL-WL-05 | <b>MON-WL-02</b><br>What management actions have contributed to changes in natural movement patterns in wildlife key linkage areas?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv                 | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Vegetation key characteristics</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use indicators from MON-VEGF-01 (forested vegetation)</li> <li>Use indicators from MON-VEGNF-01 (non-forested vegetation)</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Wildlife key linkage areas management actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number, types, and locations of new structures and sustained substantial disturbances in key linkage areas.</li> </ul>   | FIA<br>(5-year interval)<br>Project tracking within key linkage areas<br>(2-year interval)        |
| General Wildlife<br>FW-DC-WL-08<br>FW-STD-WL-01<br>FW-DC-WLGB-03  | <b>MON-WL-03</b><br>What are the number of wildlife conflicts?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv  | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Wildlife conflicts</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number and locations of citations related to attractants for wildlife</li> <li>Number, location, cause and resolution of wildlife/ human conflicts</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Wildlife conflicts</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number and locations of outreach contacts from Bear Aware program</li> </ul>   | LEO Citation Reports<br>IGBST Report<br>Annual Bear Aware outreach reporting<br>(2-year interval) |

Chapter 4. Monitoring Plan

| Wildlife (WL)<br>Selected Plan Components   | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> )   |
|---|---|--|--|
| <b>General Wildlife</b><br><b>FW-DC-WL-09</b>   | <b>MON-WL-04</b><br>Is domestic sheep or goat use authorized in proximity to bighorn sheep herds?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii   | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Domestic animal authorizations</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number and locations of authorizations issued for domestic sheep or goats</li> </ul>  | NRM-Range<br>FACTS - Invasives<br>Project Records<br>(2-year interval)   |
| <b>Bats</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLBAT-01</b>  | <b>MON-WL-05</b><br>What is the status of detections of fungus harmful to bats?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv   | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Fungus detections</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number and locations of detection of fungus that are harmful to bats</li> <li>Number of actions taken to minimize the spread of disease</li> </ul>  | Montana and South Dakota Natural Heritage Programs<br>Project records<br>(2-year interval)                                     |
| <b>Big Game (Deer, Elk, Moose)</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLBG- 01</b>                           | <b>MON-WL-06</b><br>1) What is the status of big game populations by hunting district that intersect the national forest? 2) What are the types of wildlife related use by visitors, researchers, etc.?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Visitor use data</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>NVUM reports</li> <li>SUP permit and database</li> </ul> <b>Vegetation Key characteristics</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Use indicators from MON-VEGF-01 (forested vegetation)</li> <li>Use indicators from MON-VEGNF-01 (non-forested vegetation)</li> </ul> <b>Elk, mule deer, moose, populations</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Big game population estimates by region</li> </ul>           | Special Use Permit database<br>MTFWP/SDGFP annual herd status updates<br>(2-year interval)<br>FIA<br>NVUM<br>(5-year interval) |
| <b>Bison</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLBI-02</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLBI-03</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-WLBI-01</b> | <b>MON-WL-07</b><br>What management actions have occurred to improve/facilitate bison movements and avoidance of human/bison conflicts?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii   | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Bison/human conflicts</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of bison/human conflicts</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Bison management actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number and types, locations of actions that improve habitat or facilitate opening corridors for bison movement to suitable habitats within the plan area.</li> <li>Number and location of educational outreach materials distributed and/or posted</li> </ul> | FACTS, WIT, INFRA<br>(2-year interval)   |
| <b>Canada lynx</b><br><b>FW-WL-NRLMD plan components</b>                              | <b>MON-WL-08</b><br>Have there been changes to lynx habitat as a result of forest management?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv   | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Alterations of lynx habitat</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Acres changed from suitable to not currently suitable</li> <li>Number of acres of exceptions used</li> </ul>  | Project decisions<br>(2-year interval)   |



| Wildlife (WL)<br>Selected Plan Components                                   | Monitoring Question  | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> )  |
|---|--|--|---|
| <b>Greater sage-grouse</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLSG-01</b><br><b>FW-STD-WLSG-01</b> | <b>MON-WL-09</b><br>Are 1) management and 2) habitat conditions demonstrating characteristics that contribute to long term persistence of Greater Sage-grouse?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv                     | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Greater Sage-grouse Populations</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of occupied leks on Custer Gallatin National Forest</li> </ul> <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Greater Sage-grouse Habitat</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of acres change in greater sage-grouse priority and general habitat</li> </ul>   | MTFWP/SDGFP<br>Lek attendance counts<br>State (MT/SD)<br>mapping of GRSG<br>priority and general<br>habitat<br>FACTS, WIT,<br>INFRA<br><i>(2-year interval)</i> |
| <b>Grizzly Bear</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLGB-01</b>                                 | <b>MON-WL-10</b><br>To what extent are management actions changing grizzly bear habitat inside the recovery zone, relative to the 1998 baseline or 2006 baseline where applicable?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Grizzly Bear actions inside the recovery zone (report by bear management unit inside the recovery zone)</b><br><b>Percent secure habitat</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Proportion of open motorized access route density (OMARD) above 1 mi/mi<sup>2</sup> and proportion of total motorized access route density (TMARD) above 2 mi/mi<sup>2</sup></li> <li>Number of new developed sites</li> <li>Increased capacity in existing developed sites</li> <li>Number and capacity of closed developed and overnight dispersed sites</li> <li>Number and acreage of active or vacant livestock allotments</li> <li>Number and acreage of closed allotments</li> </ul> | IGBST Annual<br>Report<br><i>(2-year interval)</i>  |
| <b>Grizzly Bear</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLGB-02</b>                                 | <b>MON-WL-11</b><br>To what extent are management actions changing secure habitat and associated habitat connectivity outside the recovery zone?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv                                   | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Grizzly Bear secure habitat outside the recovery zone actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Proportion and location of secure habitat by bear analysis unit outside the recovery zone within the Demographic Monitoring Area (DMA) compared to 2008 baseline.</li> </ul>   | IGBST Annual<br>Report<br><i>(2-year interval)</i>  |

Chapter 4. Monitoring Plan

| Wildlife (WL)<br>Selected Plan Components   | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> )  |
|---|---|---|---|
| <b>Prairie Dogs</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLPD-01</b> | <b>MON-WL-12</b><br>What is status of the white tail prairie dog colony?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv                                      | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Prairie dog management actions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Location and activity status of known white tail prairie dogs' colonies</li> <li>Location and activity status of any newly found white tail prairie dogs' colony</li> </ul> | FACTS, WIT, INFRA<br>MTFWP/MNHP colony location and activity information<br>FS prairie dog colony monitoring<br>(2-year interval) |
| <b>Wolverine</b><br><b>FW-DC-WLWV-01</b>    | <b>MON-WL-13</b><br>What is the trend in persistent snow cover?<br>What is the trend in wolverine population?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - ii, iv | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Persistent snow cover</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Snow residence time</li> </ul> <b>Wolverine data</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Presence and number of individuals, both sexes present</li> </ul>                        | NRCS Snowtel Sites<br>Multispecies Mesocarnivore Monitoring Program<br>(5-year interval)  |

## Benefits to People: Multiple Uses and Ecosystem Services

Table 76. Social and economic sustainability selected plan components

| Social and Economic Sustainability (SUS)<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question  | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> )   |
|--|--|---|--|
| <b>FW-DC-SUS-02</b>  | <b>MON-SUS-01</b><br>To what extent is the national forest providing goods and services for local communities and contributing to social and economic sustainability?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - v, vii<br>Forest Service Handbook 1909.12 Section 32.13f, social, economic and cultural sustainability. | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Levels of production of multiple uses, including:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Timber products (thousand cubic feet of harvest and sales)</li> <li>Grazing (animal unit months)</li> <li>Recreational visits</li> <li>Wilderness hunting and fishing opportunities</li> <li>Downhill skiing (as measured through day visits, night visits, local and non-local)</li> </ul> <b>Levels of jobs, income and land payments from Custer Gallatin National Forest management</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of jobs</li> <li>Thousands of dollars in labor income</li> <li>Land payment revenues (such as Secure Rural Schools Act, payment in lieu of taxes, etc.) to States and Counties from National Forest System lands</li> </ul> | INFRA<br>FACTS<br>SUDS<br>TIM<br>NRM-Range<br>PILT<br><i>(2-year interval)</i><br>NVUM<br><i>(5-year interval)</i> |

Table 77. Cultural and Historic Resources (CR) Selected Plan Components

| Cultural and Historic Resources (CR)<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question  | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> ) |
|--|--|---|--|
| <b>FW-OBJ-CR-01</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-CR-02</b>                       | <b>MON-CR-01</b><br>To what extent are management actions occurring to contribute to sustainability of cultural and historic resources?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - v<br>Forest Service Handbook 1909.12 Section 32.13f, social, economic and cultural sustainability | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Cultural and historic resources</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of outreach or interpretive actions</li> <li>Number of priority assets with condition assessments and actions taken</li> </ul> | NRM - Heritage<br><i>(2-year interval)</i>                     |

Table 78. Permitted Livestock Grazing (GRAZ) Selected Plan Components

| Permitted Livestock Grazing (GRAZ)<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> ) |
|--|---|--|--|
| <b>FW-OBJ-GRAZ-01</b>  | <b>MON-GRAZ-01</b><br>Are annual AUMs authorized at desired AUM objectives?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - vii<br>Forest Service Handbook 1909.12<br>Section 32.13f, social, economic and cultural sustainability | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Animal Unit Month</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual AUM by allotment and by forest</li> </ul> | NRM-Range<br>(2-year interval)                                 |

Table 79. Timber (TIM) Selected Plan Components

| Timber (TIM)<br>Selected Plan Components     | Monitoring Question  | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> ) |
|--|--|--|--|
| <b>FW-OBJ-TIM-01</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-TIM-02</b> | <b>MON-TIM-01</b><br>To what extent are timber and wood products offered for sale?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - vii<br>Forest Service Handbook 1909.12<br>Section 32.13f, social, economic and cultural sustainability | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Timber Sales</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual Million Board Feet offered for sale compared to sustained yield limits (report by saw logs and not sawlogs)</li> </ul> | TIMS<br>(2-year interval)                                      |

Table 80. Infrastructure; Roads and Trails (RT), Facilities (FAC) Selected Plan Components

| Infrastructure; Roads and Trails (RT), Facilities (FAC)<br>Selected Plan Components                              | Monitoring Question  | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> ) |
|--|--|--|--|
| <b>FW-OBJ-RT-01</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-RT-02</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-RT-03</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-RT-04</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-FAC-01</b> | <b>MON-Infrastructure-01</b><br>To what extent are roads, trails and facilities maintained?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - v | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Roads, trails and facilities</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Percent of high clearance vehicle roads maintained annually</li> <li>Percent of passenger clearance vehicle roads maintained annually</li> <li>Number trail miles maintained to standard annually</li> <li>Number trail miles with maintenance provided annually</li> <li>Percent of administrative facilities maintained annually</li> </ul> | INFRA<br>(2-year interval)                                     |

Table 81. Recreation Settings, Opportunities, and Access Selected Plan Components

| Recreation Settings, Opportunities, and Access Selected Plan Components   | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/ Storage ( <i>Interval of data collection</i> )                           |
|---|---|---|---|
| <b>FW-OBJ-REC-01</b>  | <b>MON-REC-01</b><br>To what extent are recreation facilities currently in Riparian Management Zones being removed or modified to improve riparian conditions?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - v | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Riparian management zone - Recreation facilities</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of removed or modified recreation facilities to improve riparian conditions</li> </ul>  | INFRA<br>(2-year interval)  |
| <b>FW-OBJ-ROSP-02</b><br><b>FW-OBJ-ROSSPNM-01</b>   | <b>MON-REC-02</b><br>What management actions have occurred to eliminate identified motorized travel incursions?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - v  | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Travel incursions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number and types of actions that eliminate motorized travel incursions in Primitive and Semi-Primitive Non-Motorized Recreation Opportunity Settings</li> </ul>   | OHV/Snow Ranger Annual Reporting Spreadsheet<br>(2-year interval)                     |
| <b>FW-OBJ-ROSP-01</b>   | <b>MON-REC-03</b><br>To what extent have signs been placed near wilderness and recommended wilderness to inform of motorized restrictions?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - v                     | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Travel incursions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number and placements of signs near wilderness and/or recommended wilderness to inform of motorized restrictions</li> </ul>   | OHV/Snow Ranger Annual Reporting Spreadsheet<br>(2-year interval)                     |
| <b>FW-DC-RECDEV-02</b>  | <b>MON-REC-04</b><br>How satisfied are visitors with developed sites?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) - v  | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Developed sites satisfaction</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Satisfaction ratings</li> </ul>   | NVUM<br>(5-year interval)   |
| <b>FW-DC-RECDEV-05</b><br><b>FW-DC-RECSUP-04</b>  | <b>MON-REC-05</b><br>To what extent have hazard trees been managed in developed recreation sites?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) – v  | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Developed sites hazard trees</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of hazard tree surveys conducted, results of hazard tree surveys, outcomes of the surveys</li> </ul>  | Forest Supervisor's Office Records<br>(2-year interval)                               |
| <b>FW-DC-RECDEV-07</b><br><b>FW-DC-RECDEV-08</b><br><b>MG-OBJ-HREA-01</b><br><b>MG-OBJ-HLREA-01</b><br><b>AB-OBJ-RCREA-01</b> | <b>MON-REC-06</b><br>To what extent have recreation sites been developed or modified for sustainable recreation?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) – v, vi   | <b>Implementation indicators</b><br><b>Developed sites actions responding to changed conditions</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Number of decisions/actions where modifications occurred to adapt to changing conditions</li> <li>Number of lake shore campground modified for sustainable recreation opportunities at Hebgen Lake</li> <li>Number of day use access areas modified within the Hyalite Recreation Emphasis Area</li> </ul> | INFRA<br>IGBST Annual Report in Grizzly Bear PCA Project Records<br>(2-year interval) |

Table 82. Designated Wilderness (DWA) Selected Plan Components

| Designated Wilderness (DWA)<br>Selected Plan Components      | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)  | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> )  |
|--|---|--|---|
| FW-DC-DWA-01<br>FW-DC-DWA-02<br>FW-DC-DWA-03<br>FW-DC-DWA-04 | <b>MON-DWA-01</b><br>Is wilderness character in existing<br>wilderness being maintained?<br>* 36 CFR 219.12(a)(5) – v | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Wilderness Character</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Naturalness, solitude, etc.<br/>Based on the limits of acceptable change</li> <li>Wilderness maintained to standard</li> </ul> | National<br>Wilderness<br>Monitoring<br>Protocols<br><br>Wilderness<br>Character baseline<br>inventory<br>(5-year interval)<br><br>INFRA<br>(2-year interval) |

Table 83. Wilderness Study Area (WSA) Selected Plan Components

| Wilderness Study Area (WSA)<br>Selected Plan Components | Monitoring Question   | Indicator(s) and Measure(s)   | Data Source/<br>Storage ( <i>Interval<br/>of data collection</i> ) |
|---|---|---|--|
| FW-DC-WSA-01  | <b>MON-WSA 01</b><br>Is the aggregate trend in mountain<br>bike and motorized recreation use<br>allowing for the maintenance of<br>wilderness character as required by<br>the 1977 Montana Wilderness Study<br>Act? | <b>Outcome indicators</b><br><b>Wilderness Character</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Percent participation in mountain bike and motorized<br/>recreation activities in the WSA.</li> </ul> | NVUM<br>(5-year interval)  |

# Glossary

The glossary defines terms used in the plan or plan appendices. If a term's definition(s) is associated with a particular species, management direction, or originates from a specific source, the source is cited or applicable direction is referenced with the following bracketed abbreviations:

- [CFR] Code of Federal Regulations
- [FSM] Forest Service Manual
- [FSH] Forest Service Handbook
- [GBCS] Conservation Strategy for the Grizzly Bear in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2016)
- [LCAS] Lynx Conservation and Assessment Strategy 2013
- [NWCG] National Wildfire Coordinating Group

## A-C

**activity area (soils):** A land area affected by a management activity to which soil quality standards are applied. An activity area must be feasible to monitor and includes harvest units within timber sale areas, prescribed burn areas, and grazing areas or pastures within livestock allotments, riparian areas, recreation areas, and alpine areas. Temporary roads, skid trails, and landings are part of an activity area.

**adaptive management:** The general framework encompassing the three phases of planning: assessment, plan development, and monitoring (36 CFR 219.5). This framework supports decision-making that meets management objectives while simultaneously accruing information to improve future management by adjusting the plan or plan implementation. Adaptive management is a structured, cyclical process for planning and decision-making in the face of uncertainty and changing conditions with feedback from monitoring, which includes using the planning process to actively test assumptions, track relevant conditions over time, and measure management effectiveness.

**administrative pasture:** A pasture for use primarily by government stock to facilitate the administration and management of public lands. Administrative pastures may also be used as a forage reserve for other administrative needs and resource management during times of drought, wildland fire, and so forth.

**administrative site:** A location or facility constructed for use primarily by government employees to facilitate the administration and management of public lands. Examples on National Forest System lands include, but are not limited to, ranger stations, warehouses, and guard stations [GBCS].

**administrative use:** A generic term for authorized agency activity.

**agency-authorized personnel:** Parties authorized by the Forest Service to conduct activities on the national forest, including contractors, outfitters, guides, permittees, concessionaries, and volunteers.

**aircraft:** A device that is used or intended to be used for flight in the air. Motorized aircraft include types of aircraft including: Airplane, an engine-driven fixed-wing aircraft heavier than air, that is supported in flight by the dynamic reaction of the air against its wings; helicopter, a rotorcraft that, for its horizontal motion, depends principally on its engine-driven rotors; rotorcraft, a heavier-than-air aircraft that depends principally for its support in flight on the lift generated by one or more rotors (14 CFR 1.1).

**airfield:** Designated aircraft landing location open to either public and/or administrative uses.

**airshed:** Typically, a geographic area where the air is subject to similar conditions of air pollution. Under the Clean Air Act amendments, all national parks larger than 6,000 acres, national wilderness areas larger than 5,000 acres which existed before August 7, 1977, and certain designated Tribal areas are considered class I airsheds and are provided the most protection through limitation of additional air pollution.

**All-American Road:** Designated by the U.S. Department of Transportation, the most scenic byways are designated All-American Roads, which must meet two out of the six intrinsic qualities. The designation means they have features that do not exist elsewhere in the United States and are unique and important enough to be tourist destinations unto themselves.

**allotment:** A designated area of land available for permitted livestock grazing (36 CFR 222). A grazing allotment can include National Forest System and non-National Forest System lands. Permits are issued for the use of allotments or portions of allotments. Allotments are in active status when grazing permits have been issued; allotments are in vacant status when they do not have a grazing permit issued; and allotments are in closed status when they have been closed to livestock grazing by administrative decision or action (FSM 2205).

**allotment infrastructure:** See infrastructure.

**allotment management plan:** A document that specifies the program of action designated to reach a given set of objectives. It is prepared in consultation with the permittee(s) involved; prescribes the manner in and extent to which livestock operations will be conducted in order to meet the multiple-use, sustained yield, economic, and other needs and objectives as determined for the lands, involved; describes the type, location, ownership, and general specifications for the range improvements in place or to be installed and maintained on the lands to meet the livestock grazing and other objectives of land management; and contains such other provisions relating to livestock grazing and other objectives as may be prescribed by the Chief, Forest Service, consistent with applicable law (36 CFR 222).

**alternative transportation:** All modes of travel other than the private motor vehicle. Alternative transportation systems connect communities to forests, help manage congestion and ease parking shortages for areas at or nearing capacity. Alternative transportation can also contribute to improving air quality, soundscapes and reduce wildlife and auto collisions.

**animal unit month:** The amount of dry forage required by one mature cow of approximately 1,000 pounds or its equivalent, for 1 month, based on a forage allowance of 26 pounds per day. Not synonymous with animal month.

**appropriate management level:** Means the maximum number of wild horses, excluding the current years foal crop, that can be maintained within an area without causing deterioration of rangeland resources.

**at-risk species:** Federally recognized threatened, endangered, proposed, and candidate species, and species of conservation concern that are known to occur in the plan area and relevant to planning process (36 CFR 219.6(b)).

**bare ground:** All land surface not covered by vegetation, rock or litter.

**barrier, habitat connectivity:** A physical obstruction which precludes the movement of animals.



**baseline:** Levels for grizzly bears reflect the environmental conditions (such as secure habitat, developed sites, and permitted livestock grazing allotments) at a specific point in time within the recovery zone/primary conservation area, as recommended in the Conservation Strategy for Grizzly Bears in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem (GBCS). Baseline and current habitat values are documented in annual reports by the Interagency Grizzly Bear Study Team. Current baseline values for secure habitat, developed sites, and permitted livestock allotments are presented in plan appendix F. Modifications to these values will be made as needed to reflect subsequent updates to the GBCS.

**bear-human conflict:** An interaction between a bear and human in which bears either do, or attempt to, injure people, or in which humans may or may not be present, but bears damage property, kill or injure livestock, damage beehives, obtain anthropogenic foods or attractants or agricultural crops.

**best management practice:** The method(s), measure(s), or practice(s) selected by an agency to meet its nonpoint source control needs. Best management practices include but are not limited to structural and nonstructural controls and operation and maintenance procedures. Best management practices can be applied before, during, and after pollution-producing activities to reduce or eliminate the introduction of pollutants into receiving waters (36 CFR 219.19) or into the air. Best management practices is a term also used in other resource areas to describe methods or techniques found to be the most effective and practical means in achieving an objective (such as preventing or minimizing impacts from grazing, invasive weed establishment and spread, etc.) while making use of the resources.

**bison suitable habitat:** Grass, forb and shrub dominated landscapes serve as general range; forested areas with less than 25 percent coniferous canopy cover serve as spring range.

**biological control (also referred to as biological weed treatment):** Any enemy, antagonist, or competitor used to control a plant pest or noxious weed (Plant Protection Act of 2000).

**biophysical settings:** A grouping of potential vegetation types based on broad climatic and site conditions, such as temperature and moisture gradients. Also see “potential vegetation types.”

**boreal forest (lynx):** A forest type with which lynx and snowshoe hares are strongly associated. The predominant vegetation of boreal forest is conifer trees, primarily species of spruce (*Picea* spp.) and fir (*Abies* spp.). At the landscape scale within each region, natural and human-caused disturbance processes (for example, fire, wind, insect infestations and forest management) influence the spatial and temporal distribution of lynx populations by affecting the distribution of good habitat for snowshoe hares (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Critical Habitat Final Rule 2009).

**broadcast burn:** A management treatment where a prescribed fire is allowed to burn over a designated area within well-defined boundaries. A broadcast burn is used for reduction of fuel hazard, as a resource management treatment, or both.

**candidate species:** A status for (1) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service candidate species, a species for which the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service possesses sufficient information on vulnerability and threats to support a proposal to list as endangered or threatened, but for which no proposed rule has yet been published by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service; for (2) National Marine Fisheries Service candidate species, a species that is: (i) the subject of a petition to list and for which the National Marine Fisheries Service has determined that listing may be warranted, pursuant to section 4(b)(3)(A) of the Endangered Species Act (16 United States Code 1533(b)(3)(A)), or (ii) not the subject of a petition but for which the National Marine Fisheries Service has announced in the Federal Register the initiation of a status review.

**capability and potential:** Potential is the highest ecological status an area can attain given no political, social, or economical constraints. Capability is the highest ecological status an area can attain given political, social, or economical constraints. These constraints are often referred to as limiting factors. The capability of an area of land and/or water to produce resources, supply goods and services, and allow resource uses under a specified set of management practices and at a given level of management intensity. Capability depends upon current conditions and site conditions (climate, slope, landform, soils, and geology), as well as the application of management practices (for example, silviculture systems, protection from fires, insects, and disease).

**cave course:** The area between lines projected from the outside walls of an underlying cave passage at a 45-degree angle to the surface.

**channel avulsion:** A process by which flow diverts out of an established stream channel into a new stream channel on the adjacent floodplain.

**chemical control (also referred to as chemical weed treatment):** Refers to any technique that involves the application of a chemical (pesticide) to control invasive species infestations.

**coarse woody debris:** Woody material derived from tree limbs, boles and roots in various stages of decay that is larger than three inches in diameter.

**commercial use or activity:** A use or activity on National Forest System lands (a) where an entry or participation fee is charged, or (b) where the primary purpose is the sale of a good or service, and in either case, regardless of whether the use or activity is intended to produce a profit (36 CFR 251.51).

**communication facility:** See infrastructure.

**composition:** The biological elements within the different levels of biological organization, from genes and species to communities and ecosystems.

**connecting corridors:** For wildlife, these are areas with no barriers and minimal impediments, through which wild animals are able to move between patches of suitable habitat.

**connectivity:** The ecological conditions that exist at several spatial and temporal scales that provides landscape linkages that permit the exchange of flow, sediments, and nutrients; the daily and seasonal movements of animals within home ranges; the dispersal and genetic interchange between populations; and the long distance range shifts of species, such as in response to climate change (36 CFR 219.19). Connectivity needs vary by species. For example, Yellowstone cutthroat trout are able to move upstream to spawn as long as there is not a barrier to connectivity, such as a dam.

**conservation:** The protection, preservation, management, or restoration of natural environments, ecological communities, and species.

**construction:** Creating a new infrastructure feature where none previously existed.

**control:** With respect to invasive species (plant, pathogen, vertebrate, or invertebrate species), control is defined as any activity or action taken to reduce the population, contain, limit the spread, or reduce the effects of an invasive species. Control activities are generally directed at established free-living infestations, and may not necessarily be intended to eradicate the targeted infestation in all cases.

**cool season grass:** Cool season grasses (for example, various wheatgrass, needlegrass, brome grass, bluegrass species) start their growth early in spring and continue that growth while cool temperatures

and rain prevails. They grow best when temperatures are 40 to 75 °Fahrenheit. They do not grow well during the hot periods in midsummer and often become semi-dormant. They may grow again in the fall as temperatures cool and late summer precipitation replenishes soil moisture. Thus, there may be two growing periods for these grasses: early spring and late summer or fall. Cool season species generally exhibit the C3 photosynthetic pathway; also known as a C3 plant.

**cover:** The elements of the environment used by an animal for hiding. Cover varies depending upon the species or the time of year and may include a variety of vegetation types as well as topography. The amount and quality of cover needed depends on the animal's size, mobility, and reluctance or willingness to venture into relatively open areas.

**cover type:** The existing vegetation of an area described by the dominant plant species. Also see "forest type."

**critical habitat:** (For a threatened or endangered species) (1) the specific areas within the geographical area occupied by the species, at the time it is listed in accordance with the provisions of section 4 of the Endangered Species Act (16 United States Code 1533), on which are found those physical or biological features (a) essential to the conservation of the species, and (b) which may require special management considerations or protection; and (2) specific areas outside the geographical area occupied by the species at the time it is listed in accordance with the provisions of section 4 of the Endangered Species Act (16 United States Code 1533), upon a determination by the Secretary that such areas are essential for the conservation of the species. Endangered Species Act, section 3 (5)(A), (16 United States Code 1532 (3)(5)(A)). Critical habitat is designated through rulemaking by the Secretary of the Interior or Commerce (Endangered Species Act, sections 4 (a)(3) and (b)(2) (16 United States Code 1533 (a)(3) and (b)(2)).

**critical viewing platform:** Popular or iconic travelways and viewpoints identified through a public review process from where people have a substantial interest in the appearance of the national forest landscape.

**crown fire:** A fire that advances from top to top of trees or shrubs more or less independent of a surface fire.

**culmination of mean annual increment of growth:** See "mean annual increment of growth."

**cultural landscape:** The National Park Service defines a cultural landscape as a geographic area, including both cultural and natural resources and the wildlife or domestic animals therein, associated with a historic event, activity, person or exhibiting other cultural or aesthetic values.

**cultural control (also referred to as cultural weed treatment):** Refers to any technique that involves maintaining field conditions such that weeds are less likely to become established and/or increase in number. Examples of cultural weed control would be avoiding overgrazing of rangeland, using well-adapted competitive forage species, and maintaining good soil fertility.

**culturally significant area:** Areas that have spiritual, historic, scientific or social value for past, present or future generations including the significance of the natural elements of land, water and vegetation.

## D-F

**dams (jurisdictional):** Refers only to jurisdictional dams as defined in the Forest Service Handbook 7506. Jurisdictional dam is defined by statutes and rules as Forest Service operated dams and dams operated by the holder of a special use authorization that meet one or more of the following criteria:

- Dams with a high hazard potential classification;
- Dams with a significant hazard potential classification; and
- Dams with a low or undetermined hazard potential classification that:
  - Equal or exceed 25 feet in height and exceed 15 acre-feet in storage, or
  - Exceed 6 feet in height and equal or exceed 50 acre-feet in storage.

**day use:** Use of a developed recreation area generally sunrise to sunset dependent upon the season and enforced using 36 CFR 261.58(u).

**deciduous (plant):** Plant parts, particularly leaves, that are shed at regular intervals, or at a given stage of development, for example, a deciduous plant regularly loses or sheds its leaves.

**decision document:** A record of decision, decision notice, or decision memo (36 CFR 220.3).

**decommission:** Demolishing and removing existing infrastructure including site restoration (related: road decommissioning).

**designated area:** An area or feature identified and managed to maintain its unique special character or purpose; some categories of designated areas may be designated only by statute and some categories may be established administratively in the land management planning process or by other administrative processes of the Federal executive branch; examples of statutorily designated areas are national heritage areas, national recreational areas, national scenic trails, wild and scenic rivers, wilderness areas, and wilderness study areas; examples of administratively designated areas are experimental forests, research natural areas, scenic byways, botanical areas, and significant caves (36 CFR 219.19).

**desired condition (DC):** A description of specific social, economic, and/or ecological characteristics of the plan area, or a portion of the plan area, toward which management of the land and resources should be directed.

**detrimental soil displacement:** A specific type of detrimental soil disturbance most often caused by mechanical removal of surface soil layers associated with land grading, temporary road construction, or land scarification. The physical removal of upper soil layers.

**detrimental soil disturbance:** Management-caused soil disturbance in vegetation management areas that persists on the landscape for an extended period of time unless restoration actions are taken and is severe and extensive enough to reduce soil productivity and/or the ability of the land to provide desired goods and services.

**desired nonnative species:** Species that contribute to conservation or management objectives such as providing habitat or food resources, or providing desirable ecosystem functions.

**developed recreation site:** An area that has been improved or developed for recreation (36 CFR section 261.2). A recreation site on National Forest System lands that has a development scale of 3, 4, or 5:

- Development scale 3 (moderate site modification) is where facilities are about equal in terms of protection of the natural site and user comfort. The contemporary/rustic design of

improvements is usually based on use of native materials. Inconspicuous vehicular traffic controls are usually provided. Roads may be hard surfaced and trails formalized, with the primary access over high-standard roads. Development density is about three family units per acre. Interpretive services are informal if offered but generally direct.

- Development scale 4 (heavy site modification) is where some facilities are designed strictly for comfort and the convenience of users and facility design may incorporate synthetic materials. There may be extensive use of artificial surfacing of roads and trails. Vehicular traffic control usually is obvious, with the primary access usually over paved roads. Development density is three to five family units per acre. Plant materials are usually native. Interpretive services, if offered, are often formal or structured.
- Development scale 5 (extensive site modification) is where facilities are mostly designed for the comfort and convenience of users and usually include flush toilets; may include showers, bathhouses, laundry facilities, and electrical hookups. Synthetic materials are commonly used. Walks may be formal and trails may be surfaced. Access is usually by high-speed highways. The development density is five or more family units per acre. Plant materials may be non-native. Formal interpretive services are usually available. Plant materials may be non-native, and mowed lawns and clipped shrubs are not unusual.

**developed sites (per grizzly bear direction):** Areas developed with permanent infrastructure to accommodate concentrated recreation and/or administrative use. Examples include, but are not limited to campgrounds, picnic areas, trailheads, boat launches, rental cabins, recreation residences, lodges, visitor centers and administrative sites.

**diameter breast height (d.b.h.):** The diameter of a tree measured 4.5-feet above the ground on the uphill side of the tree, or diameter of a log measured 4.5-feet from the large end of the log.

**dispersed camping:** The practice of camping outside of a developed campground, including designated dispersed camping, dispersed vehicular camping, or back-country camping.

**dispersed recreation:** General term referring to recreation use outside developed recreation sites; this includes activities such as scenic driving, hiking, backpacking, climbing, hunting, fishing, snowmobiling, horseback riding, cross-country skiing, and recreation in primitive environments.

**distribution line:** The facility in an electric power system used to carry electricity from the transmission system to individual consumers. Distribution lines typically operate in a voltage range of 4kV to 46kV.

**disturbance:** An event that alters the structure, composition, or function of terrestrial or aquatic habitats; any relatively discrete event in time that disrupts ecosystem, watershed, community, or species population structure and/or function and changes resources, substrate availability, or the physical environment. Natural disturbances include, among others, drought, floods, wind, fires, wildlife grazing, and insects and pathogens; human-caused disturbances include actions such as timber harvest, livestock grazing, roads, and the introduction of exotic species (36 CFR 219.19).

**disturbance activities:** Are activities which result in notable vegetation removal, soil disturbance, and/or altered behavior of wildlife. Examples include, but are not limited to road construction and timber harvest.

**disturbance regime:** A description of the characteristic types of disturbance on a given landscape; the frequency, severity, size, and distribution of these characteristic disturbance types, and their interactions. The natural pattern of periodic disturbances, such as fire or flooding (36 CFR 219.19).

**driver (ecology):** See “ecosystem driver.”

**duff:** A highly decomposed transitional soil layer formed in forested soils between partially decomposed forest litter at the surface and underlying mineral soil.

**early detection:** The process of finding, identifying, and quantifying new, small, or previously unknown infestations of aquatic or terrestrial invasive species prior to (or in the initial stages of) its establishment as free-living expanding population. Early detection of an invasive species is typically coupled with integrated activities to rapidly assess and respond with quick and immediate actions to eradicate, control, or contain it.

**ecological condition:** The biological and physical environment that can affect the diversity of plant and animal communities, the persistence of native species, and the productive capacity of ecological systems; ecological conditions include habitat and other influences on species and the environment; examples of ecological conditions include the abundance and distribution of aquatic and terrestrial habitats, connectivity, roads and other structural developments, human uses, and invasive species (36 CFR 219.19).

**ecological diversity:** See “ecosystem diversity.”

**ecological integrity:** The quality or condition of an ecosystem when its dominant ecological characteristics (for example, composition, structure, function, connectivity, and species composition and diversity) occur within the natural range of variation and can withstand and recover from most perturbations imposed by natural environmental dynamics or human influence (36 CFR 219.19).

**ecological site:** A conceptual division of the landscape that is defined as a distinctive kind of land based on recurring soil, landform, geological, and climate characteristics that differs from other kinds of land in its ability to produce distinctive kinds and amounts of vegetation and in its ability to respond similarly to management actions and natural disturbances (interagency definition).

**ecological site descriptions:** A standard reference for natural resource information for all Federal agencies and other interested groups/organizations. Ecological site descriptions are tools to assess lands for potential values or resource specific concerns, along with information on wildlife habitat, carbon pools, vulnerability to loss or degradation, and site restoration potential. Ecological site descriptions include the known rangeland plant community types that may occur on a site as well as the single climax plant community. Ecological site descriptions should relate degree of soil development, hydrologic and ecosystem functions, and other ecological knowledge to the known plant communities. The ecological site description also outlines the processes of change that may occur on a site as well as showing change as a deviation from the climax or natural plant community.

**ecological threshold:** See “threshold.”

**ecological sustainability:** See “sustainability.”

**ecosystem** (36 CFR 219.19): A spatially explicit, relatively homogeneous unit of the Earth that includes all interacting organisms and elements of the abiotic environment within its boundaries. The term ecosystem can be used at a variety of scales; for the plan, the ecosystem is referred to spatially at the

forestwide and geographic area scales as well as within potential vegetation types. An ecosystem is commonly described in terms of its:

- *composition*: The biological elements within the different levels of biological organization, from genes and individual plant and animal species to communities (such as cover types).
- *structure*: The organization and physical arrangement of biological elements such as snags and down woody debris, vertical (size class and structure class) and horizontal (density) distribution of vegetation, stream habitat complexity, landscape pattern, and connectivity.
- *function*: Ecological processes that sustain composition and structure, such as energy flow, nutrient cycling and retention, soil development and retention, predation and herbivory, and natural disturbances such as wind, fire, and floods.
- *connectivity*: See “connectivity.”

**ecosystem diversity**: The variety and relative extent of ecosystems (36 CFR 219.19).

**ecosystem driver**: A natural or human-induced factor that directly or indirectly causes a change in an ecosystem. Examples include climate change, fire events, invasive species and flooding.

**ecosystem resilience**: See “resilience.”

**ecosystem services**: The benefit(s) people obtain from an ecosystem, including: (1) provisioning services, such as clean air and fresh water, energy, fuel, forage, fiber, and minerals; (2) regulating services, such as long-term storage of carbon; climate regulation; water filtration, purification, and storage; soil stabilization; flood control; and disease regulation; (3) supporting services, such as pollination, seed dispersal, soil formation, and nutrient cycling; and (4) cultural services, such as educational, aesthetic, spiritual and cultural heritage values, recreational experiences and tourism opportunities (36 CFR 219.19).

**ecosystem stressor**: See “stressors.”

**ecotone**: Ecotones exist where there is a gradual blending of the two ecosystems across a broad area or they may be manifested as a sharp boundary line. Without periodic disturbance processes such as fire, plants in competition extend themselves on one side of the ecotone as far as their ability to maintain themselves allows. Beyond this, competitors of the adjacent community can take over. As a result, the ecotone can represent a shift in dominance. This zone shifts in location and condition based on climate influences, successional processes, and disturbance processes. Examples include transition zones in riparian areas between terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems or between non-forested grass/shrub communities and forested communities.

**effective separation**: The spatial or temporal separation between wild sheep and domestic sheep or goats to minimize the potential for association and the probability of transmission of diseases between species (Wild Sheep Working Group 2012).

**eligible river**: Within the Wild and Scenic River Act, eligibility is an evaluation of whether a candidate river is free-flowing and possesses one or more outstandingly remarkable values. If found eligible, a candidate river is analyzed as to its current level of development (water resources projects, shoreline development, and accessibility) and a tentative classification is made that it be placed into one or more of three classes—wild, scenic or recreational. Eligibility and classification represent an inventory of existing conditions.

**endangered species:** A species that the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of Commerce has determined is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range. Endangered species are identified by the Secretary of the Interior in accordance with the 1973 Endangered Species Act. Endangered species are listed at 50 Code of Federal Regulations sections 17.11, 17.12, and 224.101.

**environmental justice community:** A community with a meaningfully greater minority or low-income population, compared to the population as a whole. For the purposes of the Custer Gallatin plan, environmental justice communities are defined as those communities where either low-income or minority populations (or both) comprise at least 20 percent of the total community population.

**ephemeral stream:** A channel or draw reach with a definable channel or evidence of annual scour or deposition that only carries surface flow in direct response to precipitation.

**eradication:** With respect to invasive species (plant, pathogen, vertebrate, or invertebrate species), eradication is defined as the removal or elimination of the last remaining individual invasive species in the target infestation on a given site. It is determined to be complete when the target species is absent from the site for a continuous time period (that is, several years after the last individual was observed). Eradication of an infestation of invasive species is relative to the time-frame provided for the treatment procedures. Considering the need for multiple treatments over time, certain populations can be eradicated using proper integrated management techniques.

**fire control:** See “fire suppression.”

**fire exclusion:** The disruption of a characteristic pattern of fire intensity and occurrence (primarily through fire suppression).

**fire frequency:** The number of times that fires occur within a defined area and time period.

**fire intensity:** The amount of energy released by a fire, however no single metric (including reaction intensity, fireline intensity, temperature, residence time, radiant energy and others) captures all the relevant aspects of fire energy. Fireline intensity is most frequently used in forested ecosystems.

**fire regime:** A general classification of the role fire would play across a landscape in the absence of modern human mechanical intervention but including the influence of prehistoric human burning. The five natural fire regimes are classified based on the average number of years between fires combined with the severity of the fire (the amount of vegetation replacement), and its effect on the dominant overstory vegetation. The five natural fire regimes on the Custer Gallatin National Forest are in table 83.

**Table 84. The five natural fire regimes on the Custer Gallatin National Forest**

| Fire Regime Group | Frequency (Fire Return Interval) | Severity  | Representative Vegetation Types/Habitats  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|---|---|
| I                 | 0 to 35 years                    | Nonlethal, low to mixed severity (less than 75 percent of the dominant overstory vegetation replaced) | Ponderosa pine and dry-site Douglas-fir<br>Open forest, woodland, shrub and savanna structures maintained by frequent non-lethal fire; also includes mixed severity forest that create a mosaic of different age classes, post-fire open forests; mean fire return interval can be greater than 35 years in systems with high temporal variation. |



| Fire Regime Group | Frequency (Fire Return Interval) | Severity   | Representative Vegetation Types/Habitats  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------|--|---|
| II                | 0 to 35 years                    | Stand-replacing (greater than 75 percent of the dominant overstory vegetation replaced)                | Drier grasslands; cool-site sagebrush (such as mountain big sagebrush)<br>Shrub or grasslands maintained or cycled by frequent fire; fire typically remove non-sprouting shrubs, tops of sprouting shrubs and most tree regeneration.   |
| III               | 35 to 100+ years                 | Nonlethal, low to mixed severity (less than 75 percent of the dominant overstory vegetation replaced)  | Interior dry-site shrub communities (such as warm-site sagebrush-Wyoming big sagebrush, basin big sagebrush); moist-site Douglas-fir, dry lodgepole pine forests<br>Mosaic of different age post fire open forest, early to mid-seral forest structure stages, and shrub and herb dominated patches, maintained by infrequent fire events.  |
| IV                | 35 to 100+ years                 | Stand-replacing, high severity (greater than 75 percent of the dominant overstory vegetation replaced) | Moist lodgepole pine, subalpine fir, Engelmann spruce, aspen, and sagebrush steppe<br>Large patches of similar age, post-fire structures; early to mid-seral forests cycled by infrequent fire events.  |
| V                 | 200+ years                       | Generally stand-replacing, high severity but can include low and mixed severity                        | Boreal forest and high elevation conifer forest; lodgepole pine/subalpine fir; subalpine fir; whitebark pine<br>Variable size patches of shrub and herb dominated structures, or early- to mid- to late-seral forest depending on the type of biophysical environment. Cycled by rare fire or other disturbance events. Often have complex structures influenced by small gap disturbances and understory regeneration. |

**fire risk:** The probability and consequence of a wildfire burning in an area (based on the wildfire hazard, potential losses, and weather conditions). Elevated concerns for fire risk include areas in the wildland urban interface, areas with a high density of recreation sites, and along control lines where even relatively low fuel loads contribute to a level of fire intensity that results in a high resistance to control for firefighters protecting values at risk. These conditions can also increase fire severity and the probability of negative impacts to values at risk.

**fire severity:** Describes the immediate effects of fire on vegetation, litter, or soils. Fire severity depends not only on the amount of heat generated by a fire (intensity) but also on the duration and residence time of the fire. While a fast-moving, wind-driven fire may be intense, a long-lasting fire that just creeps along in the forest underbrush could transfer more total heat to plant tissue or soil. In this way, a slow-moving, low intensity fire could have much more severe and complex effects on something like forest soil than a faster-moving, higher-intensity fire in the same vegetation. For this reason, the terms fire intensity and fire severity are not synonymous or interchangeable.

**fire suppression:** The work and activities connected with fire extinguishing operations, beginning with discovery and continuing until the fire is completely extinguished.

**fireline intensity:** The rate of energy release per unit length of the fire front expressed as BTU per foot of fireline per second or as kilowatts per meter of fireline. This is a physical parameter that is related to flame length. This expression is commonly used to describe the power of wildland fires, but it does not necessarily follow that the severity, defined as the vegetation mortality, will be correspondingly high.

**flame length:** The distance between the flame tip and the midpoint of the flame depth at the base of the flame (generally the ground surface), an indicator of fire intensity [NWCG].

**floodplain:** Lowlands bordering stream or river channel which are subject to recurrent flooding through surface and sub-surface hydrological connections. Floodplains are composed of sediments, gravels and rocks, and organic materials carried by streams and deposited in-stream and/or on land during flooding.

**flow regime:** The temporal patterns of high and low flows in a stream or river. The flow regime is key driver in the geomorphic process that shape river channels, floodplains; can influences shallow water aquifers (for example, hyporheic zone) that return flow to surface waters; and helps shape ecological processes influencing plant and animal diversity of aquatic and riparian organisms.

**focal species:** A small subset of species whose status permits inference to the integrity of the larger ecological system to which it belongs and provides meaningful information regarding the effectiveness of the plan in maintaining or restoring the ecological conditions to maintain the diversity of plant and animal communities in the plan area. Focal species would be commonly selected on the basis of their functional role in ecosystems (36 CFR 219.19).

**forage:** Non-woody plants available to livestock or wildlife for feed.

**forage reserve allotments, also known as grassbanks:** A designation for allotments on which there is no current term permit obligation for some or all of the estimated livestock grazing capacity and where there has been a determination made to use the available forage on the allotment to enhance management flexibility for authorized livestock use. Forage reserve allotments may be authorized livestock use when there is a loss of forage availability or to resolve short-term resource concerns arising from a variety of factors including but not limited to drought, wildland fire, rangeland restoration activities, litigation or consultation needs, or short-term resolution of resource concerns on other National Forest System allotments (FSH 2209.13, 13.3).

**foraging habitat:** For Canada lynx includes areas that support the primary prey (snowshoe hare) of lynx and has the vegetation structure suitable for lynx to capture prey. These conditions may occur in early successional stands following some type of disturbance, or in older forests with a substantial understory of shrubs and young conifer trees. Coarse woody debris, especially in early successional stages (created by harvest regeneration units and large fires), provides important cover for snowshoe hares and other prey [LCAS].

**forb:** A herbaceous (herb-like) plant, other than grass or grass-like plants.

**foreground (immediate foreground, middleground and background):** Distance from a viewer to the national forest landscape being viewed. Immediate foreground usually refers to up to 300ft; foreground is up to ½ mile from the viewer; middleground is from ½ to 4 miles from a viewer; background is from 4 miles to the horizon.

**forest land:** An area at least 10 percent occupied by forest trees of any size or formerly having had such tree cover and not currently developed for non-forest uses. Lands developed for non-forest use include areas for crops, improved pasture, residential or administrative sites, improved roads of any width and adjoining road clearing, and power line clearings of any width (36 CFR 219.19).

**free-flowing river:** From the Wild and Scenic River Act, as applied to any river or section of a river means existing or flowing in a natural condition without impoundment, diversion, straightening, riprapping, or other modification of the waterway. The existence, however, of low dams, diversion works, or other

minor structures at the time any river is proposed for inclusion in the [National System] shall not automatically bar its consideration for such inclusion: Provided, that this shall not be construed to authorize, intend, or encourage future construction of such structures within components of the [National System].

**fuels management:** An act or practice of controlling flammability and reducing resistance to control of wildland fuels through mechanical, chemical, biological or manual means, or by fire, in support of land management objectives [NWCG].

**fuels treatment:** The manipulation or removal of dead or live plant materials to reduce the likelihood of ignition and/or lessen potential damage and resistance to fire control (example treatments include, lopping, chipping, crushing, piling and burning) [NWCG].

**function:** Ecological processes that sustain composition and structure, such as energy flow, nutrient cycling and retention, soil development and retention, predation and herbivory, and natural disturbances such as wind, fire, and floods.

**functioning at risk:** Are wetland or riparian conditions that are in limited functioning condition; however, existing hydrologic, vegetative, or geomorphic attributes make them susceptible to degradation.

## G-J

**geographic area (GA):** A spatially contiguous land area identified within the plan area. A geographic area may overlap with a management area (36 CFR 219.19).

**geographic information system (GIS):** A computer process that links database software to graphics (spatially explicit) software and provides database and analytic capabilities.

**goals (GO):** Broad statements of intent, other than desired conditions, usually related to process or interaction with the public. Also see chapter 1 of this plan.

**gradient (stream):** The slope of a streambed.

**grassbank:** See “forage reserve allotment.”

**grazing authorizations and reauthorizations:** Grazing permits with term status of 10 years or with temporary status of 1 year. Upon expiration of an existing grazing permit, they can be reauthorized provided eligibility and qualification requirements are met. Upon sale of base property or permitted livestock, a grazing permit with term status may be authorized to the purchaser of base property or permitted livestock as the preferred applicant, provided eligibility and qualifications requirements are met (36 CFR 222).

**grazing permit:** Authorizes livestock to use National Forest System or other lands under Forest Service control for the purpose of livestock production. Term permits are issued for up to 10 years with priority for renewal at the end of the term. On-and-off grazing permits are permits with specific provisions on rangelands only part of which is National Forest System lands or other lands under Forest Service control. Private land grazing permits are permits issued to persons who control grazing lands adjacent to or within national forest proclaimed boundary and who waive exclusive grazing use of these lands to the United States for the full period the permit is to be issued (36 CFR 222). Temporary permits are issued for up to 1 year. Examples include livestock use permits for transportation livestock to persons engaged in commercial packing or dude ranching.

**greater sage-grouse general habitat:** See “sage-grouse habitat—general habitat management areas.”

**greater sage-grouse priority habitat:** See “sage-grouse habitat—priority habitat management areas.”

**Greater Yellowstone Area (GYA):** Generally high elevation mountainous public and private lands in northwestern Wyoming, southwestern Montana, and eastern Idaho surrounding Yellowstone National Park.

**Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem (GYE):** See “Greater Yellowstone Area (GYA).”

**green ash draws:** See “woody draws.”

**greenline:** The first line of perennial vegetation on or near the water’s edge along a stream. The greenline is an important location for monitoring riparian areas because it is vulnerable to impacts from management that are related to streambank instability and channel widening and/or incision.

**Grizzly Bear Conservation Strategy (GBCS):** An interagency management document compiled under direction of the Yellowstone Ecosystem Subcommittee of the Interagency Grizzly Bear Committee that describes the regulatory framework for management of the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem grizzly bear population and its habitat (Yellowstone Ecosystem Subcommittee 2016).

**ground-disturbing activity:** An activity that results in a change in the vegetation cover or ground surface at an extent that may cause or contribute to sediment mobilization. Ground-disturbing activities include, but are not limited to, removing vegetation cover, excavating, filling, and grading.

**groundwater-dependent ecosystem:** A community of plants, animals, and other organisms whose extent and life processes depend on groundwater. Examples include riparian areas, wetlands, groundwater-fed lakes and streams, cave and karst systems, aquifer systems, fens, springs, and seeps.

**guideline (GDL):** A constraint on project and activity decision-making that allows for departure from its terms, so long as the purpose of the guideline is met. Also see chapter 1 of this plan.

**habitat type:** A habitat type classification provides an ecologically based system of land stratification in terms of vegetation potential. As the habitat type is the basic unit in classifying land units or sites based on their biotic potential, it emphasizes similarities and differences in ecosystems that carry implications for a variety of land management objectives. Habitat types or habitat type groups can have similar biophysical characteristics, and similar function and response to disturbances. A habitat type will produce similar plant communities at natural or near natural conditions. Also see “potential vegetation type.”

**hazard tree:** A tree that has the potential to cause property damage, personal injury or fatality in the event of a failure, where failure is the mechanical breakage of a tree or tree part. Failures often result from the interaction of defects, weather factors, ice or snow loading or exposure to wind. Tree hazards may include dead or dying trees, dead parts of live trees, or unstable live trees (due to structural defects or other factors) that are within striking distance of people or property (a target). Defects are flaws in a tree that reduce its structural strength. Trees may have single or multiple defects, which may or may not be detectable. Failures result in accidents only if they strike a target.

**hazardous fuels mitigation:** See “fuels management and fuels treatment.”

**high severity fire/high severity fire regime:** See “stand-replacing fire.”

**high use/density areas:** Areas that receive high levels of visitor use such as trailheads, developed campgrounds, etc.

**hydric:** Environment or habitat containing plenty of moisture, very wet.

**hydrologically stable condition:** The manner in which transportation structures (bridges, culverts, drainage dips, fords) are constructed and maintained that minimizes the risk for unbalancing the natural hydrologic function around the site. As an example, a bridge site during Q100 flood event would resist accelerated erosion to the approach embankments, damaging vegetation, undermining of rip rap, undermining of footings, and debris plugging, and diversion of flood waters outside of the designed pathways.

**hydrophilic vegetation:** Plant life growing in water or on a substrate that is at least periodically deficient in oxygen as a result of excessive water content. Hydrophilic vegetation can be described as obligate wetland or facultative wetland species. Obligate wetland species are nearly always found in wetlands; its frequency of occurrence in wetlands is 99 percent or more. Facultative wetland species occurs more often than not in wetlands; its frequency of occurrence in wetlands is between 67 and 99 percent of the time.

**independent identically distributed:** The underlying assumption made of the sample population for statistical inference using a completely random sampling design.

**Indian Tribe:** Any Indian or Alaska Native Tribe, band, nation, pueblo, village, or other community that is included on a list published by the Secretary of the Interior under section 104 of the Federally Recognized Indian Tribe List Act of 1994 (25 United States Code 479a-1).

**infrastructure.** Human built features either on or off National Forest Lands and authorized by of the Forest Service. Examples include:

- Transportation features include roads, roads on private land easements, parking areas, trails, airfields, helipads, etc. including components such as bridges, culverts, streamside rip rap, cattleguards, gates, signs, etc.
- Utilities include overhead and underground powerlines, water systems, wastewater systems, ditches, communication facilities and lines, fire protection systems, wells, etc.
- Communication facilities include buildings, towers, or other physical improvements (buildings and towers do not have to be combined to be considered a facility) that are built or installed to house and/or support authorized communications equipment.
- Buildings include offices, residences, bunkhouses, warehouses, well houses, rest rooms, storage, cabins, recreation residences, etc.
- Dams include Forest owned dams or permitted on National Forest lands.
- Allotment infrastructure include structural improvements that are necessary for grazing management and include fences, gates, handling facilities, water developments (including e.g. stock tanks, windmills, ponds, guzzlers, distribution pipelines), etc.
- Recreation amenities include campground furniture, boat ramps, bulletin boards, docks, fencing, interpretive signs, corrals, overlooks, etc.
- Resource improvements include fish barriers, stream enhancements, gauging stations, etc.

**inherent capability of the plan area:** The ecological capacity or ecological potential of an area characterized by the interrelationship of its physical elements, its climatic regime, and natural disturbances (36 CFR 219.19).

**inherent productivity of soil resources:** The ability of the soil to produce a specific type and amount of native vegetation based on physical and chemical soil properties that were inherited from the combined influences of local geology, landform, climate, plant community, and effects over time. Productivity that is not the result of added soil amendments.

**inherent scenic attractiveness:** Classification of how visually unique, distinctive and valued specific scenery is. This refers to enduring visual qualities of the landscape, which may be enhanced by positive cultural features. Ratings, that compare landscapes within ecoregions, are based upon commonly-held perceptions of beauty related to land forms, rock features, vegetation patterns and water features, along with concepts such as uniqueness, variety (including seasonal), mystery and vividness of the line, form, color and texture of the scenery.

- *Class A-Distinctive:* Areas where landform, vegetation patterns, water characteristics, and cultural features combine to provide unusual, unique, or outstanding scenic quality. These landscapes have strong positive attributes.
- *Class B-Typical/Common:* Areas where landform, vegetation patterns, water characteristics and cultural features combine to provide ordinary or common scenic quality. These landscapes have positive yet common visual attributes.
- *Class C-Indistinctive:* Areas where landform, vegetation patterns, water characteristics and cultural features have low scenic quality. Often, water and rock form of any consequence are missing. These landscapes have weak or very few visual attributes.

**in-lieu lots:** Are unoccupied lots in a designated recreation residence tract and are not available for new holders to build new recreation residences.

**inner gorge:** A geomorphic feature that consists of the steep side slope (typically greater than 35 percent) immediately adjacent to the stream channel, below the first break in slope above the stream channel, and above which the hillslope/topography is less steep. Debris sliding and avalanching are often associated with the inner gorge.

**integrated pest management:** A pest (in this context, an invasive species) control strategy based on the determination of an economic, human health, or environmental threshold that indicates when a pest population is approaching the level at which control measures are necessary to prevent a decline in the desired conditions (economic or environmental factors). In principle, integrated pest management is an ecologically-based holistic strategy that relies on natural mortality factors, such as natural enemies, weather, and environmental management, and seeks control tactics that disrupt these factors as little as possible. Integrated pest management techniques are defined within four broad categories of weed control: (1) biological, (2) cultural, (3) mechanical/physical, and (4) chemical techniques. While each situation is different, the following major components are common to all integrated pest management programs: prevention, early detection/rapid response, control and management, restoration, and collaboration.

**integrated resource management:** Multiple use management that recognizes the interdependence of ecological resources and is based on the need for integrated consideration of ecological, social, and economic factors (36 CFR 219.19).

**integrity (ecology):** See “ecological integrity.”

**intermittent stream:** A stream that has perennial water in discontinuous manner during all or part of the year, often in pools, longitudinally. Intermittent streamflow can be the result of a discontinuous supply from springs or ground-water seepage, a discontinuous supply from surface sources, including runoff of rainfall and seasonal snowmelt, or both. Fish-bearing intermittent streams are distinguished from non-fish-bearing intermittent streams by the presence of any species of fish for any duration. Many intermittent streams may be used as spawning and rearing streams, refuge areas during flood events in larger rivers and streams or travel routes for fish emigrating from lakes or as semi-permanent habitat in perennial pools of intermittent streams in the pine savanna region.

**introduction:** As a result of human activity, the intentional or unintentional escape, release, dissemination, or placement of an organism into an ecosystem to which it is not native (Executive Order 13571).

**invasive species:** With regard to a particular ecosystem, a non-native organism whose introduction causes or is likely to cause economic or environmental harm, or harm to human, animal, or plant health. Invasive species infest both aquatic and terrestrial areas and can be identified within any of the following four taxonomic categories: plants, vertebrates, invertebrates, and pathogens (Executive Order 13571).

**invasive species treatment:** Any activity or action taken to directly prevent, control, or eradicate a targeted invasive species. Treatment of an invasive species infestation may not necessarily result in the elimination of the infestation, and multiple treatments on the same site or population are sometimes required to affect a change in the status of the infestation. Treatment activities typically fall within any of the four general categories of integrated management techniques: biological, cultural, mechanical and physical, or chemical treatments. For example, the use of domestic goats to control invasive plants would be considered a biological treatment; the use of a pesticide to control invasive fishes would be characterized as a chemical treatment; planting of native seeds used to prevent invasive species infestations and restore a degraded site would be considered a cultural treatment technique; developing an aquatic species barrier to prevent invasive species from spreading throughout a watershed would be considered a physical treatment; cleaning, scraping, or otherwise removing invasive species attached to equipment, structures, or vehicles would be considered a mechanical treatment designed to directly control and prevent the spread of those species.

## K-M

**key big game habitat:** Habitats important to the seasonal and year-round life history of big game species necessary to support sustainable herd size and distribution. Examples include security habitat, winter range, and parturition areas.

**key ecosystem characteristic:** The dominant ecological characteristic(s) that describes the composition, structure, function and connectivity of terrestrial, aquatic and riparian ecosystems that are relevant to addressing important concerns about a land management plan. Key ecosystem characteristics are important to establishing or evaluating plan components that would support ecological conditions to maintain or restore the ecological integrity of ecosystems in the plan area.

**land management plan:** A document that guides sustainable, integrated resource management of the resources within a plan area and within the context of the broader landscape, giving due consideration to the relative values of the various resources in particular areas (36 CFR 219.1(b)). Consistent with the

Multiple-Use Sustained-Yield Act of 1960 (16 United States Code 528–531), the Forest Service manages National Forest System lands to sustain the multiple use of its renewable resources in perpetuity while maintaining the long-term health and productivity of the land.

**landscape:** A defined area irrespective of ownership or other artificial boundaries, such as a spatial mosaic of terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems, landforms, and plant communities, repeated in similar form throughout such a defined area (36 CFR 219.19).

**landslide:** A general, non-technical term commonly used for all forms of relatively dry mass wasting events where earthen materials, typically as a mass, are moving downslope under the force of gravity.

**landtype:** A unit shown on an inventory map with relatively uniform potential for a defined set of land uses. Properties of soils landform, natural vegetation, and bedrock are commonly components of landtype delineation used to evaluate potentials and limitations for land use.

**large woody debris:** Whole trees, logs, branches, and other wood that falls into or adjacent to waterbodies.

**limits of acceptable change:** A determination of the amount of human-caused change to the biophysical and social components of an area that can be tolerated through dispersed recreation use.

**livestock:** Domestic foraging animals of any kind kept or raised for use or pleasure.

**livestock handling activities:** Sorting, loading and unloading, or bedding livestock.

**livestock trailing:** The deliberate movement of livestock controlled by one or more herders, from one location to another. This usually occurs when moving between pastures or from private to public lands and vice versa.

**locally adapted species:** Local seed collections or genetically appropriate cultivated varieties from local or regional environments similar to conditions that existed at the project site prior to disturbance.

**long-term persistence:** A species continues to exist in the plan area over a sufficiently long period that encompasses multiple generations of the species, the time interval between major disturbance events, the time interval to develop all successional stages of habitat types, or the time interval needed for the overall ecosystem to respond to management (FSH 1909.12, chapter 20, section 23.13c. 1c.).

**low gradient, alluvial channels:** Are low-gradient stream channels made up of loose sediments called alluvium. They are able to change their shape or course over time. Low-gradient alluvial channels are often associated with Rosgen stream channel types C and E.

**low severity fire and low severity fire regimes:** Fires that burn only the lowest vegetation layer, which may be composed of grasses, herbs, low shrubs, mosses, or lichens. In forests, woodlands, or savannas, low severity fires are generally surface fires and do not cause extensive mortality in the overstory vegetation.

**maintain:** In reference to an ecological condition: to keep in existence or continuance of the desired ecological condition in terms of its desired composition, structure, and processes. Depending upon the circumstance, ecological conditions may be maintained by active or passive management or both (36 CFR 219.19).

**maintenance, infrastructure:** Preserving infrastructure in its original condition and function by routine or preventative means. Could include a small percentage of minor reconstruction tasks normally



associated with larger reconstruction projects such as replacing some rotten fence posts, minor trail relocations to avoid a wet area or an eroding steep grade, replacing a short section of deteriorated sidewalk to a building, chip sealing a segment of road, etc.

**management action/management activities:** Activities conducted by the Custer Gallatin National Forest to achieve specific resource management outcomes.

**management practice:** A specific activity, measure, course of action, or treatment.

**mass wasting:** A collective term for all gravitational or downslope movements of weathered rock debris

**matrix habitat:** Within designated critical habitat for Canada lynx, includes non-boreal forest types such as hardwood forests, dry coniferous forest, grasslands, shrublands, rock, water, and other landscape conditions that do not support snowshoe hares, but which occur between patches of boreal forest such that lynx are likely to travel through such habitat while accessing patches of boreal forest within a home range.

**mean annual increment of growth:** The total increment of increase in volume of a stand (standing crop plus thinning removals) up to a given age divided by that age. Culmination of mean annual increment of growth is the age in the growth cycle of an even-aged stand at which the average annual rate of increase of volume is at a maximum. In land management plans, mean annual increment is expressed in cubic measure and is based on the expected growth of stands, according to intensities and utilization guidelines in the plan (36 CFR 219.19).

**mean fire return interval:** The average period between fires under the presumed historical fire regime.

**mechanical or physical control (also referred to as mechanical or physical weed treatment):** Refers to any technique that involves the use of mechanical or physical means to control weeds, such as hand pulling/grubbing or mowing and installing aquatic species barriers.

**mechanized travel or transport:** A contrivance for moving people or material in or over land, water or air, having moving parts, that provides a mechanical advantage to the user, and that is powered by a living or nonliving power source. This includes but is not limited to, sailboats, hang gliders, parachutes, bicycles, game carriers, carts and wagons. It does not include wheelchairs when used as necessary medical appliances. It also does not include skis, snowshoes, rafts, canoes, sleds, travois, or similar primitive devices without moving parts (36 CFR 2320.3)).

**mesic:** A type of habitat that is moderately moist.

**minerals:** The Forest Service defines three types of mineral (and energy) resources:

- *locatable minerals:* Commodities such as gold, silver, copper, zinc, nickel, lead, platinum, etc. and some nonmetallic minerals such as asbestos, gypsum, and gemstones.
- *saleable mineral materials:* Petrified wood and common varieties of sand, stone, gravel, cinders, clay, pumice, pumicite and other similar materials.
- *leasable minerals:* Commodities such as oil, gas, coal, geothermal, potassium, sodium phosphates, oil shale, and sulfur. On acquired lands solid minerals are leasable.

**mineral encumbrances:** Those outstanding mineral rights, including reserved and outstanding private mineral rights, existing oil and gas leases and locatable mineral rights.

**minimum impact suppression tactics:** Guidelines for fire suppression and post-fire activities that use procedures, tools and equipment that are commensurate with the fire's potential or existing behavior and produce the least impact to the environment without compromising safety or the effectiveness of suppression efforts.

**mining activities:** All function, work, and activities in connection with locatable minerals activities that are reasonably incident to all stages of mining including, prospecting, exploration, development, mining or processing of mineral resources, production, reclamation, abandonment and closure. Reasonable access, including roads and other means of access and site development is included in mining activities.

**mitigate:** To avoid, minimize, rectify, reduce, or compensate the adverse environmental impacts associated with an action.

**mixed severity fire/mixed severity fire regime:** A combination of nonlethal, low intensity to stand-replacing fire effects within the perimeter of a single fire, or across consecutive events. Mixed-severity fire regimes give rise to unique patch dynamics and ecosystem responses.

**monitoring:** A systematic process of collecting information to evaluate effects of actions or changes in conditions or relationships (36 CFR 219.19).

**montane:** The Custer Gallatin has termed its mountainous Middle Rockies Ecoregion area as Montane and refers to the settings of the Beartooth, Yellowstone, Gardiner, Bozeman, and Hebgen Lake ranger districts. Montane ecosystems of the Custer Gallatin include the Madison, Henrys Lake, Gallatin, Bridger, Bangtail, Crazy, Absaroka, Beartooth, and Pryor mountain ranges. The montane ecosystem is characterized by altitudinal zonation of semi-desert and foothill vegetation, coniferous forests on the lower mountain slopes, and alpine tundra toward the upper. Due to aridity, forests are sometimes restricted to northern and eastern slopes. Although south- and west-facing slopes receive comparable precipitation, they are hotter and evaporation is higher. Consequently, they support fewer trees and are covered by shrubs and grasses. Lodgepole pine, Douglas-fir, subalpine fir, Engelmann spruce, limber pine, and whitebark pine are the predominant conifer vegetation. The lower slopes of the mountains are dominated by grasslands and shrublands.

**motorized incursion:** the act of crossing a boundary with motorized equipment either on or off trail, into an area where that type of use is prohibited.

**motorized route:** A National Forest System road or trail that is designated for motorized use on a motor vehicle use map pursuant to 36 Code of Federal Regulations 212.51.

**motorized uses, recreation or transport:** Uses on Forest roads and trails that include motorized vehicles such as passenger cars, 4x4 and high clearance vehicles, motorcycles, all-terrain vehicles, and snowmobiles.

**multiple use:** The management of all the various renewable surface resources of the National Forest System so that they are utilized in the combination that will best meet the needs of the American people; making the most judicious use of the land for some or all of these resources or related services over areas large enough to provide sufficient latitude for periodic adjustments in use to conform to changing needs and conditions; that some land will be used for less than all of the resources; and harmonious and coordinated management of the various resources, each with the other, without impairment of the productivity of the land, with consideration being given to the relative values of the various resources, and not necessarily the combination of uses that will give the greatest dollar return or

the greatest unit output, consistent with the Multiple-Use Sustained-Yield Act of 1960 ( 16 U.S.C. 528-531) (36 CFR 219.19).

**municipal watershed:** 36 CFR 251.9 authorizes the Chief of the Forest Service to enter into agreements with municipalities to restrict the use of National Forest System lands from which water is derived to protect the municipal water supplies (FSM 2542) within a given watershed area.

## N-Q

**national ambient air quality standards (NAAQS):** Are national air quality standards established by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency under authority of the Clean Air Act (CAA; 40 C.F.R. 50) to protect public health and public and ecosystem welfare.

**national forest scenic byway:** The Chief of the Forest Service can designate routes traversing National Forest System lands as national forest scenic byways.

**National Forest System:** Includes national forests, national grasslands, and the National Tallgrass Prairie (36 CFR 219.19 and 219.62).

**National Forest System road:** Part of a system of permanent roads determined to be needed for the use, protection, and enjoyment of the national forest.

**National Forest System trail:** Part of a system of permanent trails determined to be needed for the use, protection, and enjoyment of the national forest.

**National Wild and Scenic Rivers System:** Established in the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 (16 United States Code 1271, (note) 1271–1287) (36 CFR 219.19).

**National Wilderness Preservation System:** The Wilderness Act, signed into law in 1964, created the National Wilderness Preservation System and recognized wilderness as “an area where the Earth and its community of life are untrammelled by man, where man himself is a visitor who does not remain.”

**native species:** An organism that was historically or is present in a particular ecosystem as a result of natural migratory or evolutionary processes; and not as a result of an accidental or deliberate introduction into that ecosystem. An organism’s presence and evolution (adaptation) in an area are determined by climate, soil, and other biotic and abiotic factors (36 CFR 219.19).

**natural range of variation:** The variation of ecological characteristics and processes over scales of time and space that are appropriate for a given management application. The natural range of variation is a tool for assessing the ecological integrity and does not necessarily constitute a management target or desired condition. The natural range of variation can help identify key structural, functional, compositional, and connectivity characteristics, for which plan components may be important for either maintenance or restoration of such ecological conditions.

**net conservation gain (greater sage-grouse):** The cumulative benefits of the mitigation or compensatory measures (for example, beneficial actions taken under a voluntary prelisting conservation program) that provide for an increase in the population(s) of the species of interest directly or indirectly through the enhancement or restoration of its suitable habitat, or maintenance of currently suitable habitat, that reduces or eliminates current and future threats, taking into account the duration of the actions and all the adverse effects of the impact project.

**nonconforming uses:** When used in the context of Wilderness or Recommended Wilderness are uses or facilities within those areas that do not conform to wilderness policy nor are allowed specifically as an exception in the wilderness act which designated the area.

**nonfunctional condition:** Are wetland or riparian conditions that clearly are not providing adequate vegetation, landform, or woody material to dissipate stream energy associated with moderately high flows, and thus are not reducing erosion, improving water quality, etc.

**non-motorized transport:** Uses on national forest roads and trails such as hiking, horseback riding, skiing, biking, and snow shoeing that do not depend upon motorized vehicles.

**non-native species or alien species:** With respect to a particular ecosystem, an organism, including its seeds, eggs, spores, or other biological material capable of propagating that species, that occurs outside of its natural range (Executive Order 13571).

**normative flow regime:** A flow regime that has temporal pattern of high and low flows expected in a reference stream or river; thereby playing a key role in regulating geomorphic processes that shape river channels and floodplains and sustains all life stages of a diverse suite of native species. Over the life of the plan flow regimes may change due to effects of climate change.

**noxious weed:** Any plant or plant product that can directly or indirectly injure or cause damage to crops (including nursery stock or plant products), livestock, poultry, or other interests of agriculture, irrigation, navigation, the natural resources of the United States, the public health, or the environment (Plant Protection Act of 2000). The term typically describes species of plants that have been determined to be undesirable or injurious in some capacity. Federal noxious weeds are regulated by USDA-Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service under the Plant Protection Act of 2000, which superseded the Federal Noxious Weed Act of 1974. A noxious weed is defined by Montana Code Annotated (MCA 7-22-2101) as, “any exotic plant species established or that may be introduced in the state that may render land unfit for agriculture, forestry, livestock, wildlife, or other beneficial uses or that may harm native plant communities.” A noxious weed is defined by South Dakota Code (chapters 38–22, article 12:62:02:01) as “a weed which the commission has designated as sufficiently detrimental to the state to warrant enforcement of control measures.”

**nurse plant:** A plant that creates an environment that is less severe for young seedlings growing underneath it or that promotes conditions for recovery.

**objective (OBJ):** A concise, measurable, and time-specific statement of a desired rate of progress toward a desired condition or conditions. Also see chapter 1 of this plan.

**occupied area (bighorn sheep):** Areas that provide suitable habitat conditions for utilization by transient or permanent bighorn sheep populations and presence of bighorn populations has been confirmed by the appropriate State wildlife agency (Montana Fish, Wildlife and Parks or South Dakota Game and Fish). Area is located within mapped State agency bighorn sheep distribution.

**old growth forests:** Are ecosystems distinguished by old trees and related structural attributes. Old growth encompasses the later stages of stand development that typically differ from earlier stages in a variety of characteristics which may include tree size, accumulations of large dead woody material, number of canopy layers, species composition, and ecosystem function. For the purposes of this document, old growth is defined as the minimum criteria established in Old Growth Forest Types of the

Northern Region by Pat Green et al. 1992 (errata 2011) (citation provided in the final environmental impact statement bibliography) unless more current scientific information becomes available.

**old growth habitat:** A community of forest vegetation characterized by a diverse stand structure and composition along with a significant showing of decadence. The stand structure will typically have multi-storied crown heights and variable crown densities. There is a variety of tree sizes and ages ranging from small groups of seedlings and saplings to trees of large diameters exhibiting a wide range of defect and breakage both live and dead, standing and down. The time it takes for a forest stand to develop into an old-growth habitat condition depends on many local variables such as forest type, habitat type, and climate. Natural chance events involving forces of nature such as weather, insect, disease, fire, and the actions of man also affects the rate of development of old growth stand conditions. Old growth habitat may or may not meet the definition for old growth forest.

**open and unclaimed or unoccupied lands:** This term is trademark of the treaties negotiated in the 1850s. The term applied to public domain lands held by the United States that had not been fenced or claimed through a land settlement act. Today “open and unclaimed lands” applies to lands remaining in the public domain (for the purposes of hunting, gathering foods, and grazing livestock or trapping). The courts have ruled that National Forest System lands reserved from the public domain are open, unclaimed, or unoccupied land, and as such the term applies to reserved treaty rights on National Forest System land.

**outfitting and outfitter guide:** To rent on, or deliver to, National Forest System lands for pecuniary remuneration or other gain any saddle or pack animal, vehicle, boat, camping gear, or similar supplies or equipment (36 CFR 251.51).

**outstandingly remarkable values (ORVs):** Within the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act, categories of scenery, recreation, geology, fisheries, wildlife, historic, cultural, or other similar values.

**over-snow vehicle:** A motor vehicle that is designed for use over snow and that runs on a track or tracks and/or a ski or skis while in use over snow.

**pathway:** The mechanisms and processes by which non-native species are moved, intentionally or unintentionally, into a new ecosystem.

**perennial stream:** A stream that flows continuously throughout most years.

**peripherals:** Are plant species whose occurrence are at the extreme edge of their present natural range.

**permanent road:** A National Forest System road intended to remain in service to highway vehicles over the long-term. The prerequisite for design, construction, operation, and maintenance are for a sustained service life. For example, features such as bridges and culverts, are designed with a service life of 50 years or more (related: temporary road).

**permit (special use):** A use authorization which provides permission, without conveying an interest in land, to occupy and use National Forest System land or facilities for specified purposes, and which is both revocable and terminable (36 CFR 251.51).

**permitted grazing:** Authorizes livestock use on National Forest System lands. Authorizing permits include grazing permits for commercial livestock production purposes, outfitter and guide special use permits with associated pack animals, or other special use permits.

**permitted grazing use:** The number of animals, period of use, and location of use specified in part 1 of the grazing permit.

**persistence:** Continued existence.

**physical or mechanical control (also referred to as physical or mechanical weed treatment):** Refers to any technique that involves the use of mechanical or physical means to control weeds, such as hand pulling/grubbing or mowing and installing aquatic species barriers.

**pine savanna:** The Custer Gallatin has termed its intermixed rolling plains and ponderosa pine region of the Northwestern Great Plains Ecoregion area as Pine Savanna and refers to the settings of the Sioux and Ashland ranger districts. Vegetation includes ponderosa pine, hardwood trees, shrubs, forbs and graminoids, expressing all gradations of cover. On the driest sites, ponderosa pine is short and generally open, grown with grass understories. Moist north-facing sites have dense stands of taller ponderosa pine, with shrub and herbaceous understories, including some species of the mountain forests to the west. Draws and ravines that support many hardwood trees (green ash, box elder, aspen) and shrubs also dissect the landscape. Grasses include needlegrass, wheatgrass, needle and thread grass, and blue grama. Shrubs include sagebrush, chokecherry, and snowberry.

**plan:** See “land management plan.”

**plan area:** The National Forest System lands covered by a land management plan (36 CFR 219.19).

**planned wildland fire:** See “prescribed burn or prescribed fire.”

**potential vegetation type and potential vegetation group:** An assemblage of habitat types on the basis of similar biophysical environments, such as climate, hydrology, slope and soil characteristics. This biophysical environment influences the vegetation characteristics and ecosystem processes that occur. The vegetation communities and conditions that would develop over time given no major natural or human disturbances (the climax plant community) would be similar within a particular potential vegetation type classification. See “habitat type.”

**practicable:** Available and capable of being put into practice or of being done or accomplished, after taking into consideration cost, technology, and logistics in light of overall project purpose.

**prevention:** The action of stopping invasive species from being introduced or spreading into a new ecosystem (Executive Order 13571). With respect to invasive species management, prevention measures include a wide range of actions and activities to reduce or eliminate the chance of an invasive species entering or becoming established in a particular area. Preventative activities can include projects for education and awareness as well as more traditional prevention activities such as vehicle/equipment cleaning, boat inspections, or native plant restoration plantings. Restoration activities typically prevent invasive species infestations by improving site resilience, and reducing or eliminating the conditions on a site that may facilitate or promote invasive species establishment.

**prevention of significant deterioration (PSD):** An Environmental Protection Agency program that applies to new major sources or major modifications of existing sources of air pollutants in areas that meet the national ambient air quality standards (NAAQS). The PSD program does not prevent sources from increasing emission but is designed to protect public and ecosystem, health, and welfare, to preserve, protect, and enhance the air quality in class I areas such as National Parks and class I wilderness areas, to protect economic growth, and to ensure that any decision to permit an increase in air pollution

undergoes careful evaluation and consideration which includes State and Federal air regulatory agencies, land management agencies, and the general public.

**prescribed burn or prescribed fire:** A fire ignited via management actions to meet specific objectives. A written, approved prescribed fire plan must exist, and National Environmental Policy Act requirements (where applicable) must be met, prior to ignition [NWCG].

**primary conservation area:** An area identified in the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem Grizzly bear Conservation Strategy to be managed as a source area for the grizzly bear population, where continuous occupancy by grizzly bears would be maintained. Habitat within the primary conservation area receives the most stringent protection. The Primary Conservation Area is the same geographic area as the Greater Yellowstone Ecosystem Grizzly Bear Recovery Zone identified in the Grizzly Bear Recovery Plan (USDI 1993).

**primary rangelands:** Are those areas that produce forage and that are near water sources where primary grazing activity occurs.

**productivity:** The capacity of National Forest System lands and their ecological systems to provide the various renewable resources (such as timber) in certain amounts in perpetuity. In land management, productivity is an ecological term, not an economic term (36 CFR 219.19).

**project:** An organized effort to achieve an outcome on National Forest System lands identified by location, tasks, outputs, effects, times, and responsibilities for execution (36 CFR 219.19).

**projected timber sale quantity (PTSQ):** The estimated quantity of timber meeting applicable utilization standards that is expected to be sold during the plan period. As a subset of the projected wood sale quantity, the projected timber sale quantity includes volume from timber harvest for any purpose from all lands in the plan area based on expected harvests that would be consistent with the plan components. The PTSQ is also based on the planning unit's fiscal capability and organizational capacity. The PTSQ is not a target nor a limitation on harvest, and is not an objective unless the responsible official chooses to make it an objective in the plan.

**projected wood sale quantity (PWSQ):** The estimated quantity of timber and all other wood products that is expected to be sold from the plan area for the plan period. The PWSQ consists of the projected timber sale quantity as well as other woody material such as fuelwood, firewood, or biomass that is also expected to be available for sale. The PWSQ includes volume from timber harvest for any purpose based on expected harvests that would be consistent with the plan components. The PWSQ is also based on the planning unit's fiscal capability and organizational capacity. The PWSQ is not a target nor a limitation on harvest, and is not an objective unless the responsible official chooses to make it an objective in the plan.

**proper functioning condition:** For riparian areas have adequate vegetation, landform, or woody material present to: dissipate stream energy associated with high waterflow, thereby reducing erosion and improving water quality; capture sediment and aid floodplain development; improve floodwater retention and ground-water recharge; develop root masses that stabilize streambanks against erosion, and maintain channel characteristics. Proper functioning condition for groundwater dependent ecosystems (for example, seeps, springs, wetlands, shorelines) have adequate vegetation, landform, or debris present to: dissipate energies associated with wind action, wave action, and overland flow from adjacent sites, thereby reducing erosion and improving water quality; filter sediment and aid floodplain development; improve flood-water retention and ground-water recharge; develop root masses that

stabilize islands and shoreline features against cutting action; restrict water percolation; develop diverse ponding characteristics to provide the habitat and the water depth, duration, and temperature necessary for fish production, waterbird breeding, and other uses. A wetland or riparian area in proper functioning condition will, in turn, provide associated values, such as fish and wildlife habitat, recreation opportunities and support greater ecological diversity.

**proposed action:** A project, activity, or action that a Federal agency aims to implement or undertake, and which is the subject of an environmental analysis. Proposed action is a specific term defined under the National Environmental Policy Act.

**proposed species:** A type of animal or plant that is proposed by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, or the National Marine Fisheries Service, through the Federal Register to be listed for protection under Section 4 of the Endangered Species Act (36 CFR 219.19).

**Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Range:** The combination of Pryor Mountain agency and private rangelands authorized for use by wild horses. Not to be confused with “wild horse range” (see definition below), which is a special designation pertaining to only the Bureau of Land Management portion of the Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Range.

**Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Territory:** The National Forest System lands identified as having been used by a wild horse herd as its habitat in 1971 at the time of the passage of the Wild Free Roaming Horse and Burro Act (Public Law 92-195) (December 15, 1971).

## R-T

**rangelands:** Are land on which the indigenous vegetation (climax or natural potential) is predominantly grasses, grass-like plants, forbs, or shrubs and is managed as a natural ecosystem. If plants are introduced, they are managed similarly. Rangelands include natural grasslands, savannas, shrublands, many deserts, tundra, alpine communities, marshes, and meadows.

**rangeland health:** The degree to which the integrity of the soil, vegetation and ecological processes are sustained.

**range improvements:** Any activity or program on or relating to rangelands which is designed to improve production of forage, change vegetation composition, control patterns of use, provide water, stabilize soil and water conditions, or provide habitat for livestock and wildlife.

**rapid response:** With respect to invasive species (plant, pathogen, vertebrate, or invertebrate species), rapid responses are defined as the quick and immediate actions taken to eradicate, control, or contain infestations that must be completed within a relatively short time to maximize the biological and economic effectiveness against the targeted invasive species. Depending on the risk of the targeted invasive species, rapid response actions may be supported by an emergency situation determination and emergency considerations would include the geographic extent of the infestation, distance from other known infestations, mobility and rate of spread of the invasive species, threat level and potential impacts, and available treatments.

**reasonable assurance:** A judgment made by the Responsible Official based on the best available scientific information and local professional experience that practices based on existing technology and knowledge are likely to deliver the intended results. Reasonable assurance applies to average and foreseeable conditions for the area and does not constitute a guarantee to achieve the intended results.



**reclamation:** The restoration of a site or resource to a desired condition to achieve management objectives or stated goals.

**recommended wilderness:** An area that has been determined to meet the criteria to be designated as wilderness and is proposed in this land management plan by the forest supervisor to be recommended to Congress for inclusion into the National Wilderness Preservation System.

**reconstruction:** Rebuilding, modifying, relocating, or replacing components of an infrastructure feature in generally the same corridor. Projects would likely include a mix of management actions.

- Rebuilding means doing deferred or heavy maintenance back to original condition and function.
- Modifying means bringing feature to modern code, standard, or requirement. Might include reconstructing a campground by lengthening and widening spurs, paving the loop road, and making sites more accessible, converting a trail to an accessible standard, remodeling a building to modern building codes, upgrading a powerline to a higher voltage, converting a single lane road to a double lane paved road, converting a hiking trail to a motorized trail, etc.
- Relocating means moving discrete portions of the feature to resolve resource or legal issues within the same general corridor or area. Might include such work as shifting a fence, road, or trail away from an eroding creekside or shifting a segment out of a riparian management zone, moving a powerline away from a moving riverside, etc.
- Replacing means to replace some or many of the feature's major components due mainly to end of their service life. Examples are replacing a deteriorated roof, rusted and leaking culverts, rotten or burned fence posts and wire, a constantly leaking old water system, an aging bridge, or converting native to aggregate surfacing, etc.

**recovery:** As pertains to the Endangered Species Act, is the improvement in the status of a listed species to the point at which listing as federally endangered or threatened is no longer appropriate (36 CFR 219.19). This definition is for the purposes of the land management planning regulation at 36 Code of Federal Regulations part 219 and Land Management Planning Handbook 1909.12, and with respect to threatened or endangered species (36 CFR 219.19).

**recreation:** The set of recreation settings and opportunities on the National Forest System that is ecologically, economically, and socially sustainable for present and future generations. Also see "sustainable recreation" (36 CFR 219.19).

**recreation event:** Any temporary event, such as race, run, ride, or tournament, which is organized, using national forest lands and facilities, and which an entrance fee is required to participate. Event proponents may be for-profit or not-for-profit, individuals, or organizations.

**recreation opportunity spectrum:** The system that the Forest Service describes an opportunity to participate in a specific recreation activity in a particular recreation setting to enjoy desired recreation experiences and other benefits that accrue. Recreation opportunities include nonmotorized, motorized, developed, and dispersed recreation on land, water, and in the air (36 CFR 219.19). The six classes are the following:

- *Primitive:* The primitive recreational opportunity spectrum setting is large, remote, wild, and predominately unmodified landscapes. There is no motorized activity and little probability of seeing other people. Primitive recreational opportunity spectrum settings are managed for quiet solitude away from roads, people, and development. There few, if any facilities or developments.

Most of the primitive recreation opportunity spectrum settings coincide with designated wilderness boundaries.

- *Semi-primitive nonmotorized*: The semi-primitive nonmotorized recreation opportunity spectrum settings include areas of the national forest managed for nonmotorized use. Mountain bikes and other mechanized equipment are often present. Rustic facilities are present for the primary purpose of protecting the natural resources of the area. These settings are not as vast or remote as the primitive recreational opportunity spectrum settings, but offer opportunities for exploration, challenge, and self-reliance.
- *Semi-primitive motorized*: The semi-primitive motorized recreation opportunity spectrum settings area(s) of the national forests are managed for backcountry motorized use on designated routes. Routes are designed for off highway vehicles and other high clearance vehicles. This setting offers visitors motorized opportunities for exploration, challenge, and self-reliance. Mountain bikes and other mechanized equipment are also sometimes present. Rustic facilities are present for the primary purpose of protecting the natural resources of the area or providing portals to adjacent areas of primitive, or semi-primitive, nonmotorized areas.
- *Roaded natural*: The roaded natural setting is managed as natural appearing with nodes and corridors of development that support higher concentrations of use, user comfort, and social interaction. The road system is well defined and can typically accommodate sedan travel. System roads also provide easy access to adjacent in semi-primitive motorize, semi-primitive nonmotorized and primitive areas.
- *Rural*: The rural settings represent the most developed recreation sites and modified natural settings Facilities are designed primarily for user comfort and convenience.
- *Urban*: The urban setting is characterized by a substantially developed environment although the background may have natural appearing elements. Some highly developed ski areas and resorts are examples of an urban setting on National Forest System lands.

**recreation setting**: The social, managerial, and physical attributes of a place that, when combined, provide a distinct set of recreation opportunities. The Forest Service uses the recreation opportunity spectrum to define recreation settings and categorize them into six distinct classes: primitive, semi-primitive nonmotorized, semi-primitive motorized, roaded natural, rural, and urban. Also see “recreation opportunity” (36 CFR 219.19).

**recreational livestock**: Includes animals used by recreation visitors to pack items while visiting the national forest; typically includes equines, llamas, goats, sheep, and dogs.

**refugia**: Specific site locations and habitat conditions that support populations of organisms that are limited to small fragments of their geographic range. Climate change refugia refers to areas relatively buffered from contemporary climate change over time that enable persistence of valued physical, ecological, and socio-cultural resources.

**regeneration**: The renewal of a forest, whether by natural or artificial means. This term may also refer to a tree crop itself.

**regional endemics**: Are plant species that are unique to a specific geographic region which makes them unique and more vulnerable to extinction. Because they are only found in certain locations, they may require special conservation efforts.

**research natural area:** A physical or biological unit in which current natural conditions are maintained insofar as possible. These conditions are ordinarily achieved by allowing natural physical and biological processes to prevail without human intervention. However, under unusual circumstances, deliberate manipulation may be utilized to maintain the unique feature that the research natural area was established to protect (FSM 4063.05).

**reserved treaty rights:** The reserved rights doctrine holds that any rights that are not specifically addressed in a treaty are reserved to the Tribe. In other words, treaties outline the specific rights that the Tribes gave up, not those that they retained. The courts have consistently interpreted treaties in this fashion, beginning with *United States v. Winans*, 198 U.S. 371, 25 S. Ct. 662, 49 L. Ed. 1089 (1905), in which the U.S. Supreme Court ruled that a treaty is “not a grant of rights to the Indians, but a grant of rights from them.” Any right not explicitly extinguished by a treaty or a Federal statute is considered to be “reserved” to the Tribe.

**resilience:** The ability of an ecosystem and its component parts to absorb, or recover from the effects of disturbances through preservation, restoration, or improvement of its essential structures and functions and redundancy of ecological patterns across the landscape.

**resistance:** The ability of a community to avoid alteration of its present state by a disturbance.

**responsible official:** The official with the authority and responsibility to oversee the planning process and to approve a plan, plan amendment, and plan revision. (36 CFR 219.19 and 219.62).

**restore:** To renew by the process of restoration (36 CFR 219.19).

**restoration:** The process of assisting the recovery of an ecosystem that has been degraded, damaged, or destroyed; ecological restoration focuses on reestablishing the composition, structure, pattern, and ecological processes necessary to facilitate terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems sustainability, resilience, and health under current and future conditions (36 CFR 219.19).

**retardant:** In terms of wildfire suppression, retardant is a substance intended to slow the rate of fire spread by cooling and coating fuels, depleting the fire of oxygen, and slowing the rate of fuel combustion as the retardant’s inorganic salts change how fuels burn.

**revegetation:** Establishing or reestablishing desirable plants on areas where desirable plants are absent or of inadequate density, by management alone (natural revegetation) or by seeding or transplanting (artificial revegetation) ((Society for Range Management 1999) citation provided in the final environmental impact statement bibliography).

**riparian area:** A three-dimensional ecotone of interaction that include terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems that extend into the groundwater, above the canopy, and outward across the floodplain, up the near-slopes that drain to the water, laterally into the terrestrial ecosystem, and along the water course at variable widths (36 CFR 219.19).

**riparian ecosystem:** A transition between the aquatic ecosystem and the adjacent upland terrestrial ecosystem. A riparian ecosystem is identified by soil characteristics and by distinctive vegetative communities that require free or unbounded water.

**riparian management zone (RMZ):** A portion, or portions, of the watershed where riparian-dependent resources receive primary emphasis and management activities are subject to specific standards and guidelines (36 CFR 219.19).

**riparian vegetation:** Riparian vegetation grows along banks of a waterbody extending to the edge of the riparian ecosystem. This includes the emergent aquatic plants growing at the edge of the waterbody and the plants which have adapted to growing in the low-oxygen (anaerobic) conditions associated with prolonged saturation or flooding.

**risk:** A combination of the likelihood that a negative outcome will occur and the severity of the subsequent negative consequences (36 CFR 219.19).

**road:** A motor vehicle route more than 50-inches wide, unless identified and managed as a trail (36 CFR 212.1, FS Manual 7705) (related: permanent road, temporary road):

- *Decommissioned:* the stabilization and restoration of an unneeded road to a more natural state (36 CFR 212.1).
- *Forest road or trail:* a route wholly or partly within or adjacent to and serving the National Forest System that is necessary for the protection, administration, and utilization of the National Forest System and the use and development of its resources (36 CFR 212.1–Definitions).
- *Maintenance level:* a term for the level of service provided by, and maintenance required for, a specific road, consistent with road management objectives and maintenance criteria (FSH 7709.59, 62.32).
  - Level 1: These are roads that have been placed in storage between intermittent uses. The period of storage must exceed 1 year. Basic custodial maintenance is performed to prevent damage to adjacent resources and to perpetuate the road for future resource management needs. Emphasis is normally given to maintaining drainage facilities and runoff patterns.
  - Level 2: Assigned to roads open for use by high clearance vehicles. Passenger car traffic, user comfort, and user convenience are not considerations.
  - Level 3: Assigned to roads open and maintained for travel by a prudent driver in a standard passenger car. User comfort and convenience are not considered priorities.
  - Level 4: Assigned to roads that provide a moderate degree of user comfort and convenience at moderate travel speeds.
  - Level 5: Assigned to roads that provide a high degree of user comfort and convenience.
- *National Forest System:* A forest road other than a road which has been authorized by a legally documented right-of-way held by a State, County, or other local public road authority (36 CFR 212.1).

**road bridge:** A designed structure that supports the roadway across rivers, streams, railroads, and other natural openings or human-built systems. The bridge is designed and maintained to support the roadway road management objectives.

**road decommissioning:** Removal from the road system and taken out of service. The unneeded road corridor would be returned to the natural landscape (also see decommissioning).

**road management objective (RMO):** Management intent for the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of a National Forest System road. Examples of the criteria includes roadway width, surface type, maintenance levels, speed limits, drainage design, traffic service levels, etc. Each road has a collection of objectives housed in the corporate database.

**roadless:** The 2001 Roadless Rule establishes prohibitions on road construction, road reconstruction, and timber harvesting on 58.5 million acres of inventoried roadless areas on National Forest System lands. The intent of the 2001 Roadless Rule is to provide lasting protection for inventoried roadless areas within the National Forest System in the context of multiple-use management.

**rock hounding:** Includes the collection of small amounts of widespread, low value, relatively common rocks and minerals (common quartz crystals, agate, obsidian) for personal noncommercial use. Rock hounding also includes hobby mining activities; such as recreational gold panning or use of metal detectors to prospect for gold nuggets and other naturally occurring metals. Activities that involve mechanized earth moving equipment, including bobcats, suction dredges, 'high banking' or dry washing equipment are not rock hounding. The removal of vertebrate fossils, projectile points, pottery or any other archeological resource is not rock hounding.

**Rosgen channel type classification:** A widely applied river classification system based on common patterns of channel morphology. The classification scheme assigns a channel type based on channel slope, width to depth ratio, bed material, entrenchment ratio and sinuosity. This method can be used to collect the raw data to assess mechanisms for predicting channel stability, erosion risk, aggradation, channel enlargement, sediment transport capacity, degradation, lateral or longitudinal migration, and hydraulic relations. As an example, Rosgen channel types C and E are low gradient streams that are very sensitive to disturbance and can be rapidly adjusted and converted to other stream types in relatively short time periods. Rosgen C and E systems rely on well-developed floodplains with dense vegetation (often sedges and rushes) that helps stabilize the banks.

**sacred place:** A sacred place is any specific location on National Forest System land, whether site, feature, or landscape, that is identified by an Indian Tribe, or the religious societies, groups, clans, or practitioners of an Indian Tribe, as having historically important spiritual and cultural significance to that entity, greater than the surrounding area itself. Sacred places may include but are not limited to geological features, bodies of water, burial places, traditional cultural places, biological communities, stone and earth structures, and cultural landscapes uniquely connecting historically important cultural sites, or features in any manner meaningful to the identifying Tribe. Report to the Secretary of Agriculture—USDA Policy and Procedures Review and Recommendations: Indian Sacred Sites (December 2012).

**sacred site:** Executive Order 13007 Indian Sacred Sites defines an Indian Sacred Site as "any specific, discrete, narrowly delineated location on Federal land that is identified by an Indian Tribe, or Indian individual determined to be an appropriately authoritative representative of an Indian religion, as sacred by virtue of its established religious significance to, or ceremonial use by, an Indian religion; provided that the Indian Tribe or appropriately authoritative representative of an Indian religion has informed the agency of the existence of such a site."

**sagebrush habitat:** In relationship to greater sage-grouse habitat in the plan area, this includes Wyoming big sagebrush (*Artemisia tridentata* var. *wyomingensis*), mountain big sagebrush (*A. tridentata* var. *vaseyana*), and silver sagebrush (*A. cana*).

**sage-grouse habitat—general habitat management areas:** National Forest System lands that are occupied seasonally or year-round habitat outside of priority habitat management areas where some special management would apply to sustain the greater sage-grouse population. The boundaries and management strategies for general habitat management areas are derived from and generally follow the preliminary general habitat boundaries.

**sage-grouse habitat—priority habitat management areas:** National Forest System lands identified as having highest habitat value for maintaining sustainable greater sage-grouse populations. The boundaries and management strategies for priority habitat management areas are derived from and generally follow the preliminary priority habitat boundaries. Priority habitat management areas largely coincide with areas identified as priority areas for conservation in the Conservation Objectives Team report.

**salvage harvest:** The removal of dead trees or trees damaged or dying because of injurious agents, other than competition, that recovers economic value that would otherwise be lost, or because the removal of the dead or damaged trees contributes to achieving plan desired conditions or objectives.

**sanitation harvest:** The removal of trees to improve stand health by stopping or reducing actual or anticipated spread of insects and disease.

**scarification:** To loosen topsoil aggregates by means of raking the soil surface with a set of sharp teeth. The term may also include removal of the surface organic material (litter and duff) typically to prepare a site for reforestation or to remove accumulated wood ash from a site as an initial step towards restoration.

**scenery management system:** A systematic Forest Service approach to inventory, analyze, manage and monitor the scenic resources on national forests. This system provides a process to determine the relative value and importance of the national forest scenery and assist in establishing overall resource objectives.

**scenic character:** A combination of the physical, biological, and cultural images that gives an area its scenic identity and contributes to its sense of place. Scenic character provides a frame of reference from which to measure scenic integrity (2012 Planning Rule and 36 CFR 219.19). The scenic character description incorporates the visible natural physical and biological features, as well the ways the scenery is viewed and experienced. A scenic character description also includes the viewing context and associations that viewers have with that scenery based upon visible historic and cultural elements that have been accepted over time, contribute to the sense of place and that contribute to high quality scenery.

**scenic integrity:** A measure of the degree of visible disruptions to or deviations from the scenic character. A landscape with very minimal visual disruption is considered to have very high scenic integrity. Landscapes with visual elements that are increasingly discordant with the scenic character have diminished scenic integrity.

**scenic integrity objectives:** Serve as thresholds of allowable visual dominance by landscape modifications and deviations from the scenic character, and describe the lowest allowable scenic integrity level for an area. They describe the degree to which a landscape is visually perceived to be complete when compared to the scenic character of that area.

- *Very high:* Landscapes in which the scenic character is intact with minute if any deviations or disruptions. The scenic character and sense of place is expressed at the highest possible level.
- *High:* Landscapes in which the scenic character appears intact. Deviations from or disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions may be present but must repeat the form, line, color, texture, and pattern common to the scenic character so completely and at such a scale that they are not evident.

- *Moderate*: Landscapes in which the scenic character appears slightly altered. Noticeable deviations from or disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions must repeat the form, line, color, texture, and pattern common to the scenic character and must remain visually subordinate to the scenic character being viewed.
- *Low*: Landscapes in which the scenic character appears altered. Deviations from or disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions are recognizable and may be visually dominant, but borrow some visual attributes such as line, form, color, texture, and pattern common to the scenic character.
- *Very low*: Landscapes in which the scenic character appears heavily altered. Deviations from or disruptions to the scenic character resulting from management actions may strongly dominate the scenic character and do not borrow any visual attributes common to the scenic character.

**scion**: A detached living portion of a plant, such as a bud or shoot, often a branch tip, that is grafted onto the root-bearing part of another plant.

**secure habitat**: An area with low levels of human disturbance or habitat that allows a wildlife species to remain in a defined area despite an increase in stress or disturbance. The components of security habitat can include vegetation, topography, the size of the patches of vegetation, road density, distance from roads, intensity of the disturbance, and seasonal timing of the disturbance. This general definition covers most uses of the term security habitat, except for elk and grizzly bear, which have specific definitions.

**security habitat (elk)**: An area that because of its geography, topography, vegetation, or a combination thereof, will hold elk during periods of stress ((Lyon and Christensen 1992), citation provided in the final environmental impact statement bibliography). Security areas are intended to reduce elk vulnerability during the hunting season, and to provide animals the opportunity to meet their biological needs without making large range movements, such as to private land or to lower quality habitats ((Lyon and Canfield 1991), citation provided in the final environmental impact statement bibliography).

**secure habitat (grizzly bear)**: Areas at least 10 acres in size and 0.31 mile (500 meters) away from open or gated motorized routes, prescribed footprint of a developed site, or recurring low-level helicopter flight line during the non-denning period (March 1 through November 30).

**sediment delivery**: The delivery of sediment to a water body via overland flow, mass wasting, human activity, or some other means.

**sediment yield**: The rate of transport of sediment by a stream, generally expressed in terms of tons per year, past a designated “accounting point” in a watershed.

**seral**: A biotic community that is developmental; a transitory stage in an ecologic succession.

**seral stage**: A phase of development of an ecosystem in ecological succession from a disturbed, relatively unvegetated state to a complex, mature plant community.

**shrub**: Perennial, multi-stemmed woody plant that is usually less than 13 to 16 feet in height. Shrubs typically have several stems arising from or near the ground, but may be taller than 16 feet or single-stemmed under certain environmental conditions.

**significant cave**: A cave located on National Forest System lands, managed under authority of the Federal Cave Resource Protection Act, which has been determined to contain significant biota, cultural,

geologic, mineralogic, paleontologic, hydrologic, recreational, educational, or scientific resources or opportunities.

**silviculture:** The practice of controlling the establishment, growth, composition, health, and quality of forests to meet diverse needs and values.

**site capability and potential:** See “capability and potential.”

**site preparation:** A general term for a variety of activities that remove competing vegetation, slash, and other debris that may inhibit the reforestation effort.

**site productivity:** The combined effect of physical and climate properties, soil depth, texture, nutrient load, precipitation, temperature, slope, elevation, and aspect, on tree growth of a specific area of land.

**ski resort:** A site and attendant facilities expressly developed to accommodate alpine or Nordic skiing and from which the preponderance of revenue is generated by the sale of lift tickets and fees for ski rentals, for skiing instruction and trail passes for the use of permittee-maintained ski trails. A ski resort may also include ancillary facilities directly related to the operation and support of skiing activities (36 CFR 251.51).

**skid trails:** A temporary route used by logging equipment to remove logs from a timber stand.

**slash:** The residue left on the ground after felling and other silvicultural operations, or that has accumulated there as a result of storms, fire, or natural pruning.

**slash piles:** Woody residue that has been moved, either mechanically or by hand, into piles for burning.

**slump or rotational slump:** A mass movement process of slope failure, in which a mass of rock or unconsolidated material drops along a concave slip surface. Slump units move downslope as an intact block (without internal deformation of the landslide material) and frequently rotate backwards.

**snag:** A standing dead tree usually greater than 5 feet in height and 6 inches diameter at breast height.

**snowmobile:** A motorized vehicle 50 inches or less in width, designed for use over snow, runs on a track and uses one or more skis for steering.

**social sustainability:** See “sustainability” (36 CFR 219.19).

**social experience threshold:** Based on indicators that define the social and resource conditions to be managed. Encounters are commonly used to indicate visitor experience to reveal levels of unacceptable impacts such as crowding and user conflicts.

**soil function:** Various processes that occur in the soil or at the soil surface and enable the soil to sustain biological productivity, maintain environmental quality, and promote plant and animal health.

**soil productivity:** The capacity of a soil to produce a certain yield of crops or other plants with a specified system of management. *Note:* Under extensive management inherent productivity equals soil productivity, unless the soil resource has been degraded.

**soil quality:** The capacity of the soil to function within its surroundings to sustain biological productivity, maintain or enhance hydrologic function and water quality, and preserve overall environmental quality.

**soil restoration:** Management actions taken specifically to restore soil physical, chemical, or biological properties that have been degraded due to either management caused or natural disturbances.



**source water protection areas:** The area delineated by a State or Tribe for a public water system or including numerous public water systems, whether the source is ground water or surface water or both, as part of a State or Tribal source water assessment and protection program approved by the Environmental Protection Agency under section 1453 of the Safe Drinking Water Act (42 U.S.C. 300h-3(e)) (36 CFR section 219.19) or any subsequent laws applicable to public water systems that provide water for human consumption.

**special forest products:** Products collected from National Forest System lands that include, but are not limited to, bark, berries, boughs, bryophytes, bulbs, burls, Christmas trees, cones, ferns, firewood, forbs, fungi (including mushrooms), grasses, mosses, nuts, pine straw, roots, sedges, seeds, transplants, tree sap, wildflowers, fence material, mine props, posts and poles, shingle and shake bolts, and rails. Special forest products do not include sawtimber, pulpwood, non-sawlog material removed in log form, cull logs, small roundwood, house logs, telephone poles, derrick poles, minerals, animals, animal parts, insects, worms, rocks, water, and soil (36 CFR 223.216).

**special use authorization:** A written permit, term permit, lease, or easement that authorizes use or occupancy of National Forest System lands and specifies the terms and conditions under which the use or occupancy may occur (36 CFR 251.51).

**species of conservation concern:** A species, other than federally recognized threatened, endangered, proposed, or candidate species, that is known to occur in the plan area and for which the regional forester has determined that the best available scientific information indicates substantial concern about the species' capability to persist over the long-term in the plan area (36 CFR 219.9(c)).

**spotting:** Behavior of a fire producing sparks or embers that are carried by the wind and which start new fires beyond the zone of direct ignition by the main fire.

**stand:** A community of trees occupying a specific area and sufficiently uniform in canopy composition, age, and size class to be a distinguishable unit, forming a single management entity.

**standard (STD):** A mandatory constraint on project and activity decision making, established to help achieve or maintain the desired condition or conditions, to avoid or mitigate undesirable effects, or to meet applicable legal requirements. Also see chapter 1 of this plan.

**stand-replacing fire:** A fire that is lethal to most of the dominant above ground vegetation and substantially changes the vegetation structure. Stand-replacement fires may occur in forests, woodlands and savannas, annual grasslands, and shrublands. They may be crown fires or high severity surface fires or ground fires.

**state and transition models:** State and transition model and concepts are typically captured in ecological site descriptions, provide decision-making tools for land managers, provide a means to represent the complex dynamics of rangeland ecosystems, and are effective communication tools. They provide extensive knowledge of existing and possible rangeland vegetation states, transitions, thresholds or other barriers to change, opportunities for management intervention, and what changes can occur through mismanagement. The vegetation types are called "states," and the processes that cause states to change from one to another are called "transitions." Where states are resistant to change, they are called "steady states." An example of a steady state is where long-lived or otherwise dominant plants occur on a site. These steady-state plant communities change only as a result of such transitions as long periods of above-average moisture or drought, fire, an insect or disease outbreak, or human action. The site factors that impose this high level of stability on a site are called "thresholds."

**statutory rights:** Rights granted by enactment of Federal or State laws. For example, rights granted by the 1872 Mining Law are statutory rights.

**streambank alteration/disturbance:** Streambanks that show signs of sloughing, dislodged stones or logs, and/or trampling from animals (does not include road crossings). Current-year alteration is discernible from previous years' alteration because of weathering effects of freeze and thaw cycles, rain events, and erosion by stream flow or vegetative regrowth. Types of alteration include shearing, trampling, and trailing.

**stressors:** Factors that may directly or indirectly degrade or impair ecosystem composition, structure or ecological process in a manner that may impair its ecological integrity, such as an invasive species, loss of connectivity, or the disruption of a natural disturbance regime (36 CFR 219.19). Also see "ecosystem stressor."

**structure:** In a terrestrial ecological context, refers to the horizontal and vertical distribution of vegetation layers in a forest or grassland including the trees, shrubs, and ground cover (which includes vegetation and dead and down woody material). Structure looks at the proportion of small, medium, and large trees or short and tall grasses, for example, and can be measured in a variety of ways depending on the system and structural attribute of interest.

**structures, built:** Something (such as a building) that is constructed

**stubble height:** The height of forage plants remaining after grazing has occurred; average stubble height includes both grazed and un-grazed plants (FSH 2209.13 chapter 90).

**substrata:** The composition of a streambed or wetland/pond/lake bottom. It may be inorganic, consisting of geological material from the catchment area such as boulders, pebbles, gravel, sand or silt, or it may be organic, including fine particles, leaves, wood, moss and plants.

**succession/successional stage:** A predictable process of changes in structure and composition of plant and animal communities over time. Conditions of the prior plant community or successional stage create conditions that are favorable for the establishment of the next stage. The different stages in succession are often referred to as "seral," or "successional" stages.

**suitability of lands (SUIT):** A determination made regarding the appropriateness of various lands within a plan area for various uses or activities, based on the desired conditions applicable to those lands. The terms suitable and suited and not suitable and not suited can be considered the same.

**sustainability:** The capability to meet the needs of the present generation without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. For purposes of this part, "ecological sustainability" refers to the capability of ecosystems to maintain ecological integrity; "economic sustainability" refers to the capability of society to produce and consume or otherwise benefit from goods and services including contributions to jobs and market and nonmarket benefits; and "social sustainability" refers to the capability of society to support the network of relationships, traditions, culture, and activities that connect people to the land and to one another, and support vibrant communities (36 CFR 219.19).

**sustainable recreation:** The set of recreation settings and opportunities on the National Forest System that is ecologically, economically, and socially sustainable for present and future generations (36 CFR 219.19).

**sustained substantial disturbance:** The use of heavy equipment or low-level helicopter flights for vegetation management actions for a total of more than 30 days throughout an entire key linkage area in a calendar year.

**sustained yield limit:** The amount of timber, meeting applicable utilization standards, “which can be removed from [a] forest annually in perpetuity on a sustained-yield basis” are addressed in the National Forest Management Act at section 11, 16 United States Code 1611, 36 Code of Federal Regulations 219.11(d)(6). It is the volume that could be produced in perpetuity on lands that may be suitable for timber production. Calculation of the limit includes volume from lands that may be deemed not suitable for timber production after further analysis during the planning process. The calculation of the sustained yield limit is not limited by land management plan desired condition, other plan components, or the planning unit's fiscal capability and organizational capacity. Volume from salvage and sanitation timber harvest is not included in calculating the sustained yield limit. The sustained yield limit is not a target but is a limitation on harvest, except when the plan allows for a departure.

**temporary road:** A single-purpose road constructed, maintained, and operated for short term use, such as access to a short-lived vegetation or mining project. The road is designed and constructed to not only meet the projects' immediate traffic objectives, but to be efficiently removed from service following the project. For example, temporary portable bridges would be used on crossings, slash would be stored on-site for restoration, or use of steep grades and narrow widths to minimize costs (related: permanent road).

**thalweg:** A geomorphological term that describes the lowest elevation in a stream/river longitudinally from upstream to downstream.

**threatened species:** A species that the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of Commerce has determined is likely to become an endangered species within the foreseeable future throughout all, or a significant portion, of its range. Threatened species are identified by the Secretary of the Interior in accordance with the 1973 Endangered Species Act. Threatened species are listed at 50 Code of Federal Regulations sections 17.11, 17.12, and 223.102.

**thresholds (ecological):** Points in space and time at which one or more of the primary ecological processes responsible for maintaining the sustained equilibrium of the ecological state degrades beyond the point of self-repair. Examples of thresholds include: soil erosion and nutrient loss so severe that some plants cannot grow; invasion of a site by a plant that is so dominant that other plants cannot compete; and change in plant community structure—arrangement of plants on the site—so that fire, a naturally occurring event that directs ecosystem change, cannot occur or occurs in a more destructive way. In the plan area, there are some sites that have crossed a threshold where primary ecological processes have degraded beyond the point of self-repair where meeting desired conditions is unlikely since they are not easily reversed without significant inputs of resources. These areas largely originated from unmanaged activities in the late 1800s and early 1900s. Once an ecosystem crosses a threshold, it is generally very difficult to restore the original composition, structure and ecological processes by changes in management alone. Prohibitively expensive restoration measures (such as dam removal, plowing or soil modifications) would generally be necessary to restore degraded ecosystems.

**timber harvest:** The removal of trees for wood fiber use and other multiple-use purposes (36 CFR 219.19).

**timber production:** The purposeful growing, tending, harvesting, and regeneration of regulated crops of trees to be cut into logs, bolts, or other round sections for industrial or consumer use (36 CFR 219.19).

**total maximum daily load:** A pollution budget and includes a calculation of the maximum amount of a pollutant that can occur in a waterbody and allocated the necessary reductions to one or more pollutant sources (metals, sediment, turbidity, etc.). A total maximum daily load serves as a planning tool and potential starting point for restoration or protection activities with the ultimate goal of attending or maintaining water quality standards.

**traditional and cultural purposes:** The term “traditional and cultural purpose”, with respect to a definable use, area, or practice, means that the use, area, or practice is identified by an Indian Tribe as traditional or cultural because of the long-established significance or ceremonial nature of the use, area, or practice to the Indian Tribe. Cultural Heritage Cooperative Authority (CHCA) 2019.

**traditional cultural property:** A cultural resource that is eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places because of its association with cultural practices or beliefs of a living community that (a) are rooted in that community’s history, and (b) are important in maintaining the continuing cultural identity of the community. The entity evaluated for eligibility for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places must be a tangible property; that is, a district, site, building, structure, or object as defined in 36 CFR 64.4.

**trail:** A route 50 inches or less in width or a route over 50 inches wide that is identified and managed as a trail (36 CFR 212.1).

**trail bridge:** A designed structure that supports the roadway across rivers, streams, railroads, roads, and other natural openings or human-built systems. The bridge is designed and maintained to support the railway trail management objectives.

**trail class:** The prescribed scale of development for a trail, representing its intended design and management standards.

**trail management objective (TMO):** Management intent for the design, construction, operation, and maintenance of a National Forest System trail. Examples of the criteria includes railway geometry, surface type, design considerations for allowed uses, maintenance frequencies, and other factors. Each trail has a collection of objectives housed in the corporate database.

**trail open to all vehicles:** A trail open to all non-motorized transport and motorized vehicles uses shown on the Motor Vehicle Use Map. Motorized users may be licensed or non-licensed as required by the State jurisdictions.

**transmission line:** The facility in an electric power system used to move large amounts of power from one location to a distant location; distinguished from a distribution line by higher voltage, greater power capability, and greater length. Transmission system voltages are typically from 69kV up to 765kV.

**transportation atlas:** National Forest System roads and National Forest System trails are the surface transportation system (including bridges) necessary for the administration of the national forest. Together these create the Transportation Atlas. The atlas is composed of the road and trail arcs in GIS and the tabular information in the Travel Routes portion of the corporate database. Roads and trails can be wholly within the national forest or across legal easements from public road systems (such as Federal, State, and County) to National Forest System lands.

**travel route:** Road, trail, or airfield open transportation uses.

**treaty rights:** Those rights or interests reserved in treaties for the use and benefit of Tribes. The nature and extent of treaty rights are defined in each treaty. Only Congress may abolish or modify treaties or treaty rights.

**tribal cultural landscapes:** any place in which a relationship, past or present, exists between a place resources, and an associated group of indigenous people whose cultural practices, beliefs or identity connects them to that place.

## U-Z

**unplanned wildland fire:** See “wildfire.”

**utilities:** See infrastructure.

**valid existing rights:** Mining claims have valid existing rights if a discovery of a valuable mineral was made on the claim prior to the date public lands were withdrawn from mineral entry. A mining claimant must make a discovery of a valuable mineral deposit. A Certified Mineral Examiner must examine the mining claim to make a determination of as to whether a valid claim creates an existing right (validity exam).

**values at risk:** Ecological, social, and economic assets and resources that could be impacted by fire or fire management actions. Examples include life, property, structures, natural and cultural resources, community infrastructure, public support, economic opportunities such as tourism, and air quality.

**vegetation management:** A process that changes the composition and structure of vegetation to meet specific objectives, using such means as prescribed fire, timber harvest, or thinning. For the purposes of this document, the term does not include removing vegetation for permanent developments like mineral operations, ski runs, trails, or roads for example, and does not apply to unplanned wildland fire, hazard tree removal or permitted livestock grazing.

**viable population:** A population of a species that continues to persist over the long term with sufficient distribution to be resilient and adaptable to stressors and likely future environments (36 CFR 219.19).

**viewshed:** The visible portion of the landscape seen from viewpoints. Viewpoints can include residences, recreational facilities, and travel ways.

**visual absorption capability:** A classification system used to denote the relative ability of a landscape to accept human alternations without loss of scenic quality.

**visual magnitude:** A project-specific tool for assessing and describing the relative visibility and potential effects of a landscape modification, such as a timber harvest unit or construction of a road or facility, on the scenery. It takes into account the distance, slope and aspect relative to an observer, as well as the number of times an area is seen from given observation platforms.

**warm season grass:** Warm-season grasses (for example, blue grama, buffalograss, bluestems) grow during warmer periods when temperatures are 70 to 95 °Fahrenheit. Warm-season grasses use soil moisture more efficiently than cool-season species and often can withstand drought conditions. These grasses have different leaf cellular structures that cause them to be more fibrous, contain more lignin, and be less digestible. Therefore, livestock normally prefer cool season grasses if they are at the same growth stage as warm season species. However, because cool season grasses often enter the reproductive period at about the time that warm season grasses begin growth, livestock normally seek

out this new growth from warm-season species. A warm season species generally exhibit the C4 photosynthetic pathway; also known as a C4 plant.

**watershed:** A region or land area drained by a single stream, river, or drainage network; a drainage basin (36 CFR 219.19).

**watershed condition:** The state of a watershed based on physical and biogeochemical characteristics and processes (36 CFR 219.19).

**wetland:** An area that under normal circumstances has hydrophilic vegetation, hydric soils, and wetland hydrology.

**wild horse range:** An area specifically designated from a Forest Service wild horse territory or Bureau of Land Management herd management area to be managed principally, but not necessarily exclusively, for wild horses (36 CFR 222.60 (b)(14) and 43 CFR 4710.3-2). Nationally, there are four specific “ranges” thus far, one of which is the Bureau of Land Management portion of the Pryor Mountain Wild Horse Range.

**wild and scenic river:** A river designated by Congress as part of the National Wild and Scenic Rivers System, which was established in the Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 (16 United States Code 1271, (note) 1271–1287) (36 CFR 219.19).

- *wild river:* Within the Wild and Scenic River Act, a tentative classification of those rivers or sections of rivers that are free of impoundments and generally inaccessible except by trail, with watersheds or shoreline essentially primitive and waters unpolluted. These represent vestiges of primitive America.
- *scenic river:* Within the Wild and Scenic River Act, a tentative classification of those rivers or sections of rivers that are free of impoundments, with shorelines or watersheds still largely primitive and shorelines largely undeveloped but accessible in places by roads.
- *recreational river:* Within the Wild and Scenic River act, a tentative classification of those rivers or sections of rivers that are readily accessible by road or railroad, that may have some development along their shorelines, and may have undergone some impoundments or diversion in the past.

**wilderness:** An area of land designated by Congress as part of the National Wilderness Preservation System that was established in the Wilderness Act of 1964 (16 United States Code 1131–1136).

**wilderness character:** Untrammeled, undeveloped, natural, outstanding opportunities for solitude or a primitive and unconfined type of recreation and other features and values.

- *Untrammeled:* The wilderness is essentially unhindered and free from modern human control or manipulation.
- *Naturalness:* The wilderness ecological systems are substantially free from the effects of modern civilization.
- *Undeveloped:* The wilderness is essentially without permanent improvements or modern human occupation.
- *Outstanding opportunities for solitude or a primitive and unconfined type of recreation:* The wilderness provides outstanding opportunities for people to experience solitude or primitive and unconfined recreation, including the values of inspiration and physical and mental challenge.

- *Other features of value:* The wilderness may contain ecological, geological, or other features of scientific educational, scenic, or historical value.

**wilderness characteristics:** Undeveloped, natural, outstanding opportunities for solitude or a primitive and unconfined type of recreation and other features and values.

**wildfire:** A naturally-caused wildland fire (for example, lightning) or human-caused fire, and considered an emergency management situation.

**wildland fire:** Any nonstructure fire that occurs in the wildland. There are two types of wildland fire: unplanned (natural or human-caused wildfire) and planned (prescribed fire).

**wildland-urban interface:** A term as defined by the Healthy Forest Restoration Act section 101. It is the area adjacent to an at-risk community that is identified in the community wildfire protection plan. If there is no community wildfire protection plan in place, the wildland-urban interface is the area 0.5 mile from the boundary of an at-risk community; or within 1.5 miles of the boundary of an at-risk community if the terrain is steep, or there is a nearby road or ridgetop that could be incorporated into a fuel break, or the land is in condition class 3, or the area contains an emergency exit route needed for safe evacuations. (Condensed from the Healthy Forest Restoration Act; for full text see Healthy Forest Restoration Act section 101.).

**winter range:** The portion of the overall area a species inhabits where the majority of individuals are found from the first heavy snowfall to spring green-up, or during a site-specific period of winter. In the Rocky Mountains (generally including the montane portion of the plan area), winter range areas tend to have a relatively low amount of snow cover.

**woody draws:** Also known as green ash draws, are draws with an overstory of woody vegetation, predominantly of green ash, and an understory of grass, forbs, or shrubs. Other hardwoods such as box elder, paper, birch, or aspen may be a minor component. Woody draws must generally be approximately 500-feet long for purposes of application of plan components. These ecosystems are found on the Sioux and Ashland ranger districts and provide important habitat for many wildlife species, game and non-game, as well as an important component (shelter and forage) for livestock grazing. The vegetation is a result of higher moisture conditions than in the surrounding area but surface water if any, running through the area is generally short term.

**xeric:** Environment or habitat containing little moisture; very dry.